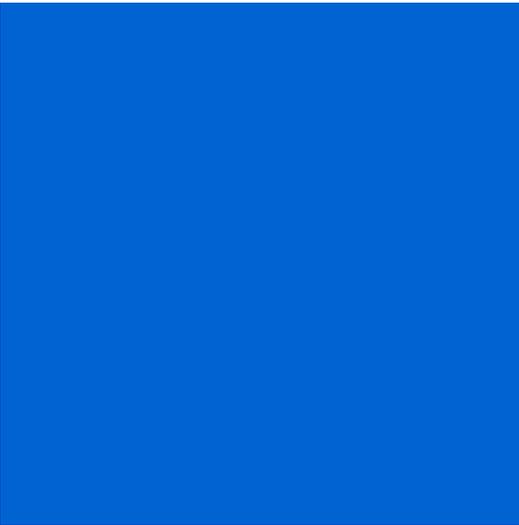


[Home](#)

# **OS-9<sup>®</sup> for 68K Processors Technical Manual**

## **Version 3.3**



**RadiSys.**  
THE POWER OF WE

[www.radisys.com](http://www.radisys.com)  
Revision A • July 2006

## Copyright and publication information

This manual reflects version 3.3 of Microware OS-9 for 68K. Reproduction of this document, in part or whole, by any means, electrical, mechanical, magnetic, optical, chemical, manual, or otherwise is prohibited, without written permission from RadiSys Microware Communications Software Division, Inc.

## Disclaimer

The information contained herein is believed to be accurate as of the date of publication. However, RadiSys Corporation will not be liable for any damages including indirect or consequential, from use of the OS-9 operating system, Microware-provided software, or reliance on the accuracy of this documentation. The information contained herein is subject to change without notice.

## Reproduction notice

The software described in this document is intended to be used on a single computer system. RadiSys Corporation expressly prohibits any reproduction of the software on tape, disk, or any other medium except for backup purposes. Distribution of this software, in part or whole, to any other party or on any other system may constitute copyright infringements and misappropriation of trade secrets and confidential processes which are the property of RadiSys Corporation and/or other parties. Unauthorized distribution of software may cause damages far in excess of the value of the copies involved.

July 2006  
Copyright ©2006 by RadiSys Corporation  
All rights reserved.

EPC and RadiSys are registered trademarks of RadiSys Corporation. ASM, Brahma, DAI, DAQ, MultiPro, SAIB, Spirit, and ValuePro are trademarks of RadiSys Corporation.

DAVID, MAUI, OS-9, OS-9000, and SoftStax are registered trademarks of RadiSys Corporation. FasTrak, Hawk, and UpLink are trademarks of RadiSys Corporation.

† All other trademarks, registered trademarks, service marks, and trade names are the property of their respective owners.

---

# Table of Contents

---

## Chapter 1: System Overview 9

---

- 10 System Modularity
- 13 I/O Overview
  - 13 Embedded
  - 14 Disk Based
  - 14 Extended
  - 15 Other
- 18 Memory Modules
  - 20 Basic Module Structure
  - 21 The CRC Value
  - 22 ROMed Memory Modules
  - 23 Module Header Definitions
  - 30 Additional Header Fields for Individual Modules

## Chapter 2: The Kernel 37

---

- 38 Responsibilities of the Kernel
  - 38 Kernel Types
  - 39 Kernel Differences
- 40 System Call Overview
  - 40 User-State and System-State
  - 42 Installing System-State Routines
- 44 Kernel System Call Processing
  - 44 System Function Calls
  - 45 I/O Calls
- 47 Memory Management
- 48 OS-9 Memory Map
- 49 System Memory Allocation

- 49      Operating System Object Code
- 51      Memory Allocators
- 52    Memory Fragmentation
- 54    Colored Memory
- 54      Colored Memory Definition List
- 60    System Memory Cache Lists
- 63    System Initialization
- 63      Init: The Configuration Module
- 79    Initial System Process
- 81    Customization Modules
- 81      Syscache
- 82      SSM
- 83      FPU/FPSP
- 83      Including a Customization Module
- 85    Process Creation
- 87      Process Memory Areas
- 89      Process State
- 90    Process Scheduling
- 91      Preemptive Task-Switching
- 91      D\_MinPty: Specifying a Minimum Priority
- 92      D\_MaxAge: Specifying a Maximum Age
- 94    Exception and Interrupt Processing
- 98      Reset Vectors: vectors 0, 1
- 99      Error Exceptions: vectors 2 - 8, 10 - 24, 48 - 63
- 99      Trace Exception: vector 9

**Chapter 3: OS-9 Input/Output System 101**

---

- 102   The OS-9 Unified Input/Output System
- 103      IOMan Overview
- 104      File Manager Overview
- 105   The Kernel and I/O
- 105      Device Driver Overview
- 105      Device Descriptor Overview

107	IOMan and I/O
108	Device Descriptor Modules
114	Adding Additional Devices
114	Path Descriptors
117	File Managers
118	Embedded
118	Disk Based
119	Extended
120	Other
121	File Manager Organization
121	Beginning of a Sample File Manager Module
122	File Manager I/O Responsibilities
127	Driver Module Format
128	INITIALIZE and TERMINATE
128	READ, WRITE, GETSTAT, and SETSTAT
129	ERROR
129	Sample Driver Module Header Format

## Chapter 4: Interprocess Communications

131

---

132	Introduction
133	Signals
134	Supported User-State Signal Codes
137	Alarms
137	User-State Alarms
138	Cyclic Alarms
139	Time of Day Alarms
139	Relative Time Alarms
140	System-State Alarms
143	Events
145	The Wait and Signal Operations
146	Coordinating Non-Sharable Resources
146	The F\$Event System Call
149	Semaphores

150	Semaphore States
151	Acquiring Exclusive Access
151	Releasing Exclusive Access
152	Pipes
153	Operations on Pipes
153	Creating Pipes
154	Opening Pipes
155	Read/Readln
158	Pipe Directories
159	Data Modules
159	Creating Data Modules
160	Link Count
160	Saving to Disk

## **Chapter 5: User Trap Handlers 163**

---

164	Trap Handlers
167	Installing and Executing Trap Handlers
168	OS9 and tcall: Equivalent Assembly Language Syntax
169	Calling a Trap Handler
169	Example One
169	Example Two
172	An Example Trap Handler
175	Trace of Example Two Using the Example Trap Handler

## **Chapter 6: The Math Module 177**

---

178	Introduction
179	Floating Point Co-processor Emulation Modules
180	Installing Co-processor Emulation Modules
182	Math Trap Handler

## **Chapter 7: OS-9 File System 185**

---

186	Disk File Organization
-----	------------------------

186	Basic Disk Organization
187	Identification Sector
189	Allocation Map
190	Root Directory
190	Basic File Structure
192	Segment Allocation
193	Directory File Format
195	Raw Physical I/O on RBF Devices
197	Record Locking
197	Record Locking and Unlocking
198	Non-Sharable Files
199	End of File Lock
200	Deadlock Detection
201	Record Locking Details for I/O Functions
204	File Security

## **Appendix A: Example Code**

**205**

---

206	The Init Module
213	The Sysgo Module
215	Signals: Example Program
217	Alarms: Example Program
219	Events: Example Program
221	Semaphores: Example Program
223	C Trap Handler
229	RBF Device Descriptor
238	SCF Device Descriptor
240	SBF Device Descriptor
242	Pipe Device Descriptor

## **Appendix B: Path Descriptors and Device Descriptors**

**243**

---

244	RBF Device Descriptor Modules
260	RBF Definitions of the Path Descriptor

265	SCF Device Descriptor Modules
275	SCF Definitions of the Path Descriptor
279	SBF Device Descriptor Modules
285	SBF Definitions of the Path Descriptor
287	Pipe Device Descriptor Modules
289	Pipe Definitions of the Path Descriptor

## **Appendix C: Error Codes**

**291**

---

292	Error Codes
294	Miscellaneous Errors
295	Ultra C Related Errors
298	Math Trap Errors
299	Processor Exception Errors
303	Miscellaneous Errors
306	Semaphore Errors
307	Operating System Errors
316	I/O Errors
320	Compiler Errors
321	Rave Errors
333	Internet Errors
340	ISDN Errors

## **Appendix D: OS-9 for 68K System Calls**

**347**

---

348	System Calls
350	System Calls and the System Environment

---

# Chapter 1: System Overview

---

This chapter provides a general overview of the levels of modularity, I/O processing, memory modules, and program modules for OS-9® for 68K. It includes the following topics:

- **System Modularity**
- **I/O Overview**
- **Memory Modules**



# System Modularity

---

OS-9<sup>®</sup> has four levels of modularity:

## 1. The Kernel, IOMan, the Clock, and the Init Modules

The kernel provides basic system services including process control and resource management. IOMan provides Input/Output (I/O) management, The clock module is a software handler for the specific real-time-clock hardware. The Init module is the initialization table the kernel uses during system startup.

## 2. File Managers

File managers process I/O requests for similar classes of I/O devices. Refer to the I/O Overview in this chapter for a list of the file managers Microware currently supports.

## 3. Device Drivers

Device drivers handle the basic physical I/O functions for specific I/O controllers. Standard OS-9 systems are typically supplied with a disk driver, serial port drivers for terminals and serial printers, and a driver for parallel printers. You can also add customized drivers of your own design or purchase drivers from a hardware vendor.

## 4. Device Descriptors

Device descriptors are small tables associating specific I/O ports with their logical name, device driver, and file manager. These modules also contain the physical address of the port and initialization data. By using device descriptors, only one copy of each driver is required for each specific type of I/O device, regardless of how many devices the system uses.




---

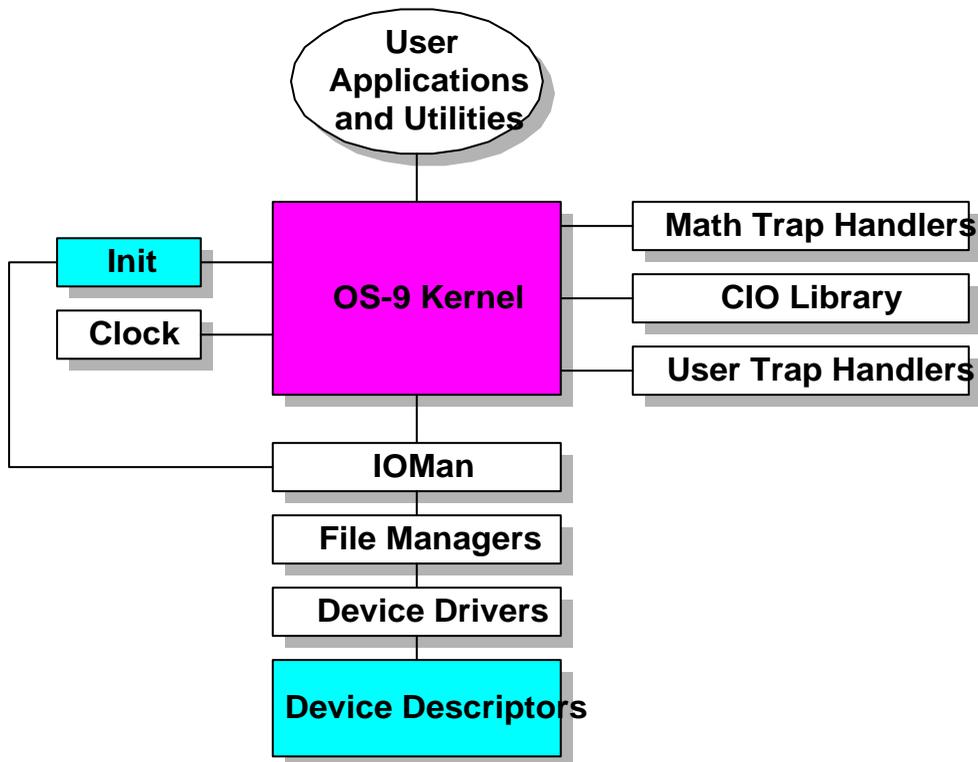
## For More Information

For specific information about file managers, device drivers, and device descriptors, refer to:

- **Chapter 1: System Overview** (this chapter)
- **Chapter 3: OS-9 Input/Output System**

- The *OS-9 for 68K Processors Technical I/O Manual*

Figure 1-1 OS-9 Module Organization



### Note

The shaded boxes contain non-executable code. These modules are referenced, not *called*. The kernel, file managers, and device drivers reference descriptors directly, but only the kernel and IOMan reference the `Init` module directly.

An important component, the command interpreter (the shell), is not shown in this diagram. The shell is an application program, not part of the operating system. It is described fully in ***Using OS-9 for 68K Processors***. To obtain a list of the specific modules making up OS-9 for your system, use the `ident` utility on the `OS9Boot` file.

Although all modules could be resident in ROM, the system bootstrap module is usually the only ROMed module in disk-based systems. All other modules are loaded into RAM during system startup.

## I/O Overview

---

IOMan maintains the I/O system for OS-9. The kernel provides the first level of I/O service by routing system call requests between processes and IOMan, which then passes the requests to the appropriate file managers and device drivers. Microware includes the following file managers in the OS-9 for 68K distribution.

### Embedded

**Table 1-1 Embedded File Managers**

---

Name	Description
SCF	<b>Sequential Character File Manager</b> Handles I/O for sequentially character-structured devices, such as terminals, printers, and modems.
PIPEMAN	<b>Pipe File Manager</b> Supports interprocess communications through memory buffers called <i>pipes</i> .

---

## Disk Based

**Table 1-2 Disk Based File Managers**

Name	Description
RBF	<b>Random Block File Manager</b> Handles I/O for random-access, block-structured devices, such as floppy/hard disk systems.
SBF	<b>Sequential Block File Manager</b> Handles I/O for sequentially block-structured devices, such as tape systems.
PCF	<b>PC File Manager</b> Handles reading/writing PC-DOS disks. It uses RBF drivers and is sold separately.

## Extended

**Table 1-3 Extended File Managers**

Name	Description
IFMAN	<b>Communications Interface File Manager</b> Manages network interfaces.
PKMAN	<b>Pseudo-Keyboard File Manager</b> Provides an interface to the driver side of SCF to enable the software to emulate a terminal.

**Table 1-3 Extended File Managers (continued)**

Name	Description
SOCKMAN	<b>Socket File Manager</b> Creates and manages the interface to communication protocols (sockets).
NFS	<b>Network File System Manager</b> Client file manager for mounting remote file systems. The NFS protocol provides remote access to shared file systems over local area networks.

## Other

Microware also supports the following file managers that are not included in the standard OS-9 distribution:

**Table 1-4 Other Microware File Managers**

Name	Description
CDFM	<b>Compact Disc File Manager</b> Handles CD and audio devices, as well as access to CD ROM and CD audio.
UCM	<b>User Communications Manager</b> Handles video, pointer, and keyboard devices for CD-I (Compact Disc-Interactive).
GFM	<b>Graphics File Manager</b> Provides a full set of text and graphics primitives, input handling for keyboards and pointers, and high level features for handling user interaction in a real-time, multitasking environment.

**Table 1-4 Other Microware File Managers (continued)**

Name	Description
NFM	<p><b>Network File Manager</b> Processes data requests over the OS-9 network.</p>
NRF	<p><b>Non-Volatile RAM File Manager</b> Controls non-volatile RAM and handles a flat (non-hierarchical) directory structure.</p>
ISM	<p><b>ISDN Basic Rate Interface Manager</b> Manager connections for Basic Rate (2B+D) Interfaces to the Integrated Services Digital Network (ISDN).</p>



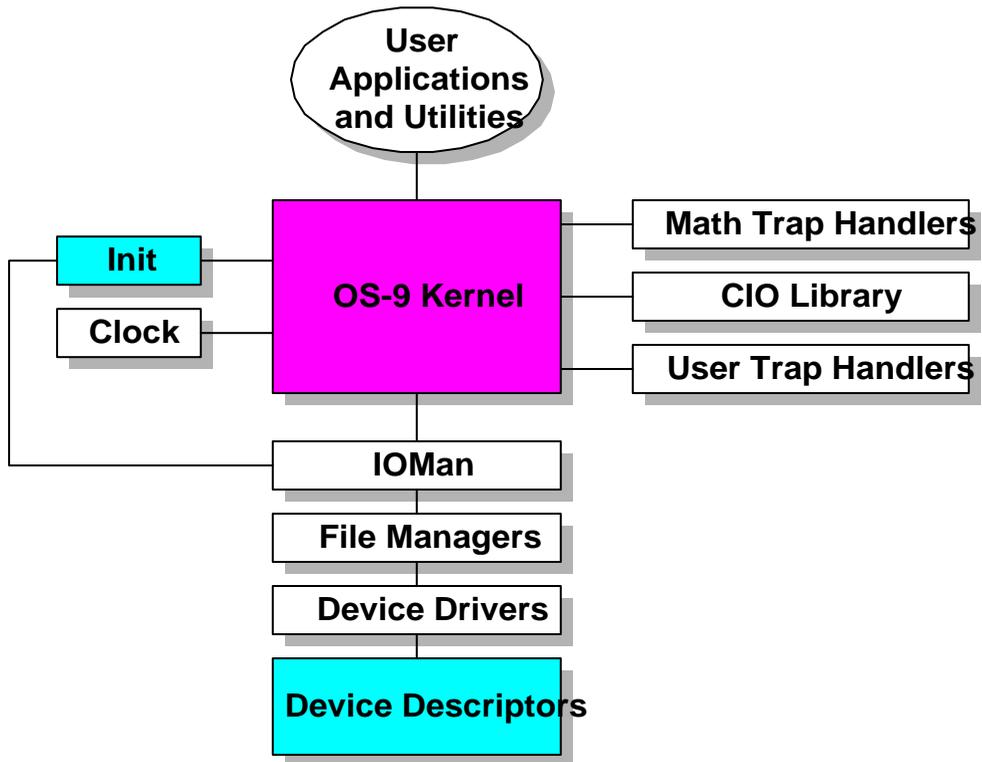
## For More Information

For specific information about these file managers, refer to:

- **Chapter 4: Interprocess Communications**
- The *OS-9 for 68K Processors Technical I/O Manual*

Figure 1-2 illustrates how OS-9 processes an I/O request:

Figure 1-2 OS-9 Module Organization



### Note

The shaded boxes contain non-executable code. These modules are referenced, not *called*. The kernel, file managers, and device drivers reference descriptors directly, but only the kernel and IOMan reference the `Init` module directly.

# Memory Modules

---

OS-9 is unique as it uses *memory modules* to manage both the physical assignment of memory to programs and the logical contents of memory. A memory module is a logical, self-contained program, program segment, or collection of data.

OS-9 supports ten pre-defined types of modules and allows you to define your own module types. Each module type has a different function.

The ten pre-defined memory types are defined by `M$Type` in the module header definition as follows:

<code>Prgm</code>	Program module
<code>Sbrtn</code>	Subroutine module
<code>Multi</code>	Reserved
<code>Data</code>	Data module
<code>CSDData</code>	Configuration status descriptor
<code>TrapLib</code>	User trap library
<code>System</code>	System module
<code>Flmgr</code>	File manager module
<code>Drivr</code>	Physical device driver

**Table 1-5 Memory Module Characteristics**

<b>Modules do not have to be</b>	<b>Modules are required to be</b>
Complete programs.	Re-entrant.
Written in machine language.	Position-independent.  Conforms with the basic module structure described in the next section.

The 68000 instruction set supports a programming style called *re-entrant* code—code that does not modify itself. This allows two or more different processes to share one **copy** of a module simultaneously. The processes do not affect each other, provided each process has an independent area for its variables.

Almost all OS-9 family software is re-entrant, and therefore uses memory very efficiently. For example, `umacs` requires 41K bytes of memory to load. If you make a request to run `umacs` while another user (process) is running it, OS-9 allows both processes to share the same copy, saving 41K of memory.



---

### Note

Data modules are an exception to the re-entrant requirement. However, careful coordination is required for several processes to update a shared data module simultaneously.

---

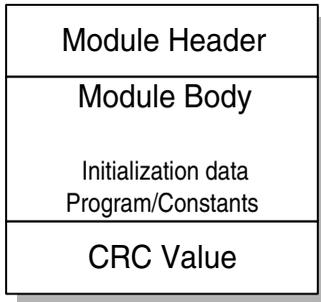
It does not matter where a *position-independent* module is loaded in memory. This allows OS-9 to load the program wherever memory space is available. In many operating systems, you must specify a *load address* to place the program in memory. OS-9 determines an appropriate load address for you when the program is run.

OS-9 compilers and interpreters automatically generate position-independent code. In assembly language programming, however, the programmer must insure position-independence by avoiding absolute address modes.

# Basic Module Structure

Each module has three parts: a *module header*, a *module body*, and a *CRC value*.

**Figure 1-3 Basic Memory Module Format**




---

## For More Information

For specific information about the structure and individual module header fields, refer to the list at the end of this chapter.

---

The module header contains information describing the module and its use. It is defined in assembly language by a `psect` directive. The linker creates the header at link-time. The information contained in the module header includes the module's name, size, type, language, memory requirements, and entry point.

The module body contains initialization data, program instructions, and constant tables.

The last three bytes of the module hold a CRC value (Cyclic Redundancy Check value) to verify the module's integrity. The linker creates the CRC at link-time.

## The CRC Value

The CRC (Cyclic Redundancy Check) is:

- An error checking method used frequently in data communications and storage systems.
- A vital part of the ROM memory module search technique.
- Located at the end of all modules to check the validity of the entire module.
- An extremely reliable assurance that programs in memory are intact before execution.
- An effective backup for the error detection systems of disk drives and memory systems.



---

### Note

The `F$CRC` description in [Appendix D: OS-9 for 68K System Calls](#) describes how `F$CRC` computes a module's CRC.

---

OS-9 computes a 24-bit CRC value over the entire module, starting at the first byte of the module header and ending at the byte just before the CRC itself. OS-9 family compilers and linkers automatically generate the module header and CRC values. If required, your program can use the `F$CRC` system call to compute a CRC value over any specified databytes.

OS-9 does not recognize a module with an incorrect CRC value. Therefore, you must update the CRC value of any **patched** or modified module for OS-9 to load the module from disk or find it in ROM. Use the OS-9 `fixmod` utility to update the CRC's of patched modules.



---

## Note

The Atomic kernel's checking of the CRC can be disabled using the `M$SysConf` flags of the `init` module.

---

## ROMed Memory Modules

When a system reset starts OS-9, the kernel searches for modules in ROM. It detects them by looking for the module header sync code (`$4AFC`). When the kernel detects this byte pattern, it checks the header parity to verify a correct header. If this test succeeds, the kernel obtains the module size from the header and computes a 24-bit CRC over the entire module. If the computed CRC is valid, the module is entered into the module directory.

OS-9 links to all of its component modules found during the search. It automatically includes in the system module directory all ROMed modules present in the system at startup. This allows you to create partially or completely ROM-based systems. It also includes any non-system modules found in ROM. This allows location of user-supplied software during the start-up process, and its entry into the module directory.

## Module Header Definitions

The following table and Figure 1-4 list definitions of the standard set of fields in the module header.

**Table 1-6 Module Header Fields**

Name	Description
M\$ID	<b>Sync Bytes (\$4AFC)</b> These constant bytes identify the start of a module.
M\$SysRev	<b>System Revision Identification</b> Identifies the format of a module.
M\$Size	<b>Size of Module</b> The overall module size in bytes, including the header and CRC.
M\$Owner	<b>Owner ID</b> The group/user ID of the module's owner.
M\$Name	<b>Offset to Module Name</b> The address of the module name string relative to the start (first sync byte) of the module. The name string can be located anywhere in the module and consists of a string of ASCII characters terminated by a null (zero) byte.

**Table 1-6 Module Header Fields (continued)**

Name	Description
M\$Accs	<p><b>Access Permissions</b>            Defines the permissible module access by its owner or other users. Module access permissions are divided into four sections:</p> <pre>reserved    (4 bits) group       (4 bits) public      (4 bits) owner       (4 bits)</pre> <p>Each of the non-reserved permission fields is defined as:</p> <pre>bit 3    reserved bit 2    execute permission bit 1    write permission bit 0    read permission</pre> <p>The total field is displayed as:</p> <pre>-----ewr-ewr-ewr</pre>

**Table 1-6 Module Header Fields (continued)**

Name	Description	
M\$Type	<b>Module Type Code</b> Module type values are in the <code>oskdefs.d</code> file. They describe the module type code as:	
	0	Not used (Wildcard value in system calls)
	Prgm	1
	Program module	
	Sbrtn	2
	Subroutine module	
	Multi	3
	Multi-module (reserved for future use)	
	Data	4
	Data module	
	CSDData	5
	Configuration status descriptor	
		6-10
	Reserved for future use	
	TrapLib	11
	User trap library	
	System	12
	System module (OS-9 component)	
	Flmgr	13
	File manager module	
	Drivr	14
	Physical device driver	
	Devic	15
	Device descriptor module	
		16-up
	User definable	

**Table 1-6 Module Header Fields (continued)**

Name	Description	
M\$Lang	<p><b>Language</b>            You can find module language codes in the <code>oskdefs.d</code> file. They describe whether the module is executable and which language the run-time system requires for execution (if any):</p>	
	0	Unspecified language (Wildcard value in system calls)
	Objct	1
	68000 machine language	
	ICode	2
	Basic I-code	
	PCode	3
	Pascal P-code	
	CCode	4
	C I-code (reserved for future use)	
	CblCode	5
	Cobol I-code	
	FrtnCode	6
	Fortran	
	I-code	7-15
	Reserved for future use	
		16-255
	User Definable	
	<p><b>NOTE:</b> Not all combinations of module type codes and languages necessarily make sense.</p>	

**Table 1-6 Module Header Fields (continued)**

Name	Description								
M\$Attr	<p><b>Attributes</b> The bits are defined as follows:</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Bit</th> <th>The Module Is</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>5</td> <td>A <i>system state</i> module.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>6</td> <td>A sticky module. A sticky module is retained in memory when its link count becomes zero. The module is removed from memory when its link count becomes -1 or memory is required for another use.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>7</td> <td>Re-entrant (sharable by multiple tasks).</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Bit	The Module Is	5	A <i>system state</i> module.	6	A sticky module. A sticky module is retained in memory when its link count becomes zero. The module is removed from memory when its link count becomes -1 or memory is required for another use.	7	Re-entrant (sharable by multiple tasks).
Bit	The Module Is								
5	A <i>system state</i> module.								
6	A sticky module. A sticky module is retained in memory when its link count becomes zero. The module is removed from memory when its link count becomes -1 or memory is required for another use.								
7	Re-entrant (sharable by multiple tasks).								
M\$Revs	<p><b>Module's Revision Level</b> If two modules with the same name and type are found in the memory search or loaded into memory, only the module with the highest revision level is kept. This enables easy substitution of modules for update or correction, especially ROMed modules.</p>								
M\$Edit	<p><b>Edition</b> The software release level for maintenance. OS-9 does not use this field. Every time a program is revised (even for a small change), increase this number. We recommend you key internal documentation within the source program to this system.</p>								
M\$Usage	<p><b>Comments</b> Reserved for offset to module usage comments (not currently used).</p>								
M\$Symbol	<p><b>Symbol Table Offset</b> Reserved for future use.</p>								

**Table 1-6 Module Header Fields (continued)**

Name	Description
M\$Ident	<b>Ident Code</b> (not currently used).
M\$HdExt	<b>Module Header Extension</b>
M\$HdExtSz	<b>Module Header Extension Size</b> The above two fields are used to identify the location of the additional header fields that are not part of the standard OS-9 Device Descriptor module headers. These fields are currently used only by the file manager using the DPIO source code system. The fields allow the DPIO I/O systems to specify an initialized data offset.
M\$Parity	<b>Header Parity Check</b> The one's complement of the exclusive-OR of the previous header <b>words</b> . OS-9 uses this for a quick check of the module's integrity.



### Note

*Offset* refers to the location of a module field, relative to the starting address of the module. Resolve module offsets in assembly code by using the names shown here and linking the module with the relocatable library, `sys.l` or `usr.l`.

**Table 1-7 Module Header Standard Fields**

<b>Offset</b>	<b>Name</b>	<b>Use</b>
\$00	M\$ID	Sync Bytes (\$4AFC)
\$02	M\$SysRev	Revision ID
\$04	M\$Size	Module Size
\$08	M\$Owner	Owner ID
\$0C	M\$Name	Module Name Offset †
\$10	M\$Accs	Access Permissions
\$12	M\$Type	Module Type
\$13	M\$Lang	Module Language
\$14	M\$Attr	Attributes
\$15	M\$Revs	Revision Level
\$16	M\$Edit	Edit Edition
\$18	M\$Usage	Usage Comments Offset †
\$1C	M\$Symbol	Symbol Table
\$20	M\$Ident	Ident Code
\$22		Reserved
\$28	M\$HdEXT	Module Header Extension

**Table 1-7 Module Header Standard Fields (continued)**

Offset	Name	Use
\$2C	M\$HdExtSz	Module Header Extension Size
\$2E	M\$Parity	Header Parity Check
\$30-up		Module Type Dependent
		Module Body
		CRC Check

† These fields are offset to strings

## Additional Header Fields for Individual Modules

Program, trap handler, device driver, file manager, and system modules have additional standard header fields following the universal offsets. These additional fields are listed below and shown in [Figure 1-4](#).

The *program module* is a common type of module (type: `Prgm`; language: `Objct`). A program module is executable as an independent process by the `F$Fork` or `F$Chain` system calls. The assembler and C compilers produce program modules, and most OS-9 commands are program modules. Program module headers have six fields in addition to the universal set.



### For More Information

**Chapter 4: Interprocess Communications** describes trap handler modules. The *OS-9 for 68K Processors Technical I/O Manual* describes file manager modules and device driver modules.

**Table 1-8 Additional Header Fields for Individual Modules**

Name	Description
(Program, trap handler, device driver, file manager, and system module headers use the following two fields.)	
M\$Exec	<p><b>Execution Offset</b></p> <p>The offset to the program's starting address. In the case of a file manager or device driver, this is the offset to the module's entry table. For data modules, this is the offset to the module's sharable data.</p>
M\$Excpt	<p><b>Default User Trap Execution Entry Point</b></p> <p>The relative address of a routine to execute if an uninitialized user trap is called.</p>
(Program, trap handler, and device driver module headers use the following field.)	
M\$Mem	<p><b>Memory Size</b></p> <p>The required size of the program's data area (storage for program variables).</p>
(Program and trap handler module headers use the following three fields.)	
M\$Stack	<p><b>Stack Size</b></p> <p>The minimum required size of the program's stack area.</p>

**Table 1-8 Additional Header Fields for Individual Modules (continued)**

Name	Description
M\$IData	<p><b>Initialized Data Offset</b></p> <p>The offset to the initialization data area's starting address. This area contains values to copy to the program's data area. The linker places all constant values declared in <code>vsects</code> here. The first four-byte value is the offset from the beginning of the data area to which the initialized data is copied. The next four-byte value is the number of initialized data-bytes to follow.</p>

**Table 1-8 Additional Header Fields for Individual Modules (continued)**

Name	Description
M\$IRefs	<p><b>Initialized References Offset</b></p> <p>The offset to a table of values to locate pointers in the data area. Initialized variables in the program's data area may contain values that are pointers to absolute addresses. Adjust code pointers by adding the absolute starting address of the object code area. Adjust the data pointers by adding the absolute starting address of the data area.</p> <p>The <code>F\$Fork</code> system call does the effective address calculation at execution time using tables created in the module.</p> <p>The first word of each table is the most significant (MS) word of the offset to the pointer.</p> <p>The second word is a count of the number of least significant (LS) word offsets to adjust.</p> <p><code>F\$Fork</code> makes the adjustment by combining the MS word with each LS word entry. This offset locates the pointer in the data area. The pointer is adjusted by adding the absolute starting address of the object code or the data area (for code pointers or data pointers, respectively). It is possible after exhausting this first count that another MS word and LS word are given. This continues until a MS word of zero and a LS word of zero are found.</p>
(Trap handler module headers use the following two fields.)	

**Table 1-8 Additional Header Fields for Individual Modules (continued)**

<b>Name</b>	<b>Description</b>
M\$Init	<b>Initialization Execution Offset</b> The offset to the trap initialization entry point.
M\$Term	<b>Termination Execution Offset</b> The offset to the trap termination entry point. Microware reserves this offset for future use.



**Note**

*Offset* refers to the location of a module field, relative to the starting address of the module. Resolve module offsets in assembly code by using the names shown here and linking the module with the relocatable library: `sys.l` or `usr.l`.

**Figure 1-4 Additional Header Fields for Individual Modules**

<b>Module Type:</b>	<b>Offset:</b>	<b>Usage:</b>
File Manager/ System	\$30	Execution Offset
	\$34	Default User Trap Execution Entry Point
Device Driver	\$38	Memory Size
	\$3C	Stack Size
Program	\$40	Initialized Data Offset
	\$44	Initialized Reference Offset
	\$48	Initialized Execution Offset
Trap Handlers	\$4C	Termination Execution Offset



---

**Note**

See **Chapter 3: OS-9 Input/Output System** for additional information on device descriptor's additional fields.

---



---

# Chapter 2: The Kernel

---

This chapter outlines the responsibilities of the kernel. It explains user and system state processing, memory management, system utilization, process creation and scheduling, and exception and interrupt processing. It includes the following topics:

- **Responsibilities of the Kernel**
- **System Call Overview**
- **Kernel System Call Processing**
- **Memory Management**
- **OS-9 Memory Map**
- **System Memory Allocation**
- **Memory Fragmentation**
- **Colored Memory**
- **System Memory Cache Lists**
- **System Initialization**
- **Initial System Process**
- **Customization Modules**
- **Process Creation**
- **Process Scheduling**
- **Exception and Interrupt Processing**



# Responsibilities of the Kernel

---

The **kernel** is the nucleus of OS-9. It manages system resources, controls processing, and manages exception/interrupt processing. It is a ROMable, compact OS-9 module.

The kernel's primary responsibility is to process and coordinate system calls, or service requests. OS-9 has two general types of system calls:

- Calls performing Input/Output, such as reads and writes.
- Calls performing system functions. System functions include memory management, system initialization, process creation and scheduling, and exception/interrupt processing.

When you make a system call, a user trap to the kernel occurs. The kernel determines what type of system call you want to perform. It directly executes the calls performing system functions, but does not execute I/O calls. The kernel provides the first level of processing for each I/O call, and then calls IOMan to complete the function by calling the appropriate file manager or device driver.

## Kernel Types

There are two distinct classes of the kernel:

Development Kernel

is the full-featured version of the kernel designed to be usable in embedded and multi-user environments.

Atomic Kernel

is primarily designed to be used in embedded systems, although it can also be used in multi-user systems.

## Kernel Differences

The main differences between the two versions of the kernel can be summarized as follows:

- **User-state debugging** (`F$DFork`, `F$DExec`, `F$DExit`) is not supported by the Atomic kernel. Debugging on Atomic systems is restricted to the capabilities of the system's ROM debugger.
- **Multi-user protection mechanisms** are not implemented in the Atomic kernel environment. These mechanisms include features such as:
  - Validation of user parameters. For example, validation of user buffer for data transfers.
  - External cache hardware is not supported. The Atomic kernel only supports on-chip caches (if present).
  - No MMU support for memory protection.
  - Validation of module/user ID permissions. Under an Atomic kernel (for example) any user can link to any module, regardless of the access permissions specified in the module.

These different kernel environments allow tailoring of the target system software to the requirements of the actual target application. **Appendix D: OS-9 for 68K System Calls** contains full details of the various system calls and in which environment they are available.

# System Call Overview

---

For information about specific system calls, refer to [Appendix D: OS-9 for 68K System Calls](#).

## User-State and System-State

To understand OS-9's system calls, you should be familiar with the two distinct OS-9 environments in which you can execute object code:

### User-State

The normal program environment in which processes execute. Generally, user-state processes do not deal directly with the specific hardware configuration of the system.

### System-State

The environment in which OS-9 system calls and interrupt service routines execute. On 68000-family processors, this is synonymous with supervisor state. System-state routines often deal with physical hardware present on a system.

Functions executing in system state have distinct advantages over those running in user state, including the following:

- A system-state routine can access all of the processor's capabilities. For example, on memory protected systems, a system-state routine may access any memory location in the system. It may mask interrupts, alter OS-9 internal data structures, or take direct control of hardware interrupt vectors.
- Some OS-9 system calls are only accessible from system state.

System-state characteristics make it the only way to provide certain types of programming functions. For example, it is almost impossible to provide direct I/O to a physical device from user state. Not all programs, however, should run in system state. Reasons to use user-state processing rather than system-state processing include:

- Memory protection prevents user-state routines from accidentally damaging data structures they do not own.
- A user-state process can be aborted. If a system-state routine loses control, the entire system usually crashes.
- System-state routines are far more difficult and dangerous to debug than user-state routines. You can use the user-state debugger to find most user-state problems. Generally, system-state problems are much more difficult to find.
- User-state programs are essentially isolated from physical hardware. Because they are not concerned with I/O details, they are easier to write and port.



---

## WARNING

If a system call returns with an exception error code, a system state exception has occurred. If you are getting system state exceptions, there is a bug either in the OS-9 system code, a driver, or some user-developed system code. Be advised that such exceptions can leave the system and the user program in an unknown and unstable state.

---

## Installing System-State Routines

System-state routines have direct access to all system hardware and can take over the entire machine, crashing or hanging up the system. To help prevent this, OS-9 limits the methods of creating routines that operate in system state.

There are four ways to provide system-state routines:

1. Install an `OS9P2` module in the system bootstrap file or in ROM. During cold start, the OS-9 kernel links to this module, and if found, calls its execution entry point. The most likely thing for such a module to do is install new system call codes. The drawback to this method is the `OS9P2` module must be in ROM or in the bootfile when the system is bootstrapped.
2. Use the I/O system as an entry into system state. File managers and device drivers always execute in system state. The most obvious reason to write system-state routines is to provide support for new hardware devices. You can write a dummy device driver and use the `I$GetStt` or `I$SetStt` routines to provide a gateway to the driver.
3. Write a trap handler module that executes in system state. In many cases, it is practical to debug most of the trap handler routines in user state, and then convert the trap module to system state. To make a trap handler execute in system state, you must set the supervisor state bit in the module attribute byte and create the module as super user. When the user trap executes, it is in system state.
4. A program executes in system state if the supervisor state bit in the module's attribute word is set and the module is owned by the super user. This can be useful in rare instances.




---

### Note

For routines of limited use that are dynamically loaded and unlinked, writing a trap handler module may be the most convenient method.

---



---

**Note**

I/O-related system-state routines may not be time-sliced. The kernel disables system state time-slicing for a process when it dispatches to IOMan. It is the responsibility of the file manager and/or device driver (rarely) to allow system state time-slicing for the process while the I/O request is executed.

---

# Kernel System Call Processing

The kernel processes all OS-9 system calls (service requests). The system-wide relocatable library files, `sys.l` and `usr.l`, define symbolic names for all system calls. The files are linked with hand-written assembly language or compiler-generated code. The OS-9 assembler has a built-in macro to generate system calls:

```
OS9      I$Read
```

This is recognized and assembled to produce the same code as:

```
TRAP    #0
dc.w    I$Read
```

In addition, the C compiler standard library includes functions to access nearly all user mode OS-9 system calls from C programs.

Parameters for system calls are usually passed and returned in registers. There are two general types of system calls:

- System function calls (calls that do not perform I/O).
- I/O calls.

## System Function Calls

There are two types of system function calls, user-state and system-state:

User-State

These requests perform memory management, multitasking, and other functions for user programs. They are mainly processed by the kernel.

System-State

Only system software in system state can use these calls, and they usually operate on internal OS-9 data structures. To preserve OS-9's modularity, these requests are system calls rather than subroutines. User-state programs cannot access them, but system modules such as device drivers may use them.

The symbolic name of each system function call begins with `F$`. For example, the system call to link a module is `F$Link`.

Memory requested in system state is *not* recorded in the process descriptor memory list. Therefore, you must ensure the memory is returned to the system before the process terminates.



---

### Note

In general, system-state routines may use any of the user-state system calls. However, you must avoid making system calls at inappropriate times. For example, avoid I/O calls, timed sleep requests, and other calls that can be particularly time consuming (such as `F$CRC`) in an interrupt service routine.

---



---

### WARNING

Avoid the `F$TLink` and `F$Icpt` system calls in system-state routines. Certain portions of the C library may be inappropriate for use in system state.

---

## I/O Calls

I/O calls perform various I/O functions. IOMan, the file manager, device driver, and kernel process I/O calls for a particular device. The symbolic names for this category of calls begin with `I$`. For example, the read service request is `I$Read`.

You may use any I/O system call in a system-state routine, with one slight difference than when executed in user-state. All path numbers used in system state are system path numbers. Each process descriptor has a path table that converts process local path numbers into system path

numbers. The system itself has a global path number table to convert system path numbers into actual addresses of path descriptors. You must make system-state I/O system calls using system path numbers.

For example, the OS-9 `F$PErr` system call prints an error message on the caller's standard error path. To do this, it may not simply perform output on path number two. Instead it must examine the caller's process descriptor and extract the system path number from the third entry (0, 1, 2, ...) in the caller's path table.

When a user-state process exits with open I/O paths, the `F$Exit` routine automatically closes the paths. This is possible because OS-9 keeps track of the open paths in the process' path table. In system state, the `I$Open` and `I$Create` system calls return a system path number that OS-9 does not record in the process path table or anywhere else. Therefore, the system-state routine that opens any I/O paths must ensure the paths are eventually closed, even if the underlying process is abnormally terminated.

## Memory Management

---

To load any object (such as a program or constant table) into memory, the object **must** have the standard OS-9 memory module format as described in [Chapter 1: System Overview](#). This allows OS-9 to maintain a **module directory** to keep track of modules in memory. The module directory contains the name, address, and other related information about each module in memory.

OS-9 adds the module to the module directory when it is loaded into memory. Each directory entry contains a **link count**. The link count is the number of processes using the module.

When a process links to a module in memory, the module's link count increments by one. When a process unlinks from a module, the module's link count decrements by one. When a module's link count becomes 0, its memory is de-allocated and it is removed from the module directory, unless the module is **sticky**.

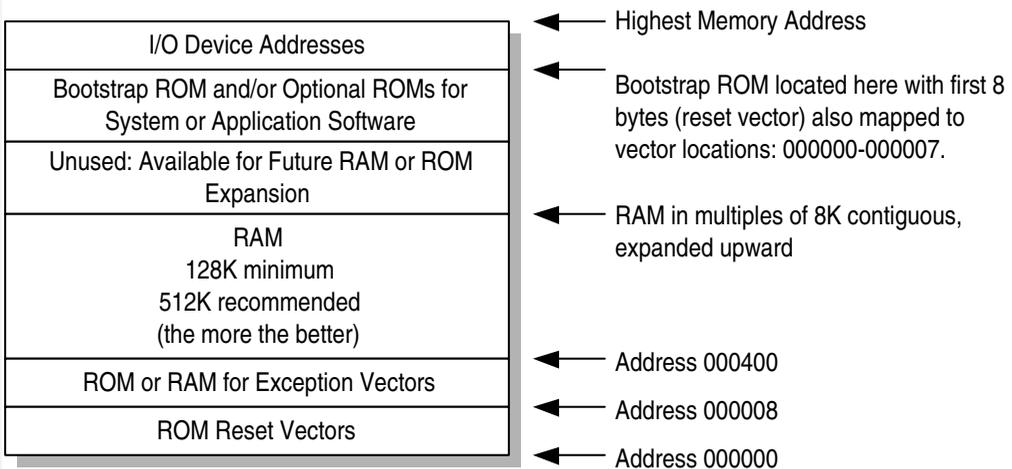
A **sticky module** is not removed from memory until its link count becomes -1 or memory is required for another use. A module is sticky if the sixth bit of the module header's attribute field (`M$Attr`) is set.

## OS-9 Memory Map

OS-9 uses a software memory management system containing all memory within a single memory map. Therefore, all user tasks share a common address space.

A map of a typical OS-9 memory space is shown in **Figure 2-1**. Unless otherwise noted, the sections shown need not be located at specific addresses. However, Microware recommends you keep each section in contiguous reserved blocks, arranged in an order that facilitates future expansion. Whenever possible, it is best to have physically contiguous RAM.

**Figure 2-1 Typical OS-9 Memory Map**



### Note

For the 68020, 68030, 68040, and CPU32 family of CPUs, you can set the Vector Base Register (VBR) anywhere in the system. Thus, for these types of systems, there is no requirement that RAM or ROM be at address 0.

## System Memory Allocation

---

During the OS-9 start-up sequence, an automatic search function in the kernel and the boot ROM finds blocks of RAM and ROM. OS-9 reserves some RAM for its own data structures. ROM blocks are searched for valid OS-9 ROM modules.

OS-9 requires a variable amount of memory. Actual requirements depend on the system configuration and the number of active tasks and open files. The following sections describe approximate amounts of memory used by various parts of OS-9.

### Operating System Object Code

A complete set of typical operating system component modules (kernel, IOMan, file managers, device drivers, device descriptors, and tick driver) occupies about 50K to 64K bytes of memory. On disk-based systems, these modules are normally bootstrap-loaded into RAM. OS-9 does not dynamically load overlays or swap system code; therefore, no additional RAM is required for system code.

You can place OS-9 in ROM for non-disk systems. The typical operating system object code for ROM-based, non-disk systems occupies about 30K to 40K bytes.

OS-9 uses a minimum of 8K RAM for internal use. The system global memory area is usually located at the lowest RAM addressed. It contains an exception jump table, the debugger/boot variables, and a system global area. Variables in the system global area are symbolically defined in the `sys.l` library and the variable names begin with `D_`. The Reset SSP vector points to the system global area.



---

## WARNING

User programs should *never* directly access system global variables because of issues such as portability and (depending on hardware) memory protection. System calls are provided to allow user programs to read the information in this area.

---

OS-9 maintains dynamic-sized data structures (such as I/O buffers, path descriptors, and process descriptors) that are allocated from the general RAM area when needed. The System Global Memory area keeps pointers to the addresses of these data structures. A typical small system uses approximately 32K of RAM. The total depends on elements such as the number of active devices, the memory, and the number of active processes. The `sys.l` library source files include the exact sizes of all the system's data structure elements.

All unused RAM memory is assigned to a free memory pool. Memory space is removed and returned to the pool as it is allocated or deallocated for various purposes. OS-9 automatically assigns memory from the free memory pool whenever any of the following occur:

- Modules are loaded into RAM.
- New processes are created.
- Processes request additional RAM.
- OS-9 requires more I/O buffers or its internal data structures must be expanded.

Storage for user program object code modules and data space is dynamically allocated from and deallocated to the free memory pool. User object code modules are automatically shared if two or more tasks execute the same object program. User object code application programs can also be stored in ROM memory.

The total memory required for user memory depends largely on the application software to be run. Microware suggests you have a system minimum of 128K plus an additional 64K per user available. Alternatively, a small ROM-based control system might only need 64K of memory.

## Memory Allocators

The kernel offers two versions of the memory allocator:

- Buddy Allocator
- Standard Allocator

The allocator used is determined by the version of the kernel you select.

The Buddy Allocator is designed to give more deterministic operation in a real-time environment than the Standard Allocator, at the expense of memory efficiency.

The majority of systems use the Standard Allocator. This is the memory allocator used by the kernel since the original release of OS-9. This allocator can allocate memory to a resolution of 16-bytes. For example, a request for 1025 bytes rounds up to 1040 bytes.

The Buddy Allocator uses a **binary-buddy** algorithm which maintains free memory in block sizes that are binary multiples. Under the Buddy Allocator, memory requests are rounded up to the next binary power of the request size. For example, a request for 1025 bytes rounds up to 2048 bytes. The binary-buddy technique results in faster memory allocation for the system, and thus overall system determinism is improved. Because the Buddy Allocator is less efficient for system memory usage, this allocator is typically used in embedded (the Atomic kernel) applications where real-time performance is critical.

When you use the buddy allocator, the system memory lists (either in ROM or in the `Init` module's colored memory lists) must have a start address on the same boundary as the size of the block.

# Memory Fragmentation

---

Once a program is loaded, it must remain at the address where it was originally loaded. Although position-independent programs can be initially placed at any address where free memory is available, program modules cannot be relocated dynamically after they are loaded. This can lead to **memory fragmentation**.

When programs are loaded, they are assigned the first sufficiently large block of memory at the highest address possible in the address space. If a colored memory request is made, this may not be true. If a number of program modules are loaded, and subsequently one or more non-contiguous modules are unlinked, several fragments of free memory space exist. The total free memory space may be quite large. However, because it is scattered, not enough space exists in a single block to load a particular program module.




---

## For More Information

For more information on colored memory, refer to the next section.

---

You can avoid memory fragmentation by loading modules at system startup. This places the modules in contiguous memory space. Or, you can initialize each standard device when booting the system. This allows the devices to allocate memory from higher RAM than would be available if the devices were initialized after booting.




---

## For More Information

`mfree` displays free system RAM. Refer to the **Utilities Reference** for more information about `mfree`.

---

If serious memory fragmentation does occur, the system administrator can kill processes and unlink modules in ascending order of importance until there is sufficient contiguous memory to proceed. Use the `mfree` utility to determine the number and size of free memory blocks.

## Colored Memory

---

OS-9 colored memory allows a system to recognize different memory types and reserve areas for special purposes. For example, you could design a part of a system's RAM to store video images and battery back up another part. The kernel allows isolation and specific access of areas of RAM like these. You can request specific memory types or **colors** when:

- Allocating memory buffers.
- Creating modules in memory.
- Loading modules into memory.

If a specific type of memory is not available, the kernel returns error #237, `E$NORAM`.

Colored memory lists are not essential on systems with RAM consisting of one homogeneous type, although they can improve system performance on some systems and allow greater flexibility in configuring memory search areas. The default memory allocation requests are still appropriate for most homogeneous systems and for applications that do not require one memory type over another. Colored memory lists are required for the `F$Trans` system call to perform address translation.

## Colored Memory Definition List

The kernel must have a description of the CPU's address space to make use of the colored memory routines. You can establish colored memory by including a colored memory definition list (`MemList`) in the `systype.d` file, which then becomes part of the `Init` module. The list describes each memory region's characteristics. The kernel searches each region in the list for RAM during system startup.

A colored memory definition list contains the following information:

- Memory color (type)
- Memory priority
- Memory access permissions

- Local bus address
- Block size the kernel's coldstart routine uses to search the area for RAM or ROM
- External bus translation address (for DMA and dual-ported RAM)
- Optional name

The memory list may contain as many regions as needed. If no list is specified, the kernel automatically creates one region describing the memory found by the bootstrap ROM.

`MemList` is a series of `MemType` macros defined in `systype.d` and used by `init.a`. Each line in the `MemList` must contain all the following parameters, in order:

```
type, priority, attributes, blksiz, addr begin, addr
end, name, DMA-offset
```

The colored memory list must end with a longword of zero. The following describes the `MemList` parameters:

**Table 2-1 MemList Parameters**

Parameter	Size	Definition									
Memory Type	word	Type of memory. Three memory types are currently defined in <code>memory.h</code> : <table border="0" style="margin-left: 20px;"> <tr> <td><code>SYSRAM</code></td> <td><code>0x01</code></td> <td>System RAM memory</td> </tr> <tr> <td><code>VIDEO1</code></td> <td><code>0x80</code></td> <td>Video memory for plane A</td> </tr> <tr> <td><code>VIDEO2</code></td> <td><code>0x81</code></td> <td>Video memory for plane B</td> </tr> </table>	<code>SYSRAM</code>	<code>0x01</code>	System RAM memory	<code>VIDEO1</code>	<code>0x80</code>	Video memory for plane A	<code>VIDEO2</code>	<code>0x81</code>	Video memory for plane B
<code>SYSRAM</code>	<code>0x01</code>	System RAM memory									
<code>VIDEO1</code>	<code>0x80</code>	Video memory for plane A									
<code>VIDEO2</code>	<code>0x81</code>	Video memory for plane B									
Priority	word	Priority of memory (0-255). High priority memory is allocated first. If the block priority is 0, the block can only be allocated by a request for the specific color (type) of the block.									

**Table 2-1 MemList Parameters (continued)**

Parameter	Size	Definition																		
Access Permissions	word	<p>Memory type access bit definitions:</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Bit</th> <th>Name</th> <th>Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>B_USER</td> <td>User processes can allocate this memory.  <b>NOTE:</b> This bit is ignored if the B_ROM bit is set.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>B_PARITY</td> <td>Parity memory; the kernel initializes this memory during startup.  <b>NOTE:</b> Only B_USER memory may be initialized.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>2</td> <td>B_ROM</td> <td>ROM; the kernel searches this memory for modules during startup.  <b>NOTE:</b> Processes cannot allocate B_ROM memory, as the B_USER and B_PARITY bits are ignored if B_ROM is set.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>3</td> <td>B_NVRAM</td> <td>NVRAM memory is searched for modules.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>4</td> <td>B_SHARE</td> <td>SHARED memory is supported by allocating the system's data structure for the shared memory block out of the block itself.</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Bit	Name	Description	0	B_USER	User processes can allocate this memory.  <b>NOTE:</b> This bit is ignored if the B_ROM bit is set.	1	B_PARITY	Parity memory; the kernel initializes this memory during startup.  <b>NOTE:</b> Only B_USER memory may be initialized.	2	B_ROM	ROM; the kernel searches this memory for modules during startup.  <b>NOTE:</b> Processes cannot allocate B_ROM memory, as the B_USER and B_PARITY bits are ignored if B_ROM is set.	3	B_NVRAM	NVRAM memory is searched for modules.	4	B_SHARE	SHARED memory is supported by allocating the system's data structure for the shared memory block out of the block itself.
Bit	Name	Description																		
0	B_USER	User processes can allocate this memory.  <b>NOTE:</b> This bit is ignored if the B_ROM bit is set.																		
1	B_PARITY	Parity memory; the kernel initializes this memory during startup.  <b>NOTE:</b> Only B_USER memory may be initialized.																		
2	B_ROM	ROM; the kernel searches this memory for modules during startup.  <b>NOTE:</b> Processes cannot allocate B_ROM memory, as the B_USER and B_PARITY bits are ignored if B_ROM is set.																		
3	B_NVRAM	NVRAM memory is searched for modules.																		
4	B_SHARE	SHARED memory is supported by allocating the system's data structure for the shared memory block out of the block itself.																		
Search Block Size	word	The kernel checks every (search block size)<<4 to see if RAM/ROM exists.																		

**Table 2-1 MemList Parameters (continued)**

Parameter	Size	Definition
Low Memory Limit	long	Beginning address of the block, as referenced by the CPU.
High Memory Limit	long	End address of the block (+1), as referenced by the CPU.
Description String Offset	word	Offset of a user-defined string describing the type of memory block.
Address Translation Adjustment	long	The external bus address of the beginning of the block. If 0, this field does not apply. Refer to <a href="#">F\$Trans</a> for more information.

The following is an example system memory map:

CPU Address	Bus Address	Memory Size	Physical Location
\$00000000	\$00200000	\$200000	on-board cpu ram
\$00600000	\$00600000	\$200000	VMEbus ram

A corresponding MemList table might appear as follows:

```
* memory list definitions for init module (user adjustable)
align
* MemType type, prior, attributes, blksiz, addr limits, name, DMA-offset
MemList
* on-board ram covered by "rom memory list:"
* - this memory block is known to the "rom's memory list," thus it was
*   "parity initialized" by the rom code.
* - the cpu's local base address of the block is at $00000000.
* - the bus base address of the block is at $200000.
* - this ram is fastest access for the cpu, so it has the highest priority.
*
MemType SYSRAM,255,B_USER,4096,0,$200000,OnBoard,$200000

* off-board expansion ram
* - this memory block is not known to the "rom's memory list,"
*   thus it needs "parity initialization" by the kernel.
* - as the block is accessed over the bus, the base address of the block
*   is the same for cpu and dma accesses.
* - this ram is slower access than on-board ram, therefore it
*   has a lower priority than the on-board ram.
*
MemType SYSRAM,250,B_USER+B_PARITY,4096,$600000,$800000,OffBoard,0
```

```
dc.l 0 end of list
```

```
OnBoard dc.b "fast on-board RAM",0
```

```
OffBoard dc.b "VMEbus memory",0
```

Colored memory definitions are not essential for homogenous memory systems. However, colored memory definitions in this type of system can improve system performance and simplify memory list reconfiguration.

In a homogeneous memory system, the kernel allocates memory from the top of available RAM when requests are made by `F$SRqMem` (for example, when loading modules). If the system has RAM on-board the CPU and off-board in external memory boards, the modules tend to be loaded into the off-board RAM, because OS-9 always uses high memory first. On-board RAM is not used for a `F$SRqMem` call until the off-board memory is unable to accommodate the request.

Programs running in off-board memory execute slower than those running in on-board memory, due to bus access arbitration. Also, external bus activity increases. This may impact the performance of other bus masters in the system.

The colored memory lists can be used to reverse this tendency in the kernel, so a CPU does not use off-board memory until all of its on-board memory is used. This results in faster program execution and less saturation of the system's external bus. Do this by making the priority of the on-board memory higher than off-board memory, as shown in the example lists on the preceding page.

In a homogeneous memory system, the memory search areas are defined in the ROM's memory list. If you do not use colored memory, you must make new ROMs from source code (usually impossible for end-users) or from a patched version of the original ROMs (usually difficult for end-users) to make changes to the memory search areas.

The colored memory lists simplify changes by configuring the search areas as follows:

- The ROM's memory list describes only the on-board memory.
- The colored memory lists in `systype.d` define the on-board memory and any external bus memory search areas in the `Init` module only.

The use of colored memory in a homogeneous memory system allows you to easily reconfigure the external bus search areas by adjusting the lists in `systype.d` and making a new `Init` module. The ROM does not require patching.

## System Memory Cache Lists

---

OS-9 supports the ability to precisely define the caching modes used for regions of memory in the system. Precise definition of these modes for particular regions allows the user to configure the system for optimal performance and/or system functionality.

Many systems simply desire maximum performance, but there are many cases where regions of memory must be declared non-cachable so cache coherency problems do not result when processes directly reference I/O devices and memory shared with other processors.

When the SSM module is installed in the system, it provides a default cache mode of write-back for user-state accesses. This default mode can be over-riden for specific regions by creating `CacheList` entries in the `Init` module.

A `CacheList` entry contains the following information:

- Memory block start address.
- Memory block end address.
- Cache mode for memory block.

The `CacheList` may contain as many regions as needed. If no list is specified, then the default cache mode for user-state is write-through.

`CacheList` is a series of `CacheType` macros defined in `systype.d` and used by `init.a`. Each line in the `CacheList` must contain the following parameters, in order:

```
block start, block end, cache mode
```

The cache list entries must end with a longword of 0xffffffff (-1). The following describes the `CacheList` parameters:

**Table 2-2 CacheList Parameters**

Parameter	Size	Definition
Block Start	long	Start address of memory region.
Block End	long	End address (+1) of memory region.
Cache Mode	word	Cache mode (MMU specific) for region.

The following is an example system memory map:

**Table 2-3 Example System Memory Map**

CPU Address	Size	Memory Size, Usage, and Cache Mode
\$00000000	\$02000000	32Meg on-board memory, cache enabled, copy-back mode. This memory can be <i>snooped</i> by the on-board master, so copy-back is viable.
\$02000000	\$7e000000	Off-board memory. This region cannot be snooped by the on-board master, but as it is being used for on-board master usage only, then copy-back caching is viable.

**Table 2-3 Example System Memory Map (continued)**

CPU Address	Size	Memory Size, Usage, and Cache Mode
\$800000000	\$02000000	32Meg reserved for shared memory with other processors or a memory-mapped video (for example).  This region should be cache-inhibited (shared case) or for performance (video case).
\$e0000000	\$20000000	System I/O regions (both on-board peripherals and I/O expansion space). This region must be cache inhibited and serialized access due to the nature of I/O devices.

A corresponding CacheList Table might appear as follows:

```
* CacheList entries for init module (user adjustable)
*
* define cache-mode overrides for system
*
CPUALIGN
CacheList
CacheType 0,$02000000,CopyBack on-board area is copy-back
CacheType $02000000,$80000000,CopyBack off-board area is copy-back
CacheType $80000000,$82000000,CINotSer shared area is cache-inhibited
CacheType $e0000000,$fffffff,CISer I/O area us cache-inhibited, serialized
dc.l -1 terminate list
```



## Note

There is no direct relationship between the kernel's colored memory lists and the CacheList entries. Each list is used for its own purpose. For example, it is allowed to have two cache modes described for separate regions falling within a single colored memory list entry.

## System Initialization

---

After a hardware reset, the bootstrap ROM executes the kernel (located in ROM or loaded from disk, depending on the system involved). The kernel initializes the system, which includes locating ROM modules and running the system startup task (usually `Sysgo`).

### Init: The Configuration Module

`Init` is a non-executable module of type `System` (code \$0C) which contains a table of system startup parameters. During startup, `Init` specifies initial table sizes and system device names, but it is always available to determine system limits. It must be in memory when the kernel executes and usually resides in the `OS9Boot` file or in ROM.

The `Init` module begins with a standard module header (the standard module header is covered in [Chapter 1: System Overview](#)) and the additional fields shown in [Table 2-4](#) and in [Figure 2-2](#).



---

#### Note

Refer to [Appendix A: Example Code](#) for an example program listing of the `Init` module. Offset names are defined in the relocatable library `sys.l`.

---

**Table 2-4 Init Module Values**

Offset	Name	Description
\$30	Reserved	Reserved for future use.
\$34	M\$PollSz	<b>Number of Entries in the IRQ Polling Table</b> One entry is required for each interrupt generating device control register. Atomic kernel default is 16. Development kernel default is 32.
\$36	M\$DevCnt	<b>Device Table Size</b> The number of entries in the system device table. One entry is required for each device in the system. Atomic IOMan default is 8. Development IOMan default is 32.
\$38	M\$Procs.	<b>Initial Process Table Size</b> Indicates the initial number of active processes allowed in the system. For Atomic OS-9, this table is fixed; for the development kernel, it automatically expands as needed. Atomic kernel default is 32. Development kernel default is 64.
\$3A	M\$Paths	<b>Initial Path Table Size</b> The initial number of open paths in the system. For Atomic OS-9, this table is fixed; for the development kernel, it automatically expands as needed. Atomic IOMan default is 32. Development IOMan default is 64.

**Table 2-4 Init Module Values (continued)**

<b>Offset</b>	<b>Name</b>	<b>Description</b>
\$3C	M\$SParam	<p><b>Offset to Parameter String for Startup Module</b></p> <p>The offset to the parameter string (if any) to pass to the first executable module. An offset of 0 indicates no parameter string is required. The parameter string itself is located elsewhere, usually near the end of the <code>Init</code> module.</p>
\$3E	M\$SysGo	<p><b>First Executable Module Name Offset</b></p> <p>The offset to the name string of the first executable module; usually <code>SysGo</code> or <code>shell</code>.</p>
\$40	M\$SysDev	<p><b>Default Directory Name Offset</b></p> <p>The offset to the initial default directory name string; usually <code>/d0</code> or <code>/h0</code>. The kernel does a <code>chd</code> and <code>chx</code> to this device before forking the initial device. If the system does not use disks, this offset must be 0.</p>
\$42	M\$Consol	<p><b>Initial I/O Pathlist Name Offset</b></p> <p>This offset usually points to the <code>/TERM</code> string. This pathlist is opened as the standard I/O path for the initial process. It is generally used to set up the initial I/O paths to and from a terminal. This offset should contain 0 if no console device is in use.</p>

**Table 2-4 Init Module Values (continued)**

Offset	Name	Description
\$44	M\$Extens	<p><b>Customization Module Name Offset</b></p> <p>The offset to a name string of a list of customization modules (if any). A customization module is intended to complement or change OS-9's existing standard system calls. OS-9 searches for these modules during startup. Typically, these modules are found in the bootfile. They are executed in system state if found. Modules listed in the name string are separated by spaces. The default name string to search for is OS9P2. If there are no customization modules, set this value to 0.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> A customization module may only alter the d0, d1, and ccr registers.</p> <p><b>More Information:</b> Refer to the following section for more information on customization modules.</p>
\$46	M\$Clock	<p><b>Clock Module Name Offset</b></p> <p>If there is no clock module name string, set this value to 0.</p>
\$48	M\$Slice	<p><b>Time slice</b></p> <p>The number of clock ticks per time slice. The number of clock ticks per time slice defaults to 2.</p>

**Table 2-4 Init Module Values (continued)**

<b>Offset</b>	<b>Name</b>	<b>Description</b>
\$4A	Reserved	Reserved for future use.
\$4C	M\$Site	<b>Installation Site Code Offset</b> This value is usually set to 0. OS-9 does not currently use this field.
\$50	M\$Instal	<b>Offset to Installation Name</b>
\$52	M\$CPUTyp	<b>CPU Type</b> CPU type: 68000, 68008, 68010, 68020, 68030, 68040, 68070, or 683XX. The default is 68000.
\$56	M\$OS9Lv1	<b>Level, Version, and Edition</b> This four byte field is divided into three parts: level: 1 byte version: 2 bytes edition: 1 byte For example, level 1, version 3.0, edition 1 would be 1301.
\$5A	M\$OS9Rev	<b>Revision Offset</b> The offset to the OS-9 level/revision string.
\$5C	M\$SysPri	<b>Priority</b> The system priority at which the first module (usually <code>sysGo</code> or <code>shell</code> ) is executed. This is generally the base priority at which all processes start. The default is 128.

**Table 2-4 Init Module Values (continued)**

Offset	Name	Description
\$5E	M\$MinPty	<b>Minimum Priority</b> The initial system minimum executable priority. The default is 0.
\$60	M\$MaxAge	<b>Maximum Age</b> The initial system maximum natural age. The default is 0.
\$62	M\$MDirSz	<b>Module Directory Size</b> The initial module count for the system. For the Atomic kernel this table is fixed; for the Development kernel, it automatically expands as needed. Atomic and Development kernels' defaults are 64.
\$64	Reserved	Reserved for future use.
\$66	M\$Events	<b>Number of Entries in the Events Table</b> The initial number of entries allowed in the events table. For the Atomic kernel this table is fixed; for the Development kernel, it automatically expands as needed. Atomic kernel default is 16. Development kernel default is 32.  <b>More Information:</b> Refer to <a href="#">F\$Event</a> for a discussion of using events.

**Table 2-4 Init Module Values (continued)**

Offset	Name	Description
\$68	M\$Compat	<p><b>Revision Compatibility</b> This byte is used for revision compatibility. The default is 0. The following bits are currently defined:</p> <p><b>Bit Set Bit To:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>0 Save all registers for IRQ routines. If you have OS-9 for 68K version 3.0 or greater, this flag is ignored.</li> <li>1 Prevent the kernel from using stop instructions.</li> <li>2 Ignore <b>sticky</b> bit in module headers.</li> <li>3 Disable cache burst operation (68030 systems).</li> <li>4 Patternize memory when allocated or de-allocated.</li> <li>5 Prevent kernel cold-start from starting system clock.</li> <li>6 Kernel ignores spurious IRQs.</li> <li>7 Only the process creating an alarm can delete it.</li> </ul>

**Table 2-4 Init Module Values (continued)**

Offset	Name	Description																																		
\$69	M\$Compa 2	<p><b>Compatibility Bit #2</b>            This byte is used for revision compatibility. The following bits are currently defined:</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Bit</th> <th>Function</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>0 0</td> <td>External instruction cache is <i>not</i> snoopy.*</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1 1</td> <td>External instruction cache is snoopy or absent.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1 0</td> <td>External data cache is <i>not</i> snoopy.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1 1</td> <td>External data cache is snoopy or absent.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>2 0</td> <td>On-chip instruction cache is <i>not</i> snoopy.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>2 1</td> <td>On-chip instruction cache is snoopy or absent.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>3 0</td> <td>On-chip data cache is <i>not</i> snoopy.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>3 1</td> <td>On-chip data cache is snoopy or absent.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>4 0</td> <td>68349: Cache/SRAM Bank 0 is SRAM.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>4 1</td> <td>68349: Cache/SRAM Bank 0 is Cache.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>5 0</td> <td>68349: Cache/SRAM Bank 1 is SRAM.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>5 1</td> <td>68349: Cache/SRAM Bank 1 is Cache.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>6 0</td> <td>68349: Cache/SRAM Bank 2 is SRAM.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>6 1</td> <td>68349: Cache/SRAM Bank 2 is Cache.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>7 0</td> <td>68349: Cache/SRAM Bank 3 is SRAM.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>7 1</td> <td>68349: Cache/SRAM Bank 3 is Cache.</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>* snoopy = cache that maintains its integrity without software intervention.</p>	Bit	Function	0 0	External instruction cache is <i>not</i> snoopy.*	1 1	External instruction cache is snoopy or absent.	1 0	External data cache is <i>not</i> snoopy.	1 1	External data cache is snoopy or absent.	2 0	On-chip instruction cache is <i>not</i> snoopy.	2 1	On-chip instruction cache is snoopy or absent.	3 0	On-chip data cache is <i>not</i> snoopy.	3 1	On-chip data cache is snoopy or absent.	4 0	68349: Cache/SRAM Bank 0 is SRAM.	4 1	68349: Cache/SRAM Bank 0 is Cache.	5 0	68349: Cache/SRAM Bank 1 is SRAM.	5 1	68349: Cache/SRAM Bank 1 is Cache.	6 0	68349: Cache/SRAM Bank 2 is SRAM.	6 1	68349: Cache/SRAM Bank 2 is Cache.	7 0	68349: Cache/SRAM Bank 3 is SRAM.	7 1	68349: Cache/SRAM Bank 3 is Cache.
Bit	Function																																			
0 0	External instruction cache is <i>not</i> snoopy.*																																			
1 1	External instruction cache is snoopy or absent.																																			
1 0	External data cache is <i>not</i> snoopy.																																			
1 1	External data cache is snoopy or absent.																																			
2 0	On-chip instruction cache is <i>not</i> snoopy.																																			
2 1	On-chip instruction cache is snoopy or absent.																																			
3 0	On-chip data cache is <i>not</i> snoopy.																																			
3 1	On-chip data cache is snoopy or absent.																																			
4 0	68349: Cache/SRAM Bank 0 is SRAM.																																			
4 1	68349: Cache/SRAM Bank 0 is Cache.																																			
5 0	68349: Cache/SRAM Bank 1 is SRAM.																																			
5 1	68349: Cache/SRAM Bank 1 is Cache.																																			
6 0	68349: Cache/SRAM Bank 2 is SRAM.																																			
6 1	68349: Cache/SRAM Bank 2 is Cache.																																			
7 0	68349: Cache/SRAM Bank 3 is SRAM.																																			
7 1	68349: Cache/SRAM Bank 3 is Cache.																																			

**Table 2-4 Init Module Values (continued)**

Offset	Name	Description
\$6A	M\$MemList	<p><b>Colored Memory List Offset</b> The colored memory list contains an entry for each type of memory in the system. The list is terminated by a long word of 0. If this field contains a 0, colored memory is not used in this system.</p> <p><b>More Information:</b> For a complete discussion on colored memory, refer to <b>Colored Memory</b> earlier in this chapter.</p>
\$6C	M\$IRQStk	<p><b>Size of Kernel's IRQ Stack</b> This field contains the size (in longwords) of the kernel's IRQ stack. The value must be 0 or between 256 and \$fff. If the value is zero, the kernel uses a small default IRQ stack. A larger IRQ stack is recommended. The default value is 256 longwords.</p>
\$6E	M\$ColdTrys	<p><b>Retry Counter</b> The retry counter if the kernel's initial chd to the system device fails. The default value is 0.</p>
\$70	Reserved	
\$72	Reserved	

**Table 2-4 Init Module Values (continued)**

Offset	Name	Description
\$74	M\$CacheList	<p><b>Cache List Offset</b></p> <p>The cache list entries describe alternate cache modes for user-state accesses to memory regions. The list is terminated by a long word of -1. If this field is 0, the cache lists are not used in the system.</p> <p><b>More Information:</b> For a complete discussion on cache lists, refer to <a href="#">System Memory Cache Lists</a> earlier in this chapter.</p>
\$76	M\$IOMan	<p><b>I/O Manager Module Name Offset</b></p> <p>The offset to a name string of a list of I/O manager modules (if any). OS-9 searches for these modules during startup. Typically, these modules are found in the bootfile. They are executed in system-state if found. Modules listed in the name string are separated by spaces. The default name to search for is IOMan. If there are no I/O modules, set this to 0.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> The I/O modules may only alter the d0, d1, and ccr registers.</p> <p><b>More Information:</b> Refer to <a href="#">Customization Modules</a> later in this chapter for information about customization modules.</p>

**Table 2-4 Init Module Values (continued)**

Offset	Name	Description
\$78	M\$PreIO	<p><b>Pre-I/O Module Name Offset</b>            The offset to a name string of a list of Pre-I/O modules (if any). OS-9 searches for these modules during startup. Typically, these modules are found in the bootfile. They are executed in system-state if found. Modules listed in the name string are separated by spaces. The default name to search for is <code>PreIO</code>. If there are no Pre-I/O modules, set this to 0.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> The I/O modules may only alter the <code>d0</code>, <code>d1</code>, and <code>ccr</code> registers.</p> <p><b>More Information:</b> Refer to <b>Customization Modules</b> later in this chapter for information about customization modules.</p>

**Table 2-4 Init Module Values (continued)**

Offset	Name	Description																						
\$7a	M\$SysConf	<p><b>System Configuration Flags</b>            This word field is used for system configuration control. The following bits are currently defined:</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Bit</th> <th>Function</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>0 0</td> <td>System tables are expanded as needed.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>System table overflow results in an error. The default values in the table are set in the <code>Init</code> module.   <b>Note:</b> System table expansion only applies to the Development kernel. For the Atomic kernel, table sizes are fixed from the <code>Init</code> module values.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>Reserved</td> </tr> <tr> <td>2 0</td> <td>CRC checking performed by <code>F\$VModul</code>.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>CRC checking disabled for <code>F\$VModul</code>.   <b>Note:</b> CRC check disabling applies only to the Atomic kernel and only for checks made after cold start.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>3 0</td> <td>System-state time-slicing enabled.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>System-state time-slicing disabled.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>4 0</td> <td>SSM builds user-state protection tables on a per-process basis</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>SSM builds one user-state page table (to allow access to all known memory) at cold-start.   <b>Note:</b> This option only applies to the development kernel. The atomic kernel case always builds a single user-state page table.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>5 - 15</td> <td>Reserved</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Bit	Function	0 0	System tables are expanded as needed.	1	System table overflow results in an error. The default values in the table are set in the <code>Init</code> module.  <b>Note:</b> System table expansion only applies to the Development kernel. For the Atomic kernel, table sizes are fixed from the <code>Init</code> module values.	1	Reserved	2 0	CRC checking performed by <code>F\$VModul</code> .	1	CRC checking disabled for <code>F\$VModul</code> .  <b>Note:</b> CRC check disabling applies only to the Atomic kernel and only for checks made after cold start.	3 0	System-state time-slicing enabled.	1	System-state time-slicing disabled.	4 0	SSM builds user-state protection tables on a per-process basis	1	SSM builds one user-state page table (to allow access to all known memory) at cold-start.  <b>Note:</b> This option only applies to the development kernel. The atomic kernel case always builds a single user-state page table.	5 - 15	Reserved
Bit	Function																							
0 0	System tables are expanded as needed.																							
1	System table overflow results in an error. The default values in the table are set in the <code>Init</code> module.  <b>Note:</b> System table expansion only applies to the Development kernel. For the Atomic kernel, table sizes are fixed from the <code>Init</code> module values.																							
1	Reserved																							
2 0	CRC checking performed by <code>F\$VModul</code> .																							
1	CRC checking disabled for <code>F\$VModul</code> .  <b>Note:</b> CRC check disabling applies only to the Atomic kernel and only for checks made after cold start.																							
3 0	System-state time-slicing enabled.																							
1	System-state time-slicing disabled.																							
4 0	SSM builds user-state protection tables on a per-process basis																							
1	SSM builds one user-state page table (to allow access to all known memory) at cold-start.  <b>Note:</b> This option only applies to the development kernel. The atomic kernel case always builds a single user-state page table.																							
5 - 15	Reserved																							

**Table 2-4 Init Module Values (continued)**

Offset	Name	Description
\$7c	Reserved	
\$7e	M\$PrcDescStack	<b><i>Size of Process Descriptor's Stack</i></b> This field determines the stack area size in a process descriptor. This stack is used by the process when it is performing system calls (for example, I/O operations). Systems with file managers/drivers using the stack heavily (for example, drivers written in C) may need to increase this value. The default is 1500 bytes.



### Note

Note the following:

- Throughout this chapter, the system directories referred to are the defaults found in the `Init` module, unless otherwise specified.
- Offset refers to the location of a module field, relative to the starting address of the module. Module offsets are resolved in assembly code by using the names shown here and linking the module with the relocatable library: `sys.l` or `usr.l`.

**Table 2-5 Additional Fields for the Init Module**

<b>Offset</b>	<b>Name</b>	<b>Description</b>
\$30	Reserved	Currently reserved for future use.
\$34	M\$PollSz	Number of IRQ polling table entries.
\$36	M\$DevCnt	Device table size.
\$38	M\$Procs	Initial process table size.
\$3A	M\$Paths	Initial path table size.
\$3C	M\$SParam	Parameter string for startup module (usually <i>Sysgo</i> ).
\$3E	M\$SysGo	Offset to name string of first executable module.
\$40	M\$SysDev	Offset to the initial default directory name string.
\$42	M\$Consol	Offset to the initial I/O pathlist string.
\$44	M\$Extens	Offset to a name string of customization modules.
\$46	M\$Clock	Offset to the clock module name string.
\$48	M\$Slice	Number of clock ticks per timeslice.
\$4A	Reserved	Currently reserved for future use.
\$4C	M\$Site	Offset to the installation site code.

**Table 2-5 Additional Fields for the Init Module (continued)**

<b>Offset</b>	<b>Name</b>	<b>Description</b>
\$50	M\$Instal	Offset to the installation name string.
\$52	M\$CPUTyp	CPU type.
\$56	M\$OS9Lv1	Level, version, and edition number of the operating system.
\$5A	M\$OS9Rev	Offset to the OS-9 level/revision string.
\$5C	M\$SysPri	Initial system priority.
\$5E	M\$MinPty	Initial system minimum executable priority.
\$60	M\$MaxAge	Initial system maximum natural age.
\$62	M\$MDirSz	Module directory size
\$64	Reserved	Currently reserved for future use.
\$66	M\$Events	Initial number of entries allowed in the events table.
\$68	M\$Compat	Compatibility flag one. Byte is used for revision compatibility.
\$69	M\$Compat2	Compatibility flag two. Byte is used for cache control.
\$6A	M\$MemList	Offset to the memory segment list.
\$6C	M\$IRQStk	Size of the kernel's IRQ stack.

**Table 2-5 Additional Fields for the Init Module (continued)**

Offset	Name	Description
\$6E	M\$ColdTrys	Retry counter if the kernel's initial chd fails.
\$70	Reserved	Currently reserved for future use.
\$72	Reserved	Currently reserved for future use.
\$74	M\$CacheList	Offset to the cache list.
\$76	M\$IOMan	Offset to the I/O manager name.
\$78	M\$PreIO	Offset to the Pre-I/O module list.
\$7a	M\$SysConf	System configuration. This word is used to tailor specific system options.
\$7c	Reserved	Currently reserved for future use.
\$7e	M\$PrcDescStack	Size of process descriptor stack.

## Initial System Process

---

The first process executed by OS-9 is the process named in the `Init` module. When the kernel has finished its system initialization, the process is forked and any parameters specified in the `Init` module is passed to that process.

How the system is initially started is dependent upon the requirements of the system; it can be one of the standard `Sysgo` modules or it can be any custom procedure you desire.

The standard modules for starting the system are called `Sysgo`. If you are using a disk-based system then the default `Sysgo` module can be used to read the disk file called `startup`. If you have a non-disk based system, another version of `Sysgo` is available (`sysgo_nodisk`) to bring up a shell without using any disk for I/O.

The `Sysgo` for disk operation operates as follows:

`Sysgo` is the first user process started after the system startup sequence. Its standard I/O is on the system console device.

`Sysgo` usually executes as follows:

- 
- Step 1. Change to the `CMDS` execution directory on the system device.
  - Step 2. Execute the `startup` file (as a script) from the root of the system device.
  - Step 3. Fork a shell on the system console.
  - Step 4. Wait for that shell to terminate and then forks it again. Therefore, there is always a shell running on the system console, unless `Sysgo` dies.
-



---

## For More Information

**Appendix A: Example Code** contains an example source listing of the `Sysgo` module.

---

You may eliminate `Sysgo` by specifying `shell` as the initial module and specifying a parameter string similar to:

```
startup; ex tsmon /term
```

The `sysgo` for non-disk operation operates as follows:

- 
- Step 1. Fork a shell with standard I/O paths set to the system's default console device.
  - Step 2. Wait for that shell to terminate, and then forks `Shell` again. Thus, there is always `Shell` running on the system console unless `Sysgo` dies.
-

## Customization Modules

---

**Customization modules** are additional modules you can execute at boot time to enhance OS-9's capabilities. They provide a convenient way to install a new system call code or collection of system call codes, such as a system security module. The kernel calls the modules at boot time if their names are specified in the extension list of the `Init` module and the kernel can locate them.



---

### Note

Customization modules may only modify the `d0`, `d1`, and `ccr` registers.

---

In the `Init` module, the `M$Extens` offset points to a list of module names. By default, the module name in the list is `OS9P2`. If the modules are found during cold-start, they are called. If an error is returned, the system stops. The most common modules used are listed here:

## Syscache

The `syscache` module allows the system to enable and control any hardware caches present. The default `syscache` module supplied by Microware controls the on-chip cache(s) for the processor being used. You can customize this module to use any external (off-chip) cache hardware the system may have. The `syscache` module installs the `F$Cct1` system call routines. If you do not install the `syscache` module, no system caching takes place.

Standard `syscache` modules (to support the on-chip capabilities of the processor) are provided for the 68020, 68030, 68040, and 68349.



## Note

External hardware caches are only supported by the Development kernel. On-chip caching is supported by both the Atomic and Development kernels.

## SSM

The system security module (SSM) allows operation of the memory management unit (MMU) for the processor in use.

For the Development kernel, MMU operation under OS-9 provides the basic user-state protection mechanisms for the system so user-state processes only access memory they are allowed to access. For the 68040 processors, the SSM module (in conjunction with the `CacheList` entries of the `Init` module) also allows fine-tuning of the system memory's cache attributes, so cache modes other than the default write-through mode are possible (for example copy-back and non-cacheable regions).

For the Atomic kernel, user-state protection is not implemented. Thus, SSM modules that do not provide cache support (all SSM modules except the 68040 SSM) should not be used. In an Atomic kernel environment, the 68040 SSM module provides just the cache mode support described above.

The standard SSM modules provided are:

SSM451	Supports the MC68451 MMU, for 68010 systems. This SSM module only provides protection functions.
SSM851	Supports the MC68851 PMMU and MC68030 MMU. Used on MC68020 systems and MC68030 systems. This SSM module only provides protection functions.

**SSM040**

Supports the MC68030 MMU. Used on MC68040 systems. This SSM module provides protection functions (if running in a Development kernel environment) as well as cache mode support.

## FPU/FPSP

The FPU/FPSP modules provide floating point emulation and support functions for the system.

FPSP is used on MC68040 systems possessing an on-chip FPU and is used to provide software emulation of MC68881/2 instructions that are not implemented on the MC68040.

FPU is used on all other processors when the system does not have a hardware floating point unit (MC68EC040, MC68030 without MC68882 FPCP). This module provides emulation support for the MC68882 floating point unit.

## Including a Customization Module

To include a customization module in the system, you can either burn the module into ROM or complete the following steps:

- Step 1. Assemble/link the customization code to create an OS-9 system module.



---

**Note**

os9p2 is the name of the default customization module.

---

Step 2. Create a new `Init` module:

- Edit the `CONFIG` macro in the `systype.d` file for your CPU board. The name of the new module must appear in the `Init` module extension list. For example, if the name of the new module is `mine`, add the following line immediately before the `endm` line:

```
Extens dc.b "os9p2 mine",0
```

- Remake the `Init` module.

Step 3. Create a new bootfile:

- Change to the `BOOTLISTS` directory for your CPU card and edit the bootlist file so the customization module name appears in the bootlist.
- Create a new bootfile with the `os9gen` utility. For example:

```
os9gen /h0fmt -z=bootlist
```




---

## For More Information

`os9gen` builds and links a bootstrap file. Refer to the ***Utilities Reference*** manual for more information about `os9gen`.

---

Step 4. Reboot the system and make sure the new module is operational.

---




---

## For More Information

Refer to the ***Using OS-9 for 68K Processors*** manual for additional information on directory structure and making boots. Additional information may also be available in the ***Getting Started*** manual for your system.

---

## Process Creation

---

All OS-9 programs run as **processes** or **tasks**. The `F$Fork` system call creates new processes. The name of the primary module the new process is to execute initially is the most important parameter passed in the fork system call. The following outlines the creation process:

1. **Locate or load the program.**

OS-9 tries to find the module in memory. If it cannot find the module, it loads a mass-storage file into memory using the requested module name as a file name.

2. **Allocate and initialize a process descriptor.**

After OS-9 locates the primary module, it assigns a data structure called a **process descriptor** to the new process. The process descriptor is a table containing information about the process: its state, memory allocation, priority, and I/O paths. The process descriptor is automatically initialized and maintained. The process does not need to know about the descriptor's existence or contents.

3. **Allocate the stack and data areas.**

The primary module's header contains a data and stack size. OS-9 allocates a **contiguous memory area** of the required size from the free memory space. The [Process Memory Areas](#) section later in this chapter discusses process memory areas.

4. **Initialize the process.**

OS-9 sets the new process's registers to the proper addresses in the data area and object code module (see [Figure 2-2](#)). If the program uses initialized variables and/or pointers, they are copied from the object code area to the proper addresses in the data area.

If OS-9 cannot perform any of these steps, it aborts the creation of the new process and notifies the process that originated the fork of the error. If OS-9 completes all the steps, it adds the new process to the active process queue for execution scheduling.

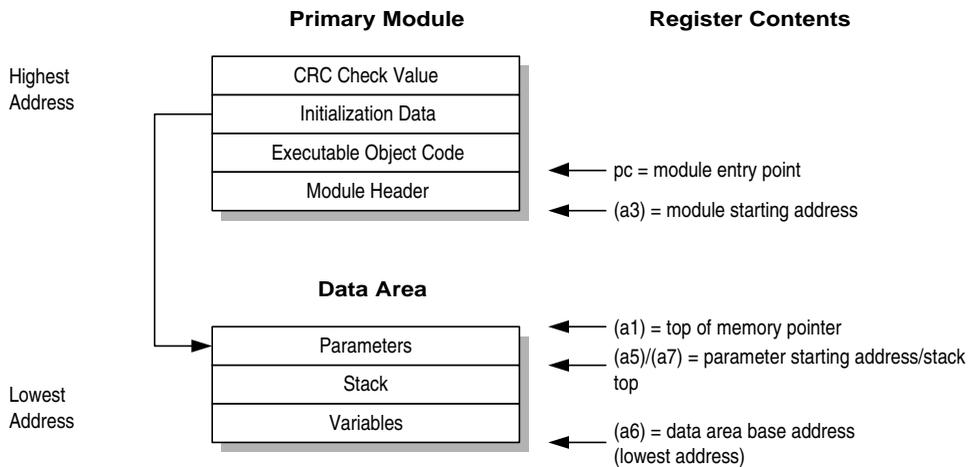
The new process is also assigned a **process ID**. This is a unique number that is the process' identifier. Other processes can communicate with it by referring to its ID in system calls. The process also has an associated

**group ID** and **user ID**. These identify all processes and files belonging to a particular user and group of users. The group and user ID's are inherited from the parent process.

Processes terminate when they execute an `F$Exit` system service request or when they receive fatal signals or errors. Terminating the process:

- Closes any open paths.
- Deallocates the process' memory.
- Unlinks its primary module.

**Figure 2-2 New Process's Initial Memory Map and Register Contents**



**Table 2-6 Registers Passed to the New Process**

<code>sr N000</code>	(a0) undefined
(N=0 for non-MSP systems	(a1) top of memory pointer
N=1 for MSP systems)	(a2) undefined
<code>pc</code> module entry point	(a3) primary module pointer

**Table 2-6 Registers Passed to the New Process (continued)**


---

d0 . w process ID	(a4) undefined
d1 . l group/user ID	(a5) parameter pointer
d2 . w priority	(a6) static storage (data area) base pointer
d3 . w # of paths inherited	(a7) stack pointer (same as a5)
d4 . l undefined	
d5 . l parameter size	
d6 . l total initial memory	

---

**Note**

(a6) is always biased by \$8000 to allow object programs to access 64K of data using indexed addressing. You can usually ignore this bias because the OS-9 linker automatically adjusts for it.

---

## Process Memory Areas

OS-9 divides all processes (programs) into two logically separate memory areas:

- Code
- Data

This division provides OS-9's modular software capabilities.

Each process has a unique data area, but not necessarily a unique program memory module. This allows two or more processes to share the same copy of a program. This technique is an automatic function of OS-9 and results in extremely efficient use of available memory.

A program must be in the form of an executable memory module to be run. The program is position-independent and ROMable, and the memory it occupies is considered read-only. It may link to and execute code in other modules.



---

## For More Information

**Chapter 1: System Overview** covers the format of an executable memory module.

---

The process' data area is a separate memory space where all of the program's variables are kept. The top part of this area is used for the program's stack. The actual memory addresses assigned to the data area are unknown at the time the program is written. A base address is kept in a register (usually `a6`) to access the data area. You can read or write to this area.

If a program uses variables requiring initialization, OS-9 copies the initial values from the read-only program area to the data area where the variables actually reside. The OS-9 linker builds appropriate initialization tables which initialize the variables.

## Process State

A process is either in active, waiting, or sleeping state:

**Table 2-7 Process States**

State	Description
active	The process is active and ready for execution. The scheduler gives active processes time for execution according to their relative priority with respect to all other active processes. It uses a method that compares the ages of all active processes in the queue. It gives some CPU time to all active processes, even if they have a very low relative priority.
waiting	The process is inactive until a child process terminates or until a signal is received. The process enters the wait state when it executes an <code>F\$Wait</code> system service request. It remains inactive until one of its descendant processes terminates or until it receives a signal.
sleeping	The process is inactive for a specified period of time or until it receives a signal. A process enters the sleep state when it executes an <code>F\$Sleep</code> service request or performs an event wait function on a event that is not ready. <code>F\$Sleep</code> specifies a time interval for which the process is to remain inactive. Processes often sleep to avoid wasting CPU time while waiting for some external event, such as the completion of I/O. Zero ticks specifies an infinite period of time. Processes waiting on an event are also included in the sleep queue.

There is a separate queue (linked list of process descriptors) for each process state. State changes are made by moving a process descriptor from its current queue to another queue.

# Process Scheduling

---

OS-9 is a multitasking operating system. Two or more independent programs, called **processes** or **tasks**, can execute simultaneously. Several processes share each second of CPU time. Although the processes appear to run continuously, the CPU only executes one instruction at a time. The OS-9 kernel determines which process, and how long, to run based on the priorities of the active processes. **Task-switching** is the action of switching from the execution of one process to another. Task-switching does not affect the programs' execution.

A real-time clock interrupts the CPU at every **tick**. By default, a tick is .01 second (10 milliseconds). At any occurrence of a tick, OS-9 can suspend execution of one program and begin execution of another. In addition, the ticks-per-second amount is hard-wired inside the code and it is not picked up from any parameter or configuration table. To change the tick length, recompile the file, `tk162.a`.

A **slice** or **timeslice** is the longest amount of time a process controls the CPU before the kernel re-evaluates the active process queue. By default, a slice is two ticks. You can change the number of ticks per slice by adjusting the system global variable `D_TSlice` or by modifying the `Init` module.

To ensure efficiency, only processes on the active process queue are considered for execution. The active process queue is organized by **process age**, a count of how many task switches have occurred since the process entered the active queue plus the process's initial priority. The oldest process is at the head of the queue. OS-9's scheduling algorithm allocates some execution time to each active process.

When a process is placed in the active queue, its age is set to the process's assigned priority and the ages of all other processes increment. Ages never increment beyond \$ffff.

After the currently executing process's timeslice, the kernel executes the process with the highest age.

## Preemptive Task-Switching

During critical real-time applications you sometimes need fast interrupt response time. OS-9 provides this by preempting the currently executing process when a process with a higher priority becomes active. The lower priority process loses the remainder of its time-slice and is re-inserted into the active queue.

Two system global variables affect task-switching:

- `D_MinPty` (minimum priority)
- `D_MaxAge` (maximum age)

Both variables are initially set in the `Init` module. Users with a group ID of zero (super users) can access both variables through the `F$SetSys` system call.



---

### For More Information

`F$SetSys` allows you to set and examine OS-9 system global variables. Refer to **Chapter 1: System Overview** for more information about `F$SetSys`.

---

## `D_MinPty`: Specifying a Minimum Priority

If a process' priority or age is less than `D_MinPty`, the process is not considered for execution and is not aged. Usually, this variable is not used; it is set to 0.




---

## WARNING

If the minimum system priority is set above the priority of all running tasks, the system is completely shut down. You must reset to recover. Therefore, it is crucial to restore `D_MinPty` to a normal level when the critical task(s) finishes.

---

## D\_MaxAge: Specifying a Maximum Age

`D_MaxAge` is the maximum age to which a process can increment. When `D_MaxAge` is activated, tasks are divided into two classes:

High priority	tasks receive all of the available CPU time and do not age.
Low priority	tasks do not age past <code>D_MaxAge</code> . Low priority tasks are run only when the high priority tasks are inactive. Usually, this variable is not used; it is set to 0.




---

## Note

System state processes may or may not be time-slicable, depending on the process's requirements and/or the system configuration control, as follows:

- If the `Disable SysState Time Slice` flag is set in the `M$SysConf` field of the `Init` module, the system state time slicing is disabled for the entire system. This option is provided primarily for backwards compatibility with V2.N system state modules, as these may be executing critical routines affecting shared system resources.

- If the `M$SysConf` flag allows system state time-slicing, and if the process has sections of code that can not be time-sliced, the process must do one of the following prior to entering the first critical region:
    - a. Set the `P$Preempt` field of its process descriptor to a non-zero value, so as to disable the process's ability to be time-sliced, or
    - b. Increment/decrement the `P$Preempt` field on entry/exit to critical (non-preemptable) code sections. This second method is the preferred method, as it allows the process to be time-sliced whenever possible.
-

# Exception and Interrupt Processing

One of OS-9's features is its extensive support of the 68K family advanced exception/interrupt system. You can install routines to handle particular exceptions using various OS-9 system calls for the types of exceptions.

**Table 2-8 Vector Descriptions for 68000/008/010/070/CPU32 Family**

Vector Number	Related OS-9 Call	Assignment
0	none	Reset initial Supervisor Stack Pointer (SSP)
1	none	Reset initial Program Counter (PC)
2	F\$STrap	Bus error
3	F\$STrap	Address error
4	F\$STrap	Illegal instruction
5	F\$STrap	Zero divide
6	F\$STrap	CHK instruction; CHK2 (CPU32)
7	F\$STrap	TRAPV instruction
8	F\$STrap	Privilege violation
9	F\$DFork	Trace
10	F\$STrap	Line 1010 emulator
11	F\$STrap	Line 1111 emulator

**Table 2-8 Vector Descriptions for 68000/008/010/070/CPU32 Family  
(continued)**

<b>Vector Number</b>	<b>Related OS-9 Call</b>	<b>Assignment</b>
12	none	Reserved (000/008/010/070); hardware break point (CPU32)
13	none	Reserved
14	none	Reserved (000/008); format error (010/070/CPU32)
15	none	Uninitialized interrupt
16-23	none	Reserved
24	none	Spurious interrupt
25-31	F\$IRQ	Level 1-7 interrupt autovectors
32	F\$OS9	User TRAP #0 instruction (OS-9 call)
33-47	F\$TLink	User TRAP #1-15 instruction vectors
48-56	none	Reserved
57-63	none/ F\$IRQ	Reserved (000/008/010/CPU32) on-chip level 1-7 auto-vectored interrupts (070)
64-255	F\$IRQ	Vectored interrupts (user defined)

**Table 2-9 Vector Descriptions for 68020/030/040**

<b>Vector Number</b>	<b>Related OS-9 Call</b>	<b>Assignment</b>
0	none	Reset initial Supervisor Stack Pointer (SSP)
1	none	Reset initial Program Counter (PC)
2	F\$STrap	Bus error
3	F\$STrap	Address error
4	F\$STrap	Illegal instruction
5	F\$STrap	Zero divide
6	F\$STrap	CHK, CHK2
7	F\$STrap	TRAPV cpTRAPcc, TRAPcc
8	F\$STrap	Privilege violation
9	F\$DFork	Trace
10	F\$STrap	Line 1010 emulator
11	F\$STrap	Line 1111 emulator
12	none	Reserved
13	none	Coprocessor protocol violation (020,030 only); reserved (040)
14	none	Format error

**Table 2-9 Vector Descriptions for 68020/030/040 (continued)**

<b>Vector Number</b>	<b>Related OS-9 Call</b>	<b>Assignment</b>
15	none	Uninitialized interrupt
16-23	none	Reserved
24	none	Spurious interrupt
25-31	<code>F\$IRQ</code>	Level 1-7 interrupt autovectors
32	<code>F\$OS9</code>	User TRAP #0 instruction (OS-9 call)
33-47	<code>F\$TLink</code>	User TRAP #1-15 instruction vectors
48	<code>F\$STrap</code>	FPCP Branch, or set on unordered condition
49	<code>F\$STrap</code>	FPCP Inexact result
50	<code>F\$STrap</code>	FPCP Divide by zero
51	<code>F\$STrap</code>	FPCP Underflow error
52	<code>F\$STrap</code>	FPCP Operand error
53	<code>F\$STrap</code>	FPCP Overflow error
54	<code>F\$STrap</code>	FPCP NAN signaled
55	<code>F\$STrap</code>	Reserved (020/030); FPCP Unimplemented data type (040)
56	none	PMMU Configuration (020/030); reserved (040)

**Table 2-9 Vector Descriptions for 68020/030/040 (continued)**

Vector Number	Related OS-9 Call	Assignment
57	none	PMMU Illegal Operation (020); reserved (030/040)
58	none	PMMU Access Level Violation (020); reserved (030/040)
59-63	none	Reserved
64-255	F\$IRQ	Vectored interrupts (user defined)

## Reset Vectors: vectors 0, 1

The reset initial SSP vector contains the address loaded into the system's stack pointer at startup. There must be at least 4K of RAM below and 4K of RAM above this address for system global storage. Each time an exception occurs, OS-9 uses this vector to find the base address of system global data.

The reset initial program counter (PC) is the coldstart entry point to OS-9. After startup, its only use is to reset after a catastrophic failure.




---

### **WARNING**

User programs should not use or modify either of these vectors.

---

## Error Exceptions: vectors 2 - 8, 10 - 24, 48 - 63

These exceptions are usually considered fatal program errors and cause a user program to unconditionally terminate. If `F$DFork` created the process, the process resources remain intact and control returns to the parent debugger to allow a postmortem examination.

You may use the `F$STrap` system call to install a user subroutine to catch the errors in this group that are considered non-fatal.

When an error exception occurs, the user subroutine executes in user state, with a pointer to the normal data space used by the process and all user registers stacked. The exception handler must decide whether and where to continue execution.

If any of these exceptions occur in system state, it usually means a system call was passed bad data and an error is returned. In some cases, system data structures are damaged by passing nonsense parameters to system calls.



---

### Note

Not all catchable exception vectors are applicable to all 68000-family CPUs. For example, vectors 48-54 (FPCP exceptions) only apply to 68020 and 68030 CPUs.

---

## Trace Exception: vector 9

The trace exception occurs when the status register trace bit is set. This allows the MPU to single step instructions. OS-9 provides the `F$DFork`, `F$DExec`, and `F$DExit` system calls to control program tracing.

These exceptions provide interrupt polling for I/O devices that do not generate vectored interrupts. Internally, they are handled exactly like vectored interrupts.



---

## WARNING

Normally, you should not use Level 7 interrupts because they are non-maskable and can interrupt the system at dangerous times. You may use Level 7 interrupts for software refresh of dynamic RAMs or similar functions provided the IRQ service routine does not use any OS-9 system calls or system data structures.

---

The system reserves user trap zero (vector 32) for standard OS-9 system service requests. The remaining 15 user traps provide a method to link to common library routines at execution time.

Library routines are similar to program object code modules and are allocated their own static storage when installed by the `F$TLink` service request. The execution entry point executes whenever the user trap is called. In addition, trap handlers have initialization and termination entry points that execute when linked and at process termination. The termination entry point is not currently implemented.



---

## Note

Trap 13 (CIO) and trap 15 (math) are standard trap handlers distributed by Microware.

---

The 192 vectored interrupts provide a minimum amount of system overhead in calling a device driver module to handle an interrupt. Interrupt service routines execute in system state without an associated current process. The device driver must provide an error entry point for the system to execute if any error exceptions occur during interrupt processing, although this entry point is not currently implemented. The `F$IRQ`/`F$FIRQ` system calls install a handler in the system's interrupt tables. If necessary, multiple devices may be used on the same vector.

---

# Chapter 3: OS-9 Input/Output System

---

This chapter explains the software components of the OS-9 I/O system and the relationships between those components. It includes the following topics:

- **The OS-9 Unified Input/Output System**
- **The Kernel and I/O**
- **IOMan and I/O**
- **File Managers**
- **File Manager Organization**



# The OS-9 Unified Input/Output System

---

OS-9 allows the choice of the I/O system to be used on the target system. The `Init` module's `M$IOMan` field specifies the name of the I/O module to be used (if any).

The standard I/O module for OS-9 is called `IOMan`. `IOMan` provides the basis of the unified I/O system for OS-9, and is required for any system using standard OS-9 file managers (for example, `RBF`, `SCF`, and device drivers).

`IOMan` is provided in two versions:

- Development kernel environments (`IOMan_DEV`).  
This version performs parameter validation. For example, verify user's buffer is actually allocated to the user for a `Read` system call.
- Atomic kernel environments (`IOMan_ATOM`).  
This version omits the checks the Development kernel performs.

In addition to using the standard `IOMan` module for the I/O system, system integrators also have the option of either:

- Designing their own custom I/O system and using that module as the replacement for `IOMan`, or
- Having no formal I/O system and performing I/O directly from applications themselves.

The replacement or removal of `IOMan` typically occurs on embedded, Atomic kernel environments, where resource and performance requirements are critical, or where the overhead of a formal I/O system is not required.



## Note

If the `IOMan` module is removed or replaced, you should carefully check [Appendix D: OS-9 for 68K System Calls](#) where the system calls supported by `IOMan` are detailed.

---



---

**Note**

The following discussions regarding OS-9's unified I/O system assume IOMan (or a full functional equivalent) is being used in the system.

---

The OS-9 I/O system is modular; you can easily expand or customize it. It is a versatile, unified, hardware-independent I/O system and consists of the following software components:

- IOMan
- File managers
- Device drivers
- Device descriptor

IOMan, file managers, and device drivers process I/O service requests at different levels. The device descriptor contains information used to assemble the elements of a particular I/O subsystem. The file manager, device driver, and device descriptor modules are standard memory modules. You can install or remove any of these modules while the system is running.

## IOMan Overview

IOMan supervises the overall OS-9 I/O system. IOMan:

- **Maintains the I/O modules by managing various data structures.**  
IOMan ensures the appropriate file manager and device driver modules process each I/O request.
- **Establishes paths.**  
The paths connect the kernel, IOMan, the application, the file manager, and the device driver.

## File Manager Overview

File managers perform the processing for a particular class of devices, such as disks or terminals. They deal with **logical** operations on the class of devices. For example, the Random Block File manager (RBF) maintains directory structures on disks; the Sequential Character File manager (SCF) edits the data stream it receives from terminals.



---

### Note

File managers deal with the I/O requests on a generic **class** basis.

---

## The Kernel and I/O

---

The kernel provides the connection between the I/O system and the application. When an application makes an I/O (I/O) service request, it is identified as such by the kernel performing the following:

- Disables system state time-slicing for the process (the file manager can later re-enable this if desired)
- Calls the appropriate entry point in IOMan
- On return from IOMan, re-enables system state time-slicing and returns any error result to the application

### Device Driver Overview

Device drivers operate on a class of hardware. Operating on the actual hardware device, they send data to and from the device on behalf of the file manager. They isolate the file manager from hardware dependencies such as control register organization and data transfer modes, translating the file manager's logical requests into specific hardware operations.

### Device Descriptor Overview

The device descriptor contains the information required to assemble the various I/O subsystems (device components). A device descriptor contains the names of the file manager and device driver associated with the device, as well as the device's operating parameters. Parameters in device descriptors can be:

- Fixed, such as interrupt level and port address.
- Variable, such as terminal editing settings and disk physical parameters.

The variable parameters in device descriptors provide the initial default values when a path is opened, but applications can change these values. The device descriptor name is the name of a device as known by the user. For example, the device `/d0` is described by the device descriptor `d0`.

## IOMan and I/O

---

IOMan manages I/O system calls by routing data between processes and the appropriate file managers and device drivers. IOMan also allocates and initializes global static storage for device drivers.

IOMan maintains two important internal data structures:

- The ***device table***
- The ***path table***

These tables reflect two other structures respectively:

- The ***device descriptor***
- The ***path descriptor***

When a path is opened, IOMan attempts to link to the device descriptor associated with the device name specified (or implied) in the pathlist. The device descriptor contains the names of the device driver and file manager for the device. The information in the device descriptor is saved by IOMan in the device table so it can route subsequent system calls to these modules.

Paths maintain the status of I/O operations to devices and files. IOMan maintains these paths using the path table. Each time a path is opened, a path descriptor is created and an entry is added to the path table. When a path is closed, the path descriptor is deallocated and its entry is deleted from the path table.

When an `I$Attach` system call is first performed on a new device descriptor, the kernel creates a new entry in the device table. Each entry in the table has specific information from the device descriptor concerning the appropriate file manager and driver. It also contains a pointer to the device driver static storage. For each device in the table, IOMan maintains a use count indicating the current number of device users.



---

## For More Information

`I$Attach` attaches a new device to the system. Refer to **Appendix D: OS-9 for 68K System Calls** for more information about `I$Attach`.

---

## Device Descriptor Modules

Device descriptor modules are small, non-executable modules containing information to associate a specific I/O device with its:

- Logical name
- Hardware controller address(es)
- Device driver name
- File manager name
- Initialization parameters

File managers operate on a class of **logical** devices. Device drivers, on the other hand, operate on a class of **physical** devices. A device descriptor module tailors a device driver or file manager to a specific I/O port. At least one device descriptor module must exist for each I/O device in the system. An I/O device may have several device descriptors with different initialization parameters and names. For example, a serial/parallel driver could have two device descriptors, one for terminal operation (`/t1`) and one for printer operation (`/p1`).

If a suitable device driver exists, you can add devices to the system by adding the new hardware and another device descriptor. While the system is running, device descriptors can be:

- In ROM
- In the boot file
- Loaded into RAM

The module name is used as the logical device name by the system and user (it is the device name given in pathlists). Its format consists of a standard module header with a type code of device descriptor (DEVIC). The remaining module header fields are shown in [Table 3-2](#).



### Note

These fields are standard for all device descriptor modules. They are followed by a device-specific initialization table. [Appendix B: Path Descriptors and Device Descriptors](#) contains the initialization tables for each standard class of I/O devices (RBF, SCF, and SBF).

**Table 3-1 Device Descriptor Modules**

Name	Description						
M\$Port	<p><b>Port Address</b> The absolute physical address of the hardware controller.</p>						
M\$Vector	<p><b>Interrupt Vector Number</b> The interrupt vector associated with the port, used to initialize hardware and for installation on the IRQ poll table:</p> <table border="0"> <tr> <td>25-31</td> <td>for an auto-vectored interrupt. Levels 1-7.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>57-63</td> <td>for 68070 on-chip auto-vectored interrupts. Levels 1-7.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>64-255</td> <td>for a vectored interrupt.</td> </tr> </table>	25-31	for an auto-vectored interrupt. Levels 1-7.	57-63	for 68070 on-chip auto-vectored interrupts. Levels 1-7.	64-255	for a vectored interrupt.
25-31	for an auto-vectored interrupt. Levels 1-7.						
57-63	for 68070 on-chip auto-vectored interrupts. Levels 1-7.						
64-255	for a vectored interrupt.						

**Table 3-1 Device Descriptor Modules (continued)**

Name	Description
M\$IRQLvl	<b>Interrupt Level</b> The device's physical interrupt level. It is <i>not</i> used by the kernel or file manager. The device driver may use it to mask off interrupts for the device when critical hardware manipulation occurs.
M\$Prior	<b>Interrupt Polling Priority</b> Indicates the priority of the device on its vector. Smaller numbers are polled first if more than one device is on the same vector. A priority of 0 indicates the device requires exclusive use of the vector.
M\$Mode	<b>Device Mode Capabilities</b> This byte is used to validate a caller's access mode byte in <code>I\$Create</code> or <code>I\$Open</code> calls. If the bit is set, the device can perform the corresponding function. If the <code>Share_bit</code> (single user bit) is set here, the device is non-sharable. This is useful for printers.
M\$FMgr	<b>File Manager Name Offset</b> The offset to the name string of the file manager module for this device.
M\$PDev	<b>Device Driver Name Offset</b> The offset to the name string of the device driver module for this device.

**Table 3-1 Device Descriptor Modules (continued)**

Name	Description
M\$DevCon	<p><b>Device Configuration</b></p> <p>The offset to an optional device configuration table. You can use it to specify parameters or flags the device driver needs that are not part of the normal initialization table values. This table is located after the standard initialization table. The kernel or file manager never references it. As the pointer to the device descriptor is passed in <code>INIT</code> and <code>TERM</code>, <code>M\$DevCon</code> is generally available to the driver only during the driver's <code>INIT</code> and <code>TERM</code> routines. Other routines in the driver (for example, <code>Read</code>) must first search the device table to locate the device descriptor before they can access this field.</p> <p>Typically, this table is used for name string pointers, OEM global allocation pointers, or device-specific constants/flags.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> These values, unlike the standard options, are not copied into the path descriptor's options section.</p>
M\$DevFlags	<p><b>Device Flags</b></p> <p>Reserved for future use.</p>

**Table 3-1 Device Descriptor Modules (continued)**

Name	Description
M\$Opt	<p><b>Table Size</b>            This contains the size of the device's standard initialization table. Each file manager defines a ceiling on M\$Opt.</p>
M\$DTyp	<p><b>Device Type (first field of initialization table)</b>            The file manager associated with the device defines the device's standard initialization table, with the exception of the first byte (M\$DTyp). The first byte indicates the class of the device (for example, RBF or SCF).</p> <p>The initialization table (M\$DTyp through M\$DTyp + M\$Opt) is copied into the option section of the path descriptor when a path to the device is opened. Typically, this table is used for the default initialization parameters such as the delete and backspace characters for a terminal. Applications may examine all of the values in this table using I\$GetStt (SS_Opt). Some of the values may be changed using I\$SetStt; some are protected by the file manager to prevent inappropriate changes.</p> <p>The theoretical maximum initialization table size is 128 bytes. However, a file manager may restrict this to a smaller value.</p>




---

**Note**

**Offset** refers to the location of a module field, relative to the starting address of the module. Module offsets are resolved in assembly code by using the names shown here and linking with the relocatable library: `sys.l` or `usr.l`.

---

**Table 3-2 Additional Standard Header Fields for Device Descriptors**

Offset	Name	Description
\$30	M\$Port	Port Address
\$34	M\$Vector	Trap Vector Number
\$35	M\$IRQLvl	IRQ Interrupt Level
\$36	M\$Prior	IRP Polling Priority
\$37	M\$Mode	Device Mode Capabilities
\$38	M\$FMgr	File Manager Name Offset
\$3A	M\$PDev	Device Driver Name Offset
\$3C	M\$DevCon	Device Configuration Offset
\$3E		Reserved
\$40	M\$DevFlags	Device Flags (reserved)
\$44		Reserved

**Table 3-2 Additional Standard Header Fields for Device Descriptors**

Offset	Name	Description
\$46	M\$Opt	Initialization Table Size
\$48	M\$DTyp	Device Type

## Adding Additional Devices

You can add additional devices to your system. If an identical device controller already exists, you only need to add the new hardware and another device descriptor. Device descriptors can be in ROM, in the boot file, or loaded into RAM from mass storage files while the system is running.

## Path Descriptors

Every open path is represented by a data structure called a ***path descriptor***. A path descriptor contains information required by file managers and device drivers to perform I/O functions. Path descriptors are dynamically allocated and de-allocated as paths are opened and closed.

Path descriptors have three sections:

- The first 30 bytes are defined universally for all file managers and device drivers.
- PD\_FST is reserved for and defined by each type of file manager for items such as file pointers, and permanent variables.
- PD\_OPT is a 128-byte option area used for dynamically alterable operating parameters for the file or device. These variables are initialized when the path is opened by copying the initialization table contained in the device descriptor module, and can be examined or altered later by user programs via GetStat and SetStat system calls. Not all options can be modified.




---

## For More Information

Refer to **Appendix B: Path Descriptors and Device Descriptors** for the current definitions of the path descriptor option area for each standard class of I/O devices (RBF, SCF, SBF, and Pipes). The definitions are included in `sys.l` or `usr.l`, and are linked into programs requiring them.

---




---

## Note

**Offset** refers to the location of a module field, relative to the starting address of the module. Module offsets are resolved in assembly code by using the names shown here and linking the module with the relocatable libraries, `sys.l` or `usr.l`.

---

**Table 3-3 Universal Path Descriptor Definitions**

Offset	Name	Maintained By	Description
\$00	PD_PD	IOMan	Path Number
\$02	PD_MOD	IOMan	Access Mode (R W E S D)
\$03	PD_CNT	IOMan	Number of Paths using this PD (obsolete)
\$04	PD_DEV	IOMan	Address of Related Device Table Entry

**Table 3-3 Universal Path Descriptor Definitions (continued)**

Offset	Name	Maintained By	Description
\$08	PD_CPR	IOMan	Requester's Process ID
\$0A	PD_RGS	IOMan	Address of Caller's MPU Register Stack
\$0E	PD_BUF	File Manager	Address of Data Buffer
\$12	PD_USER	IOMan	Group/User ID of Original Path Owner
\$16	PD_PATHS	IOMan	List of Open Paths on Device
\$1A	PD_COUNT	IOMan	Number of Paths using this PD
\$1C	PD_LProc	IOMan	Last Active Process ID
\$20	PD_ErrNo	File Manager	Global <i>errno</i> for C language file managers
\$24	PD_SysGlob	File Manager	System global pointer for C language file managers
\$2A	PD_FST	File Manager	File Manager Working Storage
\$80	PD_OPT	Driver/ File Manager	Option Table

## File Managers

---

File managers process the raw data stream to or from device drivers for a class of similar devices. File managers make device drivers conform to the OS-9 standard I/O and file structure by removing as many unique device operational characteristics as possible from I/O operations. They are also responsible for mass storage allocation and directory processing, if applicable, to the class of devices they service.

File managers usually buffer the data stream and issue requests to the kernel for dynamic allocation of buffer memory. They may also monitor and process the data stream. For example, they may add line feed characters after carriage return characters.

File managers are re-entrant. One file manager may be used for an entire class of devices having similar operational characteristics. OS-9 systems can have any number of file manager modules.

Microware includes the following file managers in the OS-9 standard distributions.



---

### Note

I/O system modules must:

- Be owned by a super-user (0 . n).
  - Have the system-state bit set in the attribute byte of the module header. OS-9 does not currently make use of this, but future revisions may require I/O system modules be system-state modules.
-

## Embedded

**Table 3-4 Embedded File Managers**

Name	Description
SCF	<b>Sequential Character File Manager</b> Handles I/O for sequentially character- structured devices, such as terminals, printers, and modems.
PIPEMAN	<b>Pipe File Manager</b> Supports interprocess communications through memory buffers called <i>pipes</i> .

## Disk Based

**Table 3-5 Disk Based File Managers**

Name	Description
RBF	<b>Random Block File Manager</b> Handles I/O for random-access, block-structured devices, such as floppy/hard disk systems.
SBF	<b>Sequential Block File Manager</b> Handles I/O for sequentially block- structured devices, such as tape systems.
PCF	<b>PC File Manager</b> Handles reading/writing PC-DOS disks. It uses RBF drivers.

## Extended

**Table 3-6 Extended File Managers**

<b>Name</b>	<b>Description</b>
IFMAN	<b>Communications Interface File Manager</b> Manages network interfaces.
PKMAN	<b>Pseudo-Keyboard File Manager</b> Provides an interface to the driver side of SCF to enable the software to emulate a terminal.
SOCKMAN	<b>Socket File Manager</b> Creates and manages the interface to communication protocols (sockets).
NFS	<b>Network File System Manager</b> Client file manager for mounting remote file systems. The NFS protocol provides remote access to shared file systems over local area networks.

## Other

Microware also supports the following file managers that are not included in the OS-9 distribution:

**Table 3-7 Other Microware File Managers**

Name	Description
CDFM	<p><b>Compact Disc File Manager</b> Handles CD and audio devices, as well as access to CD ROM and CD audio.</p>
UCM	<p><b>User Communications Manager</b> Handles video, pointer, and keyboard devices for CD-I (Compact Disc-Interactive).</p>
GFM	<p><b>Graphics File Manager</b> Provides a full set of text and graphics primitives, input handling for keyboards and pointers, and high level features for handling user interaction in a real-time, multitasking environment.</p>
NFM	<p><b>Network File Manager</b> Processes data requests over the OS-9 network.</p>
NRF	<p><b>Non-Volatile RAM File Manager</b> Controls non-volatile RAM and handles a flat (non-hierarchical) directory structure.</p>
ISM	<p><b>ISDN Basic Rate Interface Manager.</b> Manager connections for Basic Rate (2B+D) Interfaces to the Integrated Services Digital Network (ISDN).</p>

## File Manager Organization

A file manager is a collection of major subroutines accessed through an offset table. The table contains the starting address of each subroutine relative to the beginning of the table. The execution entry point offset in the module header specifies the location of the table. These routines are called in system state. A sample listing of the beginning of a file manager module is listed in [Beginning of a Sample File Manager Module](#).

When the individual file manager routines are called, standard parameters are passed in the following registers:

**Table 3-8 Registers**

Register	Pointer to the
(a1)	Path descriptor.
(a4)	Current process descriptor.
(a5)	User's register stack. User registers pass/receive parameters as shown in the system call description section.
(a6)	System global data area.

## Beginning of a Sample File Manager Module

```
* Sample File Manager
* Module Header declaration
  Type_Lang equ (FlMgr<<8)+Objct
  Attr_Revs equ ((ReEnt+Supstat)<<8)+0
  psect FileMgr,Type_Lang,Attr_Revs,Edition,0,Entry_pt
* Entry Offset Table
Entry_pt dc.w Create-Entry_pt
         dc.w Open-Entry_pt
         dc.w MakDir-Entry_pt
         dc.w ChgDir-Entry_pt
         dc.w Delete-Entry_pt
         dc.w Seek-Entry_pt
```

```

dc.w Read-Entry_pt
dc.w Write-Entry_pt
dc.w ReadLn-Entry_pt
dc.w WriteLn-Entry_pt
dc.w GetStat-Entry_pt
dc.w SetStat-Entry_pt
dc.w Close-Entry_pt

```

\* Individual Routines Start Here

## File Manager I/O Responsibilities

The following are the file manager's I/O responsibilities:

**Table 3-9 File Manager I/O Responsibilities**

Name	Description
Open	Open a file on a particular device. This typically involves allocating any buffers required, initializing path descriptor variables, and parsing the path name. If the file manager controls multifile devices (such as RBF and PIPEMAN), directory searching is performed to find the specified file.
Create	Perform the same function as <code>Open</code> . If the file manager controls multifile devices (such as RBF and PIPEMAN), a new file is created.
Makdir	Create a directory file on multifile devices. <code>Makdir</code> is neither preceded by a <code>Create</code> , nor followed by a <code>Close</code> . File managers that cannot support directories return with the carry bit set and an appropriate error code in register <code>d1.w</code> .

**Table 3-9 File Manager I/O Responsibilities (continued)**

Name	Description
Chgdir	<p>On multifile devices, ChgDir searches for a directory file. If the directory is found, the address of the directory is saved in the caller's process descriptor at P\$DIO. The kernel allocates a path descriptor so the ChgDir function may save information about the directory file for later searching.</p> <p>Open and Create begin searching in this directory when the caller's pathlist does not begin with a slash (/) character. File managers that do not support directories return with the carry bit set and an appropriate error code in register d1.w.</p>
Delete	<p>Multifile device managers usually do a directory search similar to Open and, once found, remove the file name from the directory. Any media the file was using is returned to unused status.</p> <p>File managers that do not support multifile devices return an E_UNKSVC error.</p>
Seek	<p>File managers that support random access devices use Seek to position file pointers of the already open path to the specified byte. Typically, this is a logical movement and does not affect the physical device. No error is produced at the time of the Seek, if the position is beyond the current end of file.</p> <p>File managers that do not support random access usually do nothing, but do not return an E_UNKSVC error.</p>

**Table 3-9 File Manager I/O Responsibilities (continued)**

Name	Description
Read	<p>Return the number of bytes requested to the user's data buffer. If there is no data available, an EOF error is returned. <code>Read</code> must be able to copy pure binary data. It generally does not edit the data. Usually, the file manager calls the device driver to actually read the data into a buffer. It then copies data from the buffer into the user's data area. This method helps keep file managers device independent.</p>
Write	<p><code>Write</code>, like <code>Read</code>, must be able to record pure binary data without alteration. Usually, the <code>Read</code> and <code>Write</code> routines are nearly identical. The most notable difference is <code>Write</code> uses the device driver's output routine instead of the input routine. Writing past the end of file on a device expands the file with new data.</p> <p>RBF and similar random access devices that use fixed-length records (sectors) must often pre-read a sector before writing it unless the entire sector is being written.</p>
ReadLn	<p><code>ReadLn</code> differs from <code>Read</code> in two respects. First, <code>ReadLn</code> is expected to terminate when the first end-of-line character (carriage return) is encountered. Second, <code>ReadLn</code> performs any input editing appropriate for the device.</p> <p>Specifically, the SCF file manager performs editing that involves functions such as handling backspace, line deletion, and echo.</p>

**Table 3-9 File Manager I/O Responsibilities (continued)**

Name	Description
WriteLn	<p>WriteLn is the counterpart of ReadLn. It calls the device driver to transfer data up to and including the first (if any) carriage return encountered. Appropriate output editing also is performed. After a carriage return, for example, SCF usually outputs a line feed character and nulls (if appropriate).</p>
GetStat	<p>GetStat (Get Status) is a wildcard call designed to provide the status of various features of a device (or file manager) that are not generally device independent.</p> <p>The file manager may perform some specific function such as obtaining the size of a file. Status calls that are unknown to the file manager are passed to the driver to provide a further means of device independence.</p>
SetStat	<p>SetStat (Set Status) is similar to GetStat. However, SetStat is generally used to set the status of various features of a device (or file manager).</p> <p>The file manager may perform some specific function such as setting the size of a file to a given value. Status calls that are unknown to the file manager are passed to the driver to provide a further means of device independence. For example, a SetStat call to format a disk track may behave differently on different types of disk controllers.</p>
Close	<p>Close ensures any output to a device is completed (writing out the last buffer if necessary), and releases any buffer space allocated when the path was opened. It may do specific end-of-file processing if necessary, such as writing end-of-file records on tapes.</p>

Device driver modules perform basic low-level physical input/output functions. For example, a disk driver module's basic functions are to read or write a physical sector. The driver is not concerned about files or directories, which are handled at a higher level by the OS-9 file manager. Because device driver modules are re-entrant, one copy of the module can simultaneously support multiple devices using identical I/O controller hardware.

This section describes the function and general design of OS-9 device driver modules to aid programmers in modifying existing drivers or writing new ones. To present this information in an understandable manner, only basic drivers for character-oriented (SCF-type) and disk-oriented (RBF-type) devices are covered.

If written properly, a single physical driver module can handle multiple identical hardware interfaces. The specific information for each physical interface (such as port address and initialization constants) is provided in the device descriptor module.

The name by which the device is known to the system is the name of the device descriptor module. OS-9 copies the initialization data of the device descriptor to the path descriptor data structure for easy access by the drivers.

A device driver is actually a package of seven subroutines that a file manager calls in system state. Their functions are:

- Initialize the device controller hardware and related driver variables as required.
- Read a standard physical unit (a character or sector, depending on the device type).
- Write a standard physical unit (a character or sector, depending on the device type).
- Return a specified device status.
- Set a specified device status.
- Deinitialize the device. It is assumed the device will not be used again unless reinitialized.
- Process an error exception generated during driver execution.

The interrupt service subroutine is also part of the device driver, although it is not called by the file manager, but by the kernel's interrupt routine. It communicates with the driver's main section through the static storage and certain system calls.

## Driver Module Format

All drivers must conform to the standard OS-9 memory module format. The module type code is `DRIVER`. Drivers should have the system-state bit set in the attribute byte of the module header. Currently OS-9 does not make use of this, but future revisions may require all device drivers to be system state modules. A sample assembly language header is shown in [Sample Driver Module Header Format](#).

The execution offset in the module header (`M$EXEC`) gives the address of an **offset table**. The offset table specifies the starting address of each of the seven driver subroutines relative to the base address of the module.

The static storage size (`M$MEM`) specifies the amount of local storage the driver requires. This is the sum of the global I/O storage, the storage required by the file manager (`V_XXX` variables), and any variables and tables declared in the driver.

The driver subroutines are called by the associated file manager through the offset table. The driver routines are always executed in system state. Regardless of the device type, the standard parameters listed here are passed to the driver in registers. You may also pass other parameters that depend on the device type and subroutine called. These are described in individual chapters concerning the file managers in the ***OS-9 for 68K Processors Technical I/O Manual***.

## INITIALIZE and TERMINATE

**Table 3-10 Registers Used to Initialize and Terminate**

Register	Address of the
(a1)	Device descriptor module.
(a2)	Driver's static variable storage.
(a4)	Process descriptor requesting the I/O function.
(a6)	System global variable storage area.

## READ, WRITE, GETSTAT, and SETSTAT

**Table 3-11 Registers Used to Read, Write, Getstat, and Setstat**

Register	Description
(a1)	Address of the path descriptor.
(a2)	Address of the driver's static variable storage.
(a4)	Address of the process descriptor requesting the I/O function.
(a5)	Pointer to the calling process' register stack.
(a6)	Address of the system global variable storage area.

## ERROR

You should define this entry point as the offset to the error exception handling code or zero if no handler is available. The kernel does not currently use this entry point. However, this entry point may be accessed in future revisions.

An `rtb` instruction terminates each subroutine. Error status is returned using the CCR carry bit with an error code returned in register `d1.w`.

## Sample Driver Module Header Format

```
* Module Header
Type_Lang equ (Drivr<<8)+Objct
Attr_Revs equ ((ReEnt+Supstat)<<8)+0
psect Acia,Typ_Lang,Attr_Rev,Edition,0,AciaEnt
* Entry Point Offset Table
AciaEnt dc.w      Init          Initialization routine offset
        dc.w Read      Read routine offset
        dc.w Write     Write routine offset
        dc.w GetStat   Get dev status routine offset
        dc.w SetStat   Set dev status routine offset
        dc.w TrmNat    Terminate dev routine offset
        dc.w Error     Error handler routine offset (0=none)
```

Because OS-9 is a multitasking operating system, you obtain optimum system performance when all I/O devices are set up for interrupt-driven operation.

For character-oriented devices, set up the controller to generate an interrupt when an incoming character is received and when the transmission of an out-going character is completed. The driver should buffer both the input data and the output data.

In the case of block-type devices (for example, RBF or SBF), set up the controller to generate an interrupt when a block read or write operation finishes. The driver does not need to buffer data because the driver is passed the address of a complete buffer. Direct Memory Access (DMA) transfers, if available, significantly improve data transfer speed.

Usually, the `Init` routine adds the relevant device interrupt service routine to the OS-9 interrupt polling system using the `F$IRQ` and/or `F$FIRQ` system call. The `READ` and `WRITE` routines enable and disable the controller interrupts as required. `TERM` disables the physical interrupts and then takes the device off the interrupt polling table.

The assignment of device intercept priority levels can have a significant impact on system operation. Generally, the smarter the device, the lower you can set its interrupt level. For example, a disk controller that buffers sectors can wait longer for service than a single-character buffered serial port. Assign the clock tick device the highest possible level to keep system time-keeping interference at a minimum.

The following table shows how you can assign interrupt levels:

```
level 6: clock ticker
      5: "dumb" (non-buffering) disk controller
      4: terminal port
      3: printer port
      2: "smart" (sector-buffering) disk controller
```

---

# Chapter 4: Interprocess Communications

---

This chapter describes the five forms of interprocess communication supported by OS-9. It includes the following topics:

- **Introduction**
- **Signals**
- **Alarms**
- **Events**
- **Semaphores**
- **Pipes**
- **Data Modules**



# Introduction

---

This chapter describes the six forms of interprocess communication OS-9 supports:

**Table 4-1 Forms of Interprocess Communication**

Name	Description
<b>Signals</b>	Synchronize concurrent processes.
<b>Alarms</b>	Send signals or execute subroutines at specified times.
<b>Events</b>	Synchronize the access of shared resources for concurrent processes.
<b>Semaphores</b>	Support exclusive access to shared resources.
<b>Pipes</b>	Transfer data among concurrent processes.
<b>Data Modules</b>	Transfer or share data among concurrent processes.

## Signals

---

In interprocess communications, a **signal** is an intentional disturbance in a system. OS-9 signals are designed to synchronize concurrent processes, but you can also use them to transfer small amounts of data.



---

### Note

Because they are usually processed immediately, signals provide real-time communication between processes.

---

Signals are also referred to as **software interrupts** because a process receives a signal similar to a CPU receiving an interrupt. Signals enable a process to send a **numbered interrupt** to another process.

If an active process receives a signal:

- The intercept routine executes immediately (if installed)
- The process resumes execution where it left off

If a sleeping or waiting process receives a signal:

- The process moves to the active queue
- The intercept handler executes
- The process resumes execution immediately after the call that removed it from the active queue



---

### Note

If a process receives a signal for which it does not have an intercept routine, the process is killed. This applies to all signals greater than 1, which is the wake-up signal.

---

When you send a signal, it has two parameters:

- The process ID of the destination
- A signal code

## Supported User-State Signal Codes

OS-9 supports the following signal codes in user-state:

**Table 4-2 User-state Signal Codes**

Signal	Description
0	<p><b>Unconditional Process Abort Signal</b></p> <p>The super-user can send the kill signal to any process, but non-super-users can send this signal only to processes with their group and user IDs. This signal terminates the receiving process regardless of the state of its signal mask, and is not intercepted by the intercept handler.</p>
1	<p><b>Wake-Up Signal</b></p> <p>Sleeping/waiting processes receiving this signal are awakened, but the intercept handler does not intercept the signal. Active processes ignore this signal. The wake-up signal is not queued if the process' signals are masked.</p>
2 - 31	<p><b>Deadly I/O Signals:</b></p>
2	<p><b>Keyboard Abort Signal</b></p> <p>Entering <code>&lt;control&gt;E</code> sends this signal to the last process to perform I/O on the terminal. Usually, the intercept routine performs <code>exit(2)</code> when it receives a keyboard abort signal.</p>

**Table 4-2 User-state Signal Codes (continued)**

<b>Signal</b>	<b>Description</b>
3	<b>Keyboard Interrupt Signal</b> Entering <control>C sends this signal to the last process to perform I/O on the terminal. Usually, the intercept routine performs <code>exit(3)</code> when it receives a keyboard interrupt signal.
4	<b>Hang-Up Signal</b> SCF sends this when the modem connection is lost.
5-19	<b>Reserved</b>
20-25	<b>Reserved</b>
26-31	<b>User-Definable Signals</b> User-definable signals; deadly to I/O operations.
32-65535	<b>Non-Deadly I/O Signals:</b>
32-127	<b>Reserved</b>
128-191	<b>Reserved</b>
192-255	<b>Reserved</b>
256-65535	<b>User-Defined Signals</b> These signal numbers are non-deadly to I/O signals.

**Note**

A program can receive a wake-up signal safely without an intercept handler.

You could design a signal routine to interpret the signal code word as data. For example, you could send various signal codes to indicate different stages in a process' execution. This is extremely effective because signals are processed immediately when received.

The following system calls allow processes to communicate through signals:

**Table 4-3 Signal Supported System Calls**

Name	Description
F\$Send	Send a signal to a process.
F\$Icpt	Install a signal intercept routine.
F\$Sleep	Deactivate the calling process until the specified number of ticks has passed or a signal is received.
F\$Sigmask	Enable/disable signals from reaching the calling process.



## For More Information

**Appendix A: Example Code** contains a program demonstrating how you may use signals.

For specific information about these system calls, refer to **Appendix D: OS-9 for 68K System Calls**. The Microware C compiler supports a corresponding C call for each of these calls as well.

# Alarms

---

## User-State Alarms

The user-state `F$Alarm (User-State)` request allows a program to arrange to send a signal to itself. The signal may be sent:

- At a specific time of day
- After a specified interval passes
- Periodically, each time the specified interval passes

OS-9 supports the following user-state alarm functions:

**Table 4-4 User-state Alarm Functions**

Name	Description
<code>A\$Delete (User-State)</code>	Remove a pending alarm request.
<code>A\$Set (User-State)</code>	Send a signal after specified time interval.
<code>A\$Cycle (User-State)</code>	Send a signal at specified time intervals.
<code>A\$AtDate (User-State)</code>	Send a signal at Gregorian date/time.
<code>A\$AtJul (User-State)</code>	Send a signal at Julian date/time.



---

## For More Information

Refer to the description of `F$Alarm (User-State)` in **Appendix D: OS-9 for 68K System Calls** for more information about user-state alarm functions.

---

## Cyclic Alarms

A cyclic alarm is most useful for providing a time base within a program. This makes it easier for you to synchronize certain time-dependent tasks. For example, a real-time game or simulation might allow 15 seconds for each move. You could use a cyclic alarm signal to determine when to update the game board.

The advantages of using cyclic alarms are more apparent when multiple time bases are required. For example, suppose you were using an OS-9 process to update the real-time display of a car's digital dashboard. The process might need to:

- Update a digital clock display every second
- Update the car's speed display five times per second
- Update the oil temperature and pressure display twice per second
- Update the inside/outside temperature every two seconds
- Calculate miles to empty every five seconds

You could give each function the process must monitor a cyclic alarm whose period is the desired refresh rate, and whose signal code identifies the particular display function. The signal handling routine might read an appropriate sensor and directly update the dashboard display. The system takes care of all of the timing details.

## Time of Day Alarms

You can set an alarm to provide a signal at a specific time and date. This provides a convenient mechanism for implementing a ***cron*** type of utility which executes programs at specific days and times. Another use is to generate a traditional alarm clock buzzer for personal reminders.

A key feature of this type of alarm is it is sensitive to changes made to the system time. For example, assume the current time is 4:00 and you want a program to send itself a signal at 5:00. The program could either set an alarm to occur at 5:00 or set the alarm to go off in one hour. Assume the system clock is 30 minutes slow, and the system administrator corrects it. In the first case, the program wakes up at 5:00; in the second case, the program wakes up at 5:30.

## Relative Time Alarms

You can use a relative time alarm to set a time limit for a specific action. Relative time alarms are frequently used to cause an ***I\$Read*** request to abort if it is not satisfied within a maximum time. To do this:

- 
- Step 1. Send a keyboard abort signal at the maximum allowable time.
  - Step 2. Issue the ***I\$Read*** request.
- 

If the alarm arrives before the input is received, the ***I\$Read*** request returns with an error. Otherwise, the alarm should be cancelled.



---

### For More Information

The **Alarms: Example Program** in **Appendix A: Example Code** demonstrates this technique.

---

## System-State Alarms

A system-state counterpart exists for each of the user-state alarm functions. However, the system-state version is considerably more powerful than its user-state equivalent:

- When a user-state alarm expires, the kernel sends a signal to the requesting process
- When a system-state alarm expires, the kernel executes the system-state subroutine specified by the requesting process at a very high priority

OS-9 supports the following system-state alarm functions:

**Table 4-5 System-state Alarm Functions**

Name	Description
<code>A\$Delete (System-State)</code>	Remove a pending alarm request.
<code>A\$Set (System-State)</code>	Execute a subroutine after a specified time interval.
<code>A\$Cycle (System-State)</code>	Execute a subroutine at specified time intervals.
<code>A\$AtDate (System-State)</code>	Execute a subroutine at a Gregorian date/time.
<code>A\$AtJul (System-State)</code>	Execute a subroutine at Julian date/time.



---

## For More Information

Refer to the description of `F$Alarm (System-State)` in **Appendix D: OS-9 for 68K System Calls** for more information about system-state alarm functions.

---



---

## Note

The alarm is executed by the kernel's process, not by the original requester's process. During execution, the user number of the system process temporarily changes to the original requester. The stack pointer (a7) passed to the alarm subroutine is within the system process descriptor and contains about 1K of free space.

---

The kernel automatically deletes a process' pending alarm requests when the process terminates. This may be undesirable in some cases. For example, assume an alarm is scheduled to shut off a disk drive motor if the disk has not been accessed for 30 seconds. The alarm request is made in the disk device driver for the I/O process. This alarm does not work if it is removed when the process exits.

One way to arrange for a persistent alarm is to execute the `F$Alarm (User-State)` request for the system process, rather than the current I/O process. To do this:

- 
- Step 1. Move the system variable `D_SysProc` to `D_Proc`.
  - Step 2. Execute the alarm request.
  - Step 3. Restore `D_Proc`.
-

For example:

```

move.l D_Proc(a6), -(a7)      /*Save current process pointer*/
move.l D_SysPrc(a6), D_Proc(a6) /*Impersonate system process*/
OS9 F$Alarm                  /*Execute the alarm request*/
                              /* (error handling omitted) */
move.l (a7)+, D_Proc(a6)     /*Restore current process*/
  
```



## Note

`a6` must be a pointer to the system globals.



## WARNING

If you use this technique, you must ensure the module containing the alarm subroutine remains in memory until after the alarm has expired.

An alarm subroutine must not perform any function resulting in any kind of sleeping or queuing. This includes `F$Sleep`, `F$Wait`, `F$Load`, `F$Event` (`wait`), `F$IOQu`, and `F$Fork` (if it might require `F$Load`). Other than these functions, the alarm subroutine may perform any task.

One possible use of the system-state alarm function might be to poll a positioning device, such as a mouse or light pen, every few system ticks. Be conservative when scheduling alarms, and make the cycle as large as reasonably possible. Otherwise, you could waste a great deal of the system's available CPU time.



## For More Information

Refer to **Alarms: Example Program** in **Appendix A: Example Code** for a program demonstrating how you can use alarms.

## Events

---

OS-9 **events** are multiple-value semaphores. They synchronize concurrent processes accessing shared resources such as files, data modules, and CPU time. For example, if two processes need to communicate with each other through a common data module, you may need to synchronize the processes so only one updates the data module at a time.




---

### Note

Events do not transmit any information, although processes using the event system may get information about the event and use it as something other than a signaling mechanism.

---

An OS-9 event is a 32-byte system global variable maintained by the system. Each event includes the following fields:

**Table 4-6 Event Fields**

Name	Bytes	Description
Event ID	2	This number and the event's array position create a unique ID.
Event name	12	This name must be unique and cannot exceed eleven characters plus null termination.
Event value	4	A value has a range of two billion.

**Table 4-6 Event Fields (continued)**

<b>Name</b>	<b>Bytes</b>	<b>Description</b>
Wait increment	2	This value is added to the event value when a process successfully waits for the event. It is set when the event is created and does not change.
Signal increment	2	This value is added to the event value when the event is signaled. It is set when the event is created and does not change.
Link Count	2	This is the event use count.
Next event	4	This is a pointer to the next process in the event queue. An event queue is circular and includes all processes waiting for the event. Each time the event is signaled, this queue is searched.
Previous event	4	This is a pointer to the previous process in the event queue.

The OS-9 event system provides facilities:

- To create and delete events
- To permit processes to link/unlink events and obtain event information
- To suspend operation until an event occurs
- For various means of signaling

You may use events directly as service requests in assembly language programs.

## The Wait and Signal Operations

`Wait` and `Signal` are the two most common operations performed on events.

<code>Wait</code>	suspends the process until the event is within a specified range, adds the wait increment to the current event value, and returns control to the process just after the wait operation was called.
<code>Signal</code>	adds the signal increment to the current event value, checks for other processes to awaken, and returns control to the process.

These operations allow a process to:

- Suspend itself while waiting for an event
- Reactivate when another process signals the event has occurred

For example, you could use events to synchronize the use of a printer. Initialize the event value to 1, the number of printers on the system. Set the signal increment to 1 and the wait increment to minus one (-1). When a process wants to use the printer, it checks to see if one is available—it waits for the event value to be in the range (1, number of printers). In this example, the number of printers is one.

An event value within the specified range indicates the printer is available; the printer is immediately marked as busy (the event value increases by -1, the wait increment) and the process is allowed to use it. An out of range event value indicates the printer is busy and the process is put to sleep on the event queue.

When a process finishes with the printer, the process signals the event; it applies the signal increment to the event value. Then, the event queue is searched for a process whose event value range includes the current event value. If such a process is found, the process:

- Becomes activate
- Applies the wait increment to the event value
- Uses the printer

## Coordinating Non-Sharable Resources

To coordinate sharing a non-sharable resource, user programs must:

- 
- Step 1. Wait for the resource to become available.
  - Step 2. Mark the resource as busy.
  - Step 3. Use the resource.
  - Step 4. Signal the resource is no longer busy.
- 

The first two steps in this process must be indivisible because of time-slicing. Otherwise, two processes could check an event and find it free. Then, both processes would try to mark it busy. This corresponds to two processes using a printer at the same time. The `F$Event` service request prevents this from happening by performing both steps in the `wait` operation.




---

### For More Information

**Events: Example Program** in **Appendix A: Example Code** includes a program demonstrating how you may use events.

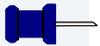
---

## The F\$Event System Call

The `F$Event` system call provides the mechanism to create named events for this type of application. The name **event** was chosen instead of **semaphore** because `F$Event` provides the flexibility to synchronize processes in a variety of ways not usually found in semaphore primitives. OS-9's event routines are very efficient and suitable for use in real-time control applications.

Event variables require several maintenance functions as well as the `Signal` and `Wait` operations. To keep the number of system calls required to a minimum, you can access all event operations through the `F$Event` system call.

Currently, OS-9 has functions to allow you to create, delete, link, unlink, and examine events (listed below). It also provides several variations of the `Signal` and `Wait` operations.



### Note

The `F$Event` description in **Appendix D: OS-9 for 68K System Calls** covers the specific parameters and functions of each event operation. The system definition file `funcs.a` defines `Ev$` function names. Resolve actual values for the function codes by linking with the relocatable library `sys.l` or `usr.l`.

OS-9 supports the following event functions:

**Table 4-7 Event Functions**

Name	Description
<code>Ev\$Link</code>	Link to an existing event by name.
<code>Ev\$UnLnk</code>	Unlink an event.
<code>Ev\$Creat</code>	Create a new event.
<code>Ev\$Delet</code>	Delete an existing event.
<code>Ev\$Wait</code>	Wait for an event to occur.
<code>Ev\$WaitR</code>	Wait for a relative event to occur.
<code>Ev\$Read</code>	Read an event value without waiting.

**Table 4-7 Event Functions (continued)**

Name	Description
Ev\$Info	Return event information.
Ev\$Pulse	Signal an event occurrence and search waiting processes. Temporarily changes the event value.
Ev\$Signl	Signal an event occurrence and search waiting processes. Changes the event value.
Ev\$Set	Set an event variable, signal an event occurrence, and search waiting processes.
Ev\$SetR	Set an event variable relative to its current value and search the waiting processes.

# Semaphores

---

**Semaphores** support exclusive access to shared resources. Semaphores are similar to events in the way in which they provide applications with mutually exclusive access to data structures. Semaphores differ from events in they are strictly binary in nature which increases their efficiency.

OS-9 supports the following semaphore routines:

**Table 4-8 Semaphore Routines**

Name	Description
<code>_os_sema_init()</code>	Initialize the semaphore data structure for use.
<code>_os_sema_p()</code>	Reserve a semaphore.
<code>_os_sema_term()</code>	Terminate the use of a semaphore data structure.
<code>_os_sema_v()</code>	Release a semaphore.



---

## Note

Using C bindings is the preferred method of accessing OS-9 semaphores.

---

A single semaphore system call, `F$Sema`, provides all of the semaphore's functionality. `F$Sema` requires two parameters:

- One indicating which operation is being performed on the semaphore
- A pointer to the semaphore structure

Unlike events, there is no system call provided to create a semaphore. You must provide the storage for the semaphore. Because semaphores are typically used to protect specific resources, you should declare the semaphore structure as part of the resource structure.

A typical application using semaphores would create a data module containing the memory for the intended resource and its associated semaphore. By using a data module for implementing semaphores, applications can use the OS-9's module protection mechanisms to protect the semaphore.




---

## For More Information

**Semaphores: Example Program** in **Appendix A: Example Code** includes a program demonstrating how you may use semaphores.

---

Once you have created and initialized the semaphore data module, additional processes within the application may use the semaphore by linking to the semaphore data module. You must create the semaphore data module with appropriate permissions to allow the other processes within the application to link to and use the semaphore and its resource.

## Semaphore States

A semaphore has two states:

Reserved	any process attempting to reserve the semaphore waits, including the process reserving the semaphore.
Free	any process may claim the semaphore.

## Acquiring Exclusive Access

To acquire exclusive access to a resource, a process may use the `_os_sema_p()` C binding to reserve the semaphore. If the semaphore is already busy, the process is suspended and placed at the end of the semaphore's wait queue.

## Releasing Exclusive Access

To release exclusive access to a resource, a process may use the `_os_sema_v()` C binding to release the semaphore. When the owner process releases the semaphore, the first process in the semaphore's queue is activated and retries the reserve operation on the semaphore.

Semaphores use the following data structure:

```
/* Semaphore structure definition */
typedef struct semaphore {
    u_int32    s_value,          /* semaphore value (free/busy status) */
              s_lock;          /* semaphore structure lock (use count)*/
    Pr_desc   s_qnext,         /* wait queue for process descriptors */
              s_qprev;        /* wait queue for process descriptors */
    u_int32    s_length,       /* current length of wait queue */
              s_owner,        /* current owner of semaphore */
              s_reserved[6];  /* reserved space */
} semaphore, *Semaphore;
```

# Pipes

---

An OS-9 *pipe* is a first-in first-out (FIFO) buffer that allows concurrently executing processes to communicate data: the output of one process (the writer) is read as input by a second process (the reader). Communication through pipes eliminates the need for an intermediate file to hold data.

Pipeman is the OS-9 file manager supporting interprocess communication through pipes. Pipeman is a re-entrant subroutine package called for I/O service requests to a device named `/pipe`. Although no physical device is used in pipe communications, you must specify a driver in the pipe descriptor module. The null driver (a driver doing nothing) is usually used, but only gets called by pipeman for GetStat and SetStat calls.

A pipe may contain up to 90 bytes unless a different buffer size was declared in the device descriptor. Typically, a pipe is used as a one-way data path between two processes: one writing and one reading. The reader waits for the data to become available, and the writer waits for the buffer to empty. However, any number of processes can access the same pipe simultaneously; pipeman coordinates these processes. A process can even arrange for a single pipe to have data sent to itself. You could use this to simplify type conversions by printing data into the pipe and reading it back using a different format.

You can use pipes much like signals to coordinate processes, but with these advantages:

- Longer messages (more than 16 bits).
- Queued messages.
- Determination of pending messages.
- Easy process-independent coordination (using named pipes).

OS-9 supports both named and unnamed (anonymous) pipes. The shell uses unnamed pipes extensively to construct program *pipelines*, but user programs may use them as well. You may only open a particular unnamed pipe once. Independent processes may communicate through them only if the pipeline was constructed by a common parent to the processes. Do this by making each process inherit the pipe path as one of its standard I/O paths.

Named and unnamed pipes function nearly identically. The main difference is several independent processes may open a named pipe, which simplifies pipeline construction. The following sections note other specific differences.

## Operations on Pipes

### Creating Pipes

The `I$Create` system call is used with the pipe file manager to create new named or unnamed pipe files.



---

#### For More Information

Refer to **Appendix D: OS-9 for 68K System Calls** for more information about `I$Create`.

---

You may create pipes using the pathlist `/pipe` (for unnamed pipes, *pipe* is the name of the pipe device descriptor) or `/pipe/<name>` (*<name>* is the logical file name being created). If a pipe file with the same name already exists, an error (`E$CEF`) is returned. Unnamed pipes cannot return this error.

All processes connected to a particular pipe share the same physical path descriptor. Consequently, the path is automatically set to update mode regardless of the mode specified at creation. You may specify access permissions; they are handled similarly to RBF.

The size of the default FIFO buffer associated with a pipe is specified in the pipe device descriptor. You may override this when you create a pipe by setting the initial file size bit of the mode byte and passing the desired file size in register `d2`.

If no default or overriding size is specified, a 90-byte FIFO buffer inside the path descriptor is used.

## Opening Pipes

When accessing unnamed pipes, `I$Open`, like `I$Create`, opens a new anonymous pipe file. When accessing named pipes, `I$Open` searches for the specified name through a linked list of named pipes associated with a particular pipe device. If `I$Open` finds the pipe, the path number returned refers to the same physical path allocated when the pipe was created. Internally, this is similar to the `I$Dup` system call.

Opening an unnamed pipe is simple, but sharing the pipe with another process is more complex. If a new path to `/pipe` is opened for the second process, the new path is independent of the old one.

The only way for more than one process to share the same unnamed pipe is by inheriting the standard I/O paths through the `F$Fork` call. As an example, the following outline describes a method in pseudo-code the shell might use to construct a pipeline for the command `dir -u ! qsort`. It assumes paths 0 and 1 are already open.

```
StdInp = I$Dup(0)           save the shell's standard input
StdOut = I$Dup(1)          save shell's standard output
I$Close(1)                 close standard output
I$Open("/pipe")           open the pipe (as path 1)
I$Fork("dir", "-u")       fork "dir" with pipe as standard output
I$Close(0)                 free path 0
I$Dup(1)                   copy the pipe to path 0
I$Close(1)                 make path available
I$Dup(StdOut)              restore original standard out
I$Fork("qsort")           fork qsort with pipe as standard input
I$Close(0)                 get rid of the pipe
I$Dup(StdInp)              restore standard input
I$Close (StdInp)           close temporary path
I$Close (StdOut)           close temporary path
```

The main advantage of using named pipes is several processes may communicate through the same named pipe without having to inherit it from a common parent process. For example, you can approximate the above steps with the following command:

```
dir -u >/pipe/temp & qsort </pipe/temp
```



---

**Note**

The OS-9 shell always constructs its pipelines using the unnamed `/pipe` descriptor.

---

## Read/ReadLn

The `I$Read` and `I$ReadLn` system calls return the next bytes in the pipe buffer. If there is not enough data ready to satisfy the request, the process reading the pipe is put to sleep until more data is available.



---

**For More Information**

Refer to **Appendix D: OS-9 for 68K System Calls** for more information about `I$Read` and `I$ReadLn`.

---

The end-of-file is recognized when the pipe is empty and the number of processes waiting to read the pipe is equal to the number of users on the pipe. If any data was read before end-of-file was reached, an end-of-file error is not returned. However, the byte count returned is the number of bytes actually transferred, which is less than the number requested.



---

**Note**

The `Read` and `Write` system calls are faster than `ReadLn` and `WriteLn` because pipeman does *not* have to check for carriage returns and the loops moving data are tighter.

---

The `I$Write` and `I$WritLn` system calls work in almost the same way as `I$Read` and `I$ReadLn`. A pipe error (`E$Write`) is returned when all the processes with a full unnamed pipe open are attempting to write to the pipe. Each process attempting to write to the pipe receives the error, and the pipe remains full.

When named pipes are being used, `pipeman` never returns the `E$Write` error. If a named pipe gets full before a process receiving data from the pipe opens it, the process writing to the pipe is put to sleep until a process reads the pipe.

When a pipe path is closed, its path count decreases. If no paths are left open on an unnamed pipe, its memory returns to the system. With named pipes, its memory returns only if the pipe is empty. A non-empty, named pipe (with no open paths) is artificially kept open, waiting for another process to open and read from the pipe. This allows you to use pipes as a type of temporary, self-destructing RAM disk file.

`Pipeman` supports a wide range of status codes to allow you to insert a pipe between processes where an RBF or SCF device would normally be used. For this reason, most RBF and SCF status codes are implemented to do something without returning an error. The actual function may differ slightly from the other file managers, but it is usually compatible.

The following are the `GetStat` status codes:

**Table 4-9 GetStat Status Codes**

Name	Description
<code>SS_Opt</code>	Read the 128-byte option section of the path descriptor. You can use it to get the path type, data buffer size, and name of pipe.
<code>SS_Ready</code>	Test whether data is ready. Returns the number of bytes in the buffer.
<code>SS_Size</code>	Return the size of the pipe buffer.

**Table 4-9 GetStat Status Codes (continued)**

Name	Description
<code>SS_EOF</code>	Test for end-of-file.
<code>SS_FD</code>	Return a pseudo-file descriptor image.

Other codes are passed to the device driver.

The following are the SetStat status codes:

**Table 4-10 SetStat Status Codes**

Name	Description
<code>SS_Attr</code>	Change the pipe file's attributes.
<code>SS_Break</code>	Force disconnection.
<code>SS_FD</code>	Do nothing, but return without error.
<code>SS_Opt</code>	Do nothing, but return without error.
<code>SS_Relea</code>	Release the device from the <code>SS_SSig</code> processing before data becomes available.
<code>SS_Size</code>	Reset the pipe buffer if the specified size is zero. Otherwise it has no effect, but returns without error.
<code>SS_SSig</code>	Send a signal when the data becomes available.

Other codes are passed to the device driver.

The `I$MakDir` and `I$ChgDir` service requests are illegal service routines on pipes. They return `E$UnkSvc` (unknown service request).

## Pipe Directories

Opening an unnamed pipe in the `Dir` mode allows it to be opened for reading. In this case, `pipeman` allocates a pipe buffer and pre-initializes it to contain the names of all open named pipes on the specified device. Each name is null-padded to make a 32-byte record. This allows utilities, which normally read an RBF directory file sequentially, to work with pipes as well.

The head of a linked list of named pipes is in the static storage of the pipe device driver (usually the `null` driver). If several pipe descriptors with different default pipe buffer sizes are on a system, the I/O system notices the same file manager, device driver, and port address (usually zero) are being used. It does not allocate new static storage for each pipe device and all named pipes are on the same list.

For example, if two pipe descriptors exist, a directory of either device reveals all the named pipes for both devices. If each pipe descriptor has a unique port address (0, 1, ...), the I/O system allocates different static storage for each pipe device. This produces more predictable results.

## Data Modules

---

OS-9 data modules allow multiple processes to share a data area and to transfer data among themselves. A **data module** must have a valid CRC and module header to be loaded. A data module can be non-re-entrant; it can modify itself and be modified by several processes.

OS-9 does not restrict the content, organization, or use of the data area in a data module. The processes using the data module determine these considerations.

OS-9 does not synchronize processes using a data module. Consequently, thoughtful programming usually involving events, signals or semaphores is required to allow several processes to update a shared data module simultaneously.

## Creating Data Modules

The `F$DatMod` system call creates a data module with a specified set of attributes, data area size, and module name. The data area is cleared automatically. The data module is created with a CRC of zero and entered into the system module directory.



---

### Note

It is essential the data module's header and name string not be modified to prevent the module from becoming unknown to the system.

---

The Microware C compiler provides several C calls to create and use data modules directly. These include the `_mkdata_module()` call, which is specific to data modules, and the `modlink()`, `modload()`, `munlink()`, `munload()`, `_os_datmod()`, `_os_link()`, `_os_unlink()`, `_os_setcrc()`, and `_setcrc()` facilities which apply to all OS-9 modules.



---

## For More Information

For more information about these C calls, refer to the library section of the *Using Ultra C* manual.

---

## Link Count

Like all OS-9 modules, data modules have an associated link count. The link count is a counter of how many processes are currently linked to the module. Generally, the module is taken out of memory when this count reaches zero. If you want the module to remain in memory when the link count is zero, create the module with the sticky bit set in its attribute byte.

## Saving to Disk

If a data module is saved to disk, you can use the `dump` utility to examine the module's format and contents. You can save a data module to disk using the `save` utility or by writing the module image into a file.

The module CRC of a data module is not valid at creation time, and a valid CRC becomes valid once the data module is modified. A saved data module cannot be reloaded into memory unless you:

- Use the `F$SetCRC` system call or `_setcrc()` C library call before writing the module to disk, or
- Use the `fixmod` utility after the module has been written to disk.



---

## For More Information

For more information about:

- `F$SetCRC` refer to **Appendix D: OS-9 for 68K System Calls**.
  - `dump`, `save`, or `fixmod` refer to the ***OS-9 Utilities Reference Manual***.
  - `_setcrc()` refer to the ***Using Ultra C*** manual.
-



---

# Chapter 5: User Trap Handlers

---

This chapter explains how to install and execute trap handlers, and provides an example of trap handler coding. It includes the following topics:

- [Trap Handlers](#)
- [Installing and Executing Trap Handlers](#)
- [Calling a Trap Handler](#)
- [An Example Trap Handler](#)
- [Trace of Example Two Using the Example Trap Handler](#)



# Trap Handlers

The 68000 family of microprocessors has sixteen software trap exception vectors. The first (trap 0) is reserved for making OS-9 system calls. You may use the remaining fifteen as service requests to user-defined ***user trap handlers***.

Microware provides standard trap handlers for I/O conversions in the C language, floating point math, and trigonometric functions. The following traps are reserved:

**Table 5-1 Reserved Traps**

Trap	Description
13	<code>cio/csl</code> is automatically called for any C program. <code>cio</code> and <code>csl</code> use the same trap. C programs are compiled to use one or the other but not both. Selection depends on the libraries linked into the program at link time. UCC libraries use <code>csl</code> while the original C compiler (now OC) used libraries that trapped to <code>cio</code> . See your C compiler manual for additional information.
15	<code>Math</code> is called for floating point math, extended integer math, and/or type conversion. It is also used for programs using transcendental and/or extended mathematical functions.



## For More Information

For further information about the math module, refer to **Chapter 6: The Math Module**.

A **user trap handler** is an OS-9 module usually containing a set of related subroutines. Any user program may dynamically link to the user trap handler and call it at execution time.



---

### Note

While trap handlers reduce the size of the execution program, they do not do anything that could not be done by linking the program with appropriate library routines at compilation time. In fact, programs calling trap handlers execute slightly slower than linked programs performing the same function.

---

Trap handlers must be written in a language that compiles to machine code (such as assembly language or C). They should be suitably generic for use by a number of programs.

Trap handlers are similar to normal OS-9 program modules, except trap handlers have three execution entry points:

- A trap execution entry point
- A trap initialization entry point
- A trap termination entry point

Trap handler modules are of module type `TrapLib` and module language `Objct`.

The trap module routines usually execute as though they were called with a `jsr` instruction, except for minor stack differences. Any system calls or other operations the calling module could perform are usable in the trap module.

You can write a trap handler module running in system state. This is rarely advisable, but sometimes necessary.



# Installing and Executing Trap Handlers

---

A user program installs a trap handler by executing the `F$TLink` system request. When this is done, the OS-9 kernel:

- Links to the trap module
- Allocates and initializes its static storage (if any)
- Executes the trap module's initialization routine



---

## For More Information

Refer to [Appendix D: OS-9 for 68K System Calls](#) for more information about `F$TLink`.

---

Typically, the initialization routine has very little to do. You could use it to:

- Open files
- Link to additional trap or data modules
- Perform other startup activities

It is called only once per trap handler in any given program.

A trap module used by a program is usually installed as part of the program's initialization code. At initialization, a particular trap number (1-15) is specified that refers to the trap module. The program calls functions in the trap module by using the 68000 `trap` instruction corresponding to the trap number specified. This is followed by a function word passed to the trap handler itself. The arrangement is very similar to making a normal OS-9 system call.

The OS-9 relocatable macro assembler has special mnemonics to make trap calls more apparent. These are:

- `OS9` for trap 0
- `tcall` for the other user traps

They work like built-in macros, generating code as illustrated in the following section.

## OS9 and tcall: Equivalent Assembly Language Syntax

The following shows equivalent assembly language syntax for `os9` and `tcall`:

**Table 5-2 OS-9/tcall Equivalencies**

Mnemonic	Code Generation
<code>OS9 F\$TLink</code>	<code>trap 0</code> <code>dc.w F\$TLink</code>
<code>tcall T\$Math,T\$DMul</code>	<code>trap T\$Math</code> <code>dc.w T\$DMul</code>

From user programs, you can delay installing a trap module until the first time it is actually needed. If a trap module has not been installed for a particular trap when the first `tcall` is made, OS-9 checks the program's exception entry offset (`M$Except` in the module header). The program aborts if this offset is zero. Otherwise, OS-9 passes control to the exception routine. At this point, the trap handler can be installed, and the first `tcall` reissued. The second example in this chapter shows how to do this.

## Calling a Trap Handler

The actual details of building and using a trap handler are best explained by means of a simple, complete example.

### Example One

The following program (`TrapTst`) uses trap vector 5. It installs the trap handler and then calls it twice.

```

                nam      TrapTst1
                ttl      example one - link and call trap handler
                use      /dd/defs/oskdefs.d
Edition        equ      1
Typ_Lang      equ      (Prgrm<<8)+Objct
Attr_Rev      equ      (ReEnt<<8)+0
                psect   traptst,Typ_Lang,Attr_Rev,Edition,1024,Test

TrapNum       equ      5                trap number to use
TrapName      dc.b     "trap",0        name of trap handler

*****
* Main program entry point

Test:         moveq    #TrapNum,d0      trap number to assign
              moveq    #0,d1           no optional memory override
              lea     TrapName(pc),a0  ptr to name of trap handler
              os9     F$TLink         install trap handler
              bcs.s   Test99          abort if error
              tcall   TrapNum,0       call trap function #0
              bcs.s   Test99          abort if error
              tcall   TrapNum,1       call trap function #1
              bcs.s   Test99          abort if error
              moveq   #0,d1           exit without error
Test99        os9     F$Exit          exit
              ends

```

### Example Two

The following example shows how you could modify the preceding program to install the trap handler in an exception routine when the first `tcall` is executed. You might do this for a trap handler that may not be used at all by a program, depending on circumstances.

This example does not initialize the trap handler before using it, but is otherwise identical to [Example One](#). It provides a `LinkTrap` subroutine to automatically install the trap handler when it is first used. Refer to the [Trace of Example Two Using the Example Trap Handler](#) later in this chapter for more information.

```

                nam      TrapTst2
                ttl      example two - call trap handler
                use      /dd/defs/oskdefs.d
Edition        equ      1
Typ_Lang       equ      (Prgrm<<8)+Objct
Attr_Rev       equ      (ReEnt<<8)+0
                psect   traprst,Typ_Lang,Attr_Rev,Edition,1024,Test,LinkTrap

TrapNum        equ      5                trap number to use
TrapName       dc.b     "trap",0        name of trap handler

*****
* Main program entry point

Test:          tcall    TrapNum,0        call trap function #0
                bcs.s   Test99          abort if error
                tcall    TrapNum,1      call trap function #1
                bcs.s   Test99          abort if error
                moveq   #0,d1           exit without error
Test99         os9      F$Exit           exit

*****
* Subroutine LinkTrap
* Installs trap handler and then executes first trap call.
* Note: Error checking is minimized to keep example simple.
*
* Passed:  d0-d7 = caller's registers
*          a0-a5 = caller's registers
*          (a6) = trap handler static storage pointer
*          (a7) = trap init/entry stack frame
*
* Returns: trap installed, backs up PC to execute "tcall" instruction
*
* The stack looks like this:
*
*          .----->
*          +8 | caller's return PC |
*          >-----<
*          +6 | vector # |
*          >-----<
*          +4 | func code |
*          >-----<
*          | caller's a6 register |
*          (a7)-> -----<

LinkTrap:      addq.l   #8,a7            discard excess stack info
                movem.l d0-d1/a0-a2,-(a7) save registers
                moveq   #TrapNum,d0     trap number to assign

```

```
        moveq    #0,d1                no optional memory override
lea     TrapName(pc),a0              ptr to name of trap handler
os9     F$TLink                       install trap handler
bcs.s   Test99                         abort if error
movem.l (a7)+,d0-d1/a0-a2           retrieve registers
subq.l  #4,(a7)                       back up to tcall instruction
rts     return                         to tcall instruction
ends
```

# An Example Trap Handler

The following makefile makes the example trap handler and test programs:

```
# makefile - Used to make the example trap handler and test programs.

RDIR    = RELS
TRAP    = trap
TEST1   = traptst1
TEST2   = traptst2

# Dependencies for making the entire trap example.

trap.example: $(TRAP) $(TEST1) $(TEST2)
    touch trap.example

# Dependencies for making the trap handler.

$(TRAP): $(TRAP).r
    l68 -g $(RDIR)/$(TRAP).r -l=/dd/lib/sys.l -o=$(TRAP)

# Dependencies for making the traptst1 test program.

$(TEST1): $(TEST1).r
    l68 -g $(RDIR)/$(TEST1).r -l=/dd/lib/sys.l -o=$(TEST1)

# Dependencies for making the traptst2 test program.

$(TEST2): $(TEST2).r
    l68 -g $(RDIR)/$(TEST2).r -l=/dd/lib/sys.l -o=$(TEST2)
```

The trap handler itself is listed here. It is artificially simple to avoid confusion. Most trap handlers have several functions, and generally begin with a dispatch routine based on the function code.

```

        nam      Trap Handler
        ttl      Example trap handler module
        use      /dd/defs/oskdefs.d
Type    set      (TrapLib<<8)+Objct
Revs    set      ReEnt<<8
        psect   traphand,Type,Revs,0,0,TrapEnt
        dc.l    TrapInit          initialization entry point
        dc.l    TrapTerm         termination entry point

*****
* TrapInit: Trap handler initialization entry point.
*
* Passed:  d0.w = User Trap number (1-15)
*          d1.l = (optional) additional static storage
*          d2-d7 = caller's registers at the time of the trap
*          (a0) = trap handler module name pointer
```

```

*      (a1) = trap handler execution entry point
*      (a2) = trap module pointer
*      a3-a5 = caller's registers (parameters required by handler)
*      (a6) = trap handler static storage pointer
*      (a7) = trap init stack frame pointer
*
* Returns: (a0) = updated trap handler name pointer
*          (a1) = trap handler execution entry point
*          (a2) = trap module pointer
*          cc   = carry set, dl.w=error code if error
*          Other values returned are dependent on the trap handler
*

```

```

* The stack looks like this:
*
*      .-----
*      +8 | caller's return PC |
*      >-----<
*      +4 | 0000 | 0000 |
*      >-----|-----<
*      | caller's a6 register |
*      (a7)-> -----

```

```

TrapInit  movem.l (a7),a6      restore user's a6 register
          addq.l #8,a7        take other stuff off the stack
          rts                 return to caller

```

\*\*\*\*\*

```

* TrapEnt: User trap handler entry point.
*
* Passed: d0-d7 = caller's registers
*          a0-a5 = caller's registers
*          (a6) = trap handler's static storage pointer
*          (a7) = trap entry stack frame pointer
*
* Returns: cc   = carry set, dl.w=error code if error
*          Other values returned are dependent on the trap handler
*

```

```

* The stack looks like this:
*
*      .-----
*      +8 | caller's return PC |
*      >-----<
*      +6 | vector # |
*      >-----<
*      +4 | func code |
*      >-----<
*      | caller's a6 register |
*      (a7)-> -----

```

```

          org      0          stack offset definitions
S.d0     do.l     1          caller's d0 reg
S.d1     do.l     1          caller's d1 reg
S.a0     do.l     1          caller's a0 reg
S.a6     do.l     1          caller's a6 reg
S.func   do.w     1          trap function code
S.vect   do.w     1          vector number
S.pc     do.l     1          return pc

```

```

TrapEnt:  movem.l  d0-d1/a0, -(a7)      save registers
         move.w  S.func(a7), d0      get function code
         cmp.w   #1, d0              is function in range?
         bhi.s  FuncErr             abort if not
         beq.s  Trap10              branch if function code #1
         lea   String1(pc), a0      get first string ptr
         bra.s  Trap20              continue
Trap10   lea   String2(pc), a0      get second string ptr
Trap20   moveq  #1, d0              standard output path
         moveq  #80, d1             maximum bytes to write
         os9   I$WritLn            output the string
         bcs.s  Abort              abort if error
Trap90   movem.l (a7)+, d0-d1/a0/a6-a7 restore regs
         rts                       return to user

FuncErr  move.w  #1<<8+99, d2       abort (return error 001:099)
Abort    move.w  d1, S.d1+2(a7)     put error code in d1.w
         ori   #Carry, ccr         set carry
         bra.s  Trap90            exit

String1  dc.b   "Microware Systems Corporation", C$CR, 0
String2  dc.b   "    Quality keeps us #1", C$CR, 0

*****
* TrapTerm: Trap handler terminate entry point.
*
* As of this release (OS-9 V2.4) the trap termination entry
* point is never called by the OS-9 kernel. Documentation
* details will be available when a working implementation
* exists.

TrapTerm move.w  #1<<8+199, d1      never called, if it gets here
         os9   F$Exit              crash program (Error 001:199)
         ends

```

## Trace of Example Two Using the Example Trap Handler

---

It is extremely educational to watch the OS-9 user debugger trace through the execution of Example Two (using the example trap handler). User trap handlers look like subroutines to the debugger, so it is possible to trace through them. The output should appear something like this:

```
(beginning of second example program)
Test                >4E450000          trap #5,0
```



### Note

Because the trap handler has not been linked as in [Example One](#), control jumps to the subroutine `LinkTrap`:

```
LinkTrap            >508F          addq.l #8,a7
LinkTrap+0x2        >48E7C0E0      movem.l d0-d1/a0-a2,-(a7)
LinkTrap+0x6        >7005          moveq.l #5,d0
LinkTrap+0x8        >7200          moveq.l #0,d1
LinkTrap+0xA        >41FAFFDC      lea.l bname+0xA(pc),a0
LinkTrap+0xE        >4E400021      os9 F$TLink
```



### Note

Control switches to the subroutine `TrapInit` and then returns to `LinkTrap`:

```
trap:btext+0x50    >4CD74000      movem.l (a7),a6
trap:btext+0x54    >508F          addq.l #8,a7
trap:btext+0x56    >4E75          rts
LinkTrap+0x12      >65E8          bcs.b Test+0xE
LinkTrap+0x14      >4CDF0703      movem.l (a7)+,d0-d1/a0-a2
LinkTrap+0x18      >5997          subq.l #4,(a7)
LinkTrap+0x1A      >4E75          rts
```



## Note

Control now returns to the main program to re-execute the `tcall` instruction.

```

Test                >4E450000          trap #5,0
trap:TrapEnt       >48E7C080          movem.l d0-d1/a0,-(a7)
trap:TrapEnt+0x4   >302F0010          move.w 16(a7),d0
trap:TrapEnt+0x8   >B07C0001          cmp.w #1,d0
trap:TrapEnt+0xC   >621C              bhi.b trap:TrapEnt+0x2A
trap:TrapEnt+0xE   >6706              beq.b trap:TrapEnt+0x16
trap:TrapEnt+0x10  >41FA0026          lea.l trap:TrapEnt+0x38(pc),a0
trap:TrapEnt+0x14  >6004              bra.b trap:TrapEnt+0x1A
trap:TrapEnt+0x1A  >7001              moveq.l #1,d0
trap:TrapEnt+0x1C  >7250              moveq.l #80,d1
trap:TrapEnt+0x1E  >4E40008C          os9 I$WritLn
Microwave Systems Corporation
trap:TrapEnt+0x22  >650A              bcs.b trap:TrapEnt+0x2E
trap:TrapEnt+0x24  >4CDFC103          movem.l (a7)+,d0-d1/a0/a6-a7
trap:TrapEnt+0x28  >4E75              rts
Test+0x4           >6508              bcs.b Test+0xE
Test+0x6           >4E450001          trap #5,0x1
trap:TrapEnt       >48E7C080          movem.l d0-d1/a0,-(a7)
trap:TrapEnt+0x4   >302F0010          move.w 16(a7),d0
trap:TrapEnt+0x8   >B07C0001          cmp.w #1,d0
trap:TrapEnt+0xC   >621C              bhi.b trap:TrapEnt+0x2A
trap:TrapEnt+0xE   >6706              beq.b trap:TrapEnt+0x16->
trap:TrapEnt+0x16  >41FA003F          lea.l trap:TrapEnt+0x57(pc),a0
trap:TrapEnt+0x1A  >7001              moveq.l #1,d0
trap:TrapEnt+0x1C  >7250              moveq.l #80,d1
trap:TrapEnt+0x1E  >4E40008C          os9 I$WritLn
Quality keeps us #1
trap:TrapEnt+0x22  >650A              bcs.b trap:TrapEnt+0x2E
trap:TrapEnt+0x24  >4CDFC103          movem.l (a7)+,d0-d1/a0/a6-a7
trap:TrapEnt+0x28  >4E75              rts
Test+0xA           >6502              bcs.b Test+0xE
Test+0xC           >7200              moveq.l #0,d1
Test+0xE           >4E400006          os9 F$Exit

```

---

# Chapter 6: The Math Module

---

This chapter discusses math module functions, and lists descriptions of the assembler calls you can use with the math module. It includes the following topics:

- **Introduction**
- **Floating Point Co-processor Emulation Modules**
- **Math Trap Handler**



# Introduction

---

OS-9 contains two module types supporting floating point math calculations:

## Floating Point Co-processor Emulation Modules

For systems lacking an MC68881 or MC68882 floating point co-processor, the co-processor emulation modules `fpu` and `fpsp040` provide a seamless software solution for code compiled to use the MC68882 instruction set. This includes all code the Ultra C compiler generates, as well as code generated using the Version 3.2 compiler with the `-k=2f` option.

## Math Trap Handler

The math trap handlers, `math` and `math881`, are provided for backward compatibility with code generated using the Version 3.2 compiler with the `-x` option.

## Floating Point Co-processor Emulation Modules

---

The floating point instructions supported by the MC68881 and MC68882 co-processors cause a floating point exception when executed on a system without a co-processor. This results in the process aborting with the error:

```
Error #000:111 (E$1111)
A "1111" instruction exception occurred
```

To prevent this error and allow proper emulation of the faulted floating point instruction, OS-9 provides the co-processor emulation module `fpu` (and `fppsp` for the MC68040).

The co-processor emulation module provides an exception handler that traps the floating point exception, decodes the faulted instruction, and emulates (in the software) the functionality of the floating point instruction. OS-9 for 68K V3.0 contains two such emulation modules:

**Table 6-1 Emulation Modules**

Emulation Module	Description
<code>fpu</code>	<p>The <code>fpu</code> module is compatible with all OS-9 for 68K Version 3.0 systems.</p> <p><code>fpu</code> supports the subset of the MC68882 programming model used by Microware's V3.2 compiler and Ultra C compiler. See <b>Using Ultra C</b> for additional information on the instructions supported by <code>fpu</code>.</p>

**Table 6-1 Emulation Modules (continued)**

Emulation Module	Description
<code>f<sub>psp</sub></code>	<p>The MC68040 contains a built-in subset of the MC68882 programming model. The <code>f<sub>psp</sub></code> module provides the remainder of the MC68882 functionality. <code>f<sub>psp</sub></code>, with the MC68040, provides full support of the MC68882 instruction set. The <code>f<sub>psp</sub></code> module is only supported for the MC68040.</p>



### Note

While `fpu` is supported on the MC68040, Microware does not recommend its use. Instead, use the MC68040-specific `fpsp` module, as it provides increased speed, precision, and functionality.

## Installing Co-processor Emulation Modules

The modules `fpu` and `fpsp` are provided in the following files:

```
fpu  MWOS/OS9/CMDS/68000/BOOTOBSJS/fpu
fpsp MWOS/OS9/CMDS/68020/BOOTOBSJS/fpsp040
```

These modules are OS-9 extension modules and must be available during bootup.

To install either module, add the executable module to your bootfile for disk based systems or include it in ROM for diskless systems. You also need to add the name of the module (`fpu` or `fpsp`) to your system's `Init` module's extensions list.

During bootup, the kernel calls each extensions module listed in the `Init` module's extensions list. When the co-processor emulation module is called in this fashion, it installs its floating point exception handler on OS-9 and initializes the data structures necessary for floating point emulation. This is transparent to the user.

The following are the errors you may get from the emulation routines during installation:

`E$KwnMod`

An emulation module has already been installed (`fpu` and `fpsp`).

`E$BadId`

For OS-9 for 68K V3.0, `fpu` returns this error if it was invoked by a module other than the kernel's bootup routine.

`E$BadRev`

`fpu` returns this error if you make an attempt to install `fpu` on an incompatible OS-9 revision/hardware platform.

# Math Trap Handler

---

Microware's Version 3.2 compiler provided a means to access math functions from within the `math` shared trap library.

While OS-9 for 68K V3.0 and its utilities no longer require the `math` module, it is provided for backward compatibility with third party executables and relocatable libraries compiled with the V3.2 compiler. An attempt to run such code on a system without the `math` trap handler results in the error:

```
**** Can't install trap handler ****
**** math ****
Error #000:216
```

The `math` module is provided in two forms, depending on the availability of an MC68881/MC68882 co-processor in the target system. While both modules are named `math`, they are differentiated by the names of the files in which they are provided.

MWOS/OS9/68000/CMDS/math

provides software support for the routines in the `math` library. While this module is compatible on systems with or without floating point co-processors, Microware suggests you use the faster `math881` module on systems with co-processors.

MWOS/OS9/68020/CMDS/math881

provides a version of the `math` library routines that takes advantage of the MC68882 instruction set. While this is the preferred module for use on a system with a co-processor, a floating point exception occurs if used on a system with no co-processor. (Refer to [Floating Point Co-processor Emulation Modules](#) earlier in this chapter.)

To install either module, simply load it into memory.



---

**Note**

As the `math` module may be discontinued in a future release, Microware suggests you replace all such executable and relocatable code with code compiled with Ultra C.

---



---

# Chapter 7: OS-9 File System

---

This chapter explains OS-9's disk file organization, raw physical I/O on RBF devices, record locking, and file security. It includes the following topics:

- **Disk File Organization**
- **Raw Physical I/O on RBF Devices**
- **Record Locking**
- **File Security**



# Disk File Organization

---

RBF supports a tree-structured file system. The physical disk organization is designed for:

- Efficient use of disk space
- Resistance to accidental damage
- Fast file access

The system also has the advantage of relative simplicity.

## Basic Disk Organization

RBF supports logical sector sizes in integral binary multiples from 256 to 32768 bytes. If you use a disk system that cannot directly support the logical sector size (for example, 256 byte logical sectors on a 512-byte physical sector disk), the driver module must divide or combine sectors as required to simulate the required logical size.

Many disks are physically addressed by:

- Track number
- Surface number
- Sector number

To eliminate hardware dependencies, OS-9 uses a **logical sector number** (LSN) to identify each sector without regard to track and surface numbering.

The disk driver module or the disk controller is responsible for mapping logical sector numbers to track/surface/sector addresses. OS-9's file system uses LSNs from 0 to (n-1), where **n** is the total number of sectors on the drive.




---

## Note

All sector addresses covered in this section refer to LSNs.

---

The `format` utility initializes the file system on blank or recycled media by creating the track/surface/sector structure. `format` also tests the media for bad sectors and automatically excludes them from the file system.




---

## For More Information

Refer to *Utilities Reference* for information about using `format`.

---

Every OS-9 disk has the same basic structure:

### Identification Sector

located in logical sector zero (LSN 0). It contains a description of the physical and logical format of the storage volume (disk media).

### Allocation Map

usually beginning in logical sector one (LSN 1). This indicates which disk sectors are free for use in new or expanded files.

### Root Directory

begins immediately after the disk allocation map.

## Identification Sector

LSN zero always contains the identification sector (see [Table 7-1](#)). It describes the physical format of the disk, the size of the allocation map, and the location of the root directory. It also contains the volume name,

date and time of creation, and additional information. If the disk is a bootable system disk, it also has the starting LSN and size of the OS9Boot file.

**Table 7-1 Identification Sector Description**

Addr	Size	Name	Description
\$00	3	DD_TOT	Total number of sectors on media
\$03	1	DD_TKS	Track size in sectors
\$04	2	DD_MAP	Number of bytes in allocation map
\$06	2	DD_BIT	Number of sectors/bit (cluster size)
\$08	3	DD_DIR	LSN of root directory file descriptor
\$0B	2	DD_OWN	Owner ID
\$0D	1	DD_ATT	Attributes
\$0E	2	DD_DSK	Disk ID
\$10	1	DD_FMT	Disk Format; density/sides Bit 0: 0 = single side 1 = double side Bit 1: 0 = single density (FM) 1 = double density (MFM) Bit 2: 1 = double track (96 TPI/135 TPI) Bit 3: 1 = quad track density (192 TPI)

**Table 7-1 Identification Sector Description (continued)**

<b>Addr</b>	<b>Size</b>	<b>Name</b>	<b>Description</b>
\$11	2	DD_SPT	Sectors/track (two byte value DD_TKS)
\$13	2	DD_RES	Reserved for future use
\$15	3	DD_BT	System bootstrap LSN. 0 = no boot present
\$18	2	DD_BSZ	Size of system bootstrap
\$1A	5	DD_DAT	Creation date
\$1F	32	DD_NAM	Volume name
\$3F	32	DD_OPT	Path descriptor options
\$5F	1		Reserved
\$60	4	DD_SYNC	Media integrity code
\$64	4	DD_MapLSN	Bitmap starting sector number (0=LSN 1)
\$68	2	DD_LSNSize	Media logical sector size (0=256)
\$6A	2	DD_VersID	Sector 0 Version ID

## Allocation Map

The allocation map shows which sectors are:

- Allocated to files
- Free for future use

`DD_MapLSN` specifies the allocation map start address, which is usually 1. If this field is 0, assume an address of 1. The size of the map varies according to how many bits are needed. Each bit in the allocation map represents a cluster on the disk. If a bit is set, the cluster is considered to be in use, defective, or non-existent. `DD_MAP` (see [Table 7-1](#)) specifies the actual number of bytes used in the map.



---

## Note

The `DD_Bit` variable specifies the number of sectors per cluster. The number of sectors per cluster is always an integral power of two.

---

The `format` utility sets the size of the allocation map depending on the size and number of sectors per cluster. You can select the number of sectors per cluster on the command line when using `format`.

## Root Directory

The root directory file is the parent directory of all other files and directories on the disk. It is the directory accessed using the physical device name (such as `/d1`). Usually, it immediately follows the allocation map. The location of the root directory file descriptor is specified in `DD_DIR` (see [Table 7-1](#)).

## Basic File Structure

OS-9 uses a multiple-contiguous-segment type of file structure. Segments are physically contiguous sectors that store the file's data. If all the data cannot be stored in a single segment, additional segments are allocated to the file. This may occur if a file is expanded after creation or if a sufficient number of contiguous free sectors is not available.

The OS-9 segmentation method was designed to keep a file's data sectors in as close physical proximity as possible to minimize disk head movement. Frequently, files (especially small files) have only one segment. This results

in the fastest possible access time. Therefore, it is good practice to initialize the size of a file to the maximum expected size during or immediately after its creation. This allows OS-9 to optimize its storage allocation.

All files have a sector called a file descriptor sector, or FD. FD contains a list of the data segments with their starting LSNs and sizes. This is also where information such as file attributes, owner, and time of last modification is stored. Only the system uses this sector; you cannot directly access it. [Table 7-2](#) describes the contents of a file descriptor.



### Note

**Offset** refers to the location of a field, relative to the starting address of the file descriptor. Offsets are resolved in assembly code by using the names shown here and linking the module with the relocatable library: `sys.l` or `usr.l`.

**Table 7-2 File Descriptor Content Description**

Offset	Size	Name	Description
\$00	1	FD_ATT	File Attributes: D S PE PW PR E W R
\$01	2	FD_OWN	Owner's User ID.
\$03	5	FD_DAT	Date Last Modified: Y M D H M
\$08	1	FD_LNK	Link Count.
\$09	4	FD_SIZ	File Size (number of bytes).
\$0D	3	FD_CREAT	Date Created: Y M D
\$10	240	FD_SEG	Segment List: see below.

The attribute byte (`FD_ATT`) contains the file permission bits. Bit 7 is set to indicate a directory file, bit 6 indicates a non-sharable file, bit 5 indicates public execute, bit 4 indicates public write, and so forth.

The date last modified (`FD_DAT`) changes when a file is opened in write or update mode. This is useful for making date-dependent backups.

The segment list (`FD_SEG`) consists of a series of five-byte entries, continuing until the end of the logical sector. For 256-byte sectors, this results in 48 entries. These entries have the size and address of each block of storage used by the file in logical order. Each entry has a three-byte logical sector number specifying the beginning of the block and a two-byte block size (in sectors). Unused segments must be zero.

The RBF file manager maintains the file pointer and logical end-of-file used by application software and converts them to the logical disk sector number using the data in the segment list.




---

### Note

You do not have to be concerned with physical sectors. OS-9 provides fast random access to data stored anywhere in the file. All the information required to map the logical file pointer to a physical sector number is packaged in the file descriptor sector. This makes OS-9's record-locking functions very efficient.

---

## Segment Allocation

Each device descriptor module has a value called a ***segment allocation size***. It specifies the minimum number of sectors to allocate to a new segment. The goal is to avoid a large number of tiny segments when a file is expanded. If your system uses a small number of large files, you should set this field to a relatively high value, and vice versa.

When a file is created, it has no data segments allocated to it. Write operations past the current end-of-file (the first write is always past the end-of-file) cause allocation of additional sectors to the file. Subsequent expansions of the file are also generally made in minimum allocation increments.



---

**Note**

An attempt is made to expand the last segment before attempting to add a new segment.

---

If not all of the allocated sectors are used when the file is closed, the segment is truncated and any unused sectors are deallocated in the bitmap. This strategy does not work well for random-access databases that expand frequently by only a few records. The segment list is rapidly filled with small segments. A provision has been added to prevent this from being a problem.

If a file (opened in write or update mode) is closed when it is not at end-of-file, the last segment of the file is not truncated. To be effective, all programs dealing with the file in write or update mode must ensure they do not close the file while at end-of-file, or the file loses any excess space it may have. The easiest way to ensure this is to do a `seek(0)` before closing the file. This method was chosen because random access files are frequently somewhere other than end-of-file, and sequential files are almost always at end-of-file when closed.

## Directory File Format

Directory files have the same physical structure as other files with one exception: RBF must impose a convention for the logical contents of a directory file.

A directory file consists of an integral number of 32-byte entries. The end of the directory is indicated by the normal end-of-file. Each entry consists of a field for the file name and a field for the file's file descriptor address:

- The file name field (`DIR_NM`) is 28 bytes long (bytes 0-27) and has the sign bit of the last character of the file name set. The first byte is set to 0, indicating a deleted or unused entry.
- The file descriptor address field (`DIR_FD`) is three bytes long (bytes 29-31) and is the LSN of the file's FD sector. Byte 28 is not used and must be 0.

When a directory file is created, two entries are automatically created: the dot (.) and double dot (..) directory entries. These specify the directory and its parent directory, respectively.

## Raw Physical I/O on RBF Devices

---

You can open an entire disk as one logical file. This allows you to access any byte(s) or sector(s) by physical address without regard to the normal file system. This feature is provided for diagnostic and utility programs that must be able to read and write to ordinarily non-accessible disk sectors.

To open a device for physical I/O, append an at (@) character to the device name. For example, you can open the device /d2 for raw physical I/O under the pathlist /d2@.

Standard open, close, read, write, and seek system calls are used for physical I/O. A seek system call positions the file pointer to the actual disk physical address of any byte. To read a specific sector, perform a seek to the address computed by multiplying the LSN by the logical sector size of the media. You can find the logical sector size in the `PD_SctSiz` field of the path descriptor (if 0, assume a value of 256 bytes). For example, to read sector 3 on 1024-byte logical media, perform a seek to address 3072 ( $1024 * 3$ ), followed by a read system call requesting 1024 bytes.

If the number of sectors per track of the disk is known or read from the identification sector, any track/sector address can be readily converted to a byte address for physical I/O.



---

### WARNING

Use extreme care with the special @ file in update mode. To keep system overhead low, record locking routines only check for conflicts on paths opened for the same file. The @ file is considered different from any other file, and therefore only conforms to record lockouts with other users of the @ file.

---

Improper physical I/O operations can corrupt the file system. Take great care when writing to a raw device. Physical I/O calls also bypass the file security system. For this reason, only super-users are allowed to open the

raw device for write permit. Non-super-users can only read the identification sector (LSN 0) and the allocation bitmap. Attempts to read past this return an end-of-file error.

## Record Locking

---

Record locking refers to preserving the integrity of files that more than one user or process can access. OS-9 record locking is designed to be as invisible as possible to application programs.



### Note

Most programs may be written without special concern for multi-user activity.

---

Record locking involves:

- Recognizing when a process is trying to read a record that another process may be modifying
- Deferring the read request until the record is safe

This is referred to as ***conflict detection and prevention***. RBF record locking also handles non-sharable files and deadlock detection.

## Record Locking and Unlocking

Conflict detection must determine when a record is in the process of being updated. RBF provides true record locking on a byte basis. A typical record update sequence is:

```
OS9 I$Read /*program reads record RECORD IS LOCKED*/
.
. /*program updates record*/
.
OS9 I$Seek /*reposition to record*/
OS9 I$Write /*record is rewritten*/
/*RECORD IS RELEASED*/
```

When a file is opened in update mode, ***any*** read causes the record to be locked out because RBF does not know in advance if the record will be updated. The record remains locked until the next read, write, or close

occurs. Reading files opened in read or execute modes does not cause record locking to occur because records cannot be updated in these two modes.

A subtle but nasty problem exists for programs that interrogate a database and occasionally update its data. When a user looks up a particular record, the record could be locked out indefinitely if the program neglects to release it. The problem is characteristic of record locking systems; you can avoid it by careful programming.



---

### Note

Only one portion of a file may be locked out at a time. If an application requires more than one record to be locked out, multiple paths to the same file may be opened with each path having its own record locked out. RBF notices the same process owns both paths and keeps them from locking each other out. Alternatively, the entire file may be locked out, the records updated, and the file released.

---

## Non-Sharable Files

You may use file locking when an entire file is considered unsafe for use by more than one user. On rare occasions, you need to create a **non-sharable file**. A non-sharable file can never be accessed by more than one process at a time.

To make a file non-sharable, set the single user (*s*) bit in the file's attribute byte. You can set the *s* bit when you create the file, or later using the `attr` utility. If the single-user bit is set, only one process may open the file at a time. If another process attempts to open the file, error (#253) is returned.



An extremely useful side effect occurs when a program creates a file for sequential output. When the file is created, EOF lock is gained, and no other process can pass the writer in processing the file.

For example, if you redirect an assembly listing to a disk file, a spooler utility can open and begin listing the file before the assembler has written even the first line of output. Record locking always keeps the spooler one step behind the assembler, making the listing come out as desired.

## Deadlock Detection

A deadlock can occur when two processes attempt to gain control of the same two disk areas simultaneously. If each process gets one area (locking out the other process), both processes are stuck permanently, waiting for a segment that can never become free. This situation is a general problem that is not restricted to any particular record locking method or operating system.

If this occurs, a deadlock error (#254) is returned to the process that caused it to be detected. It is easy to create programs that, when executed concurrently, generate lots of deadlock errors. The easiest way to avoid them is to access records of shared files in the same sequences in all processes that may be run simultaneously. For example, always read the index file before the data file, never the other way around.

When a deadlock error does occur, it is not sufficient for a program to simply re-try the operation in error. If all processes used this strategy, none would ever succeed. At least one process must release its control over a requested segment for any to proceed.

## Record Locking Details for I/O Functions

The following lists record locking details for I/O functions:

**Table 7-3 Record Locking Details for I/O Functions**

<b>Function</b>	<b>Description</b>
Open/ Create	<p>The most important guideline to follow when opening files is: Do not open a file for update if you only intend to read. Files open for read only do not cause records to be locked out, and they generally help the system to run faster. If shared files are routinely opened for update on a multi-user system, you can become hopelessly record-locked for extended periods of time.</p> <p>Use the special @ file in update mode with extreme care. To keep system overhead low, record locking routines only check for conflicts on paths opened for the same file. The @ file is considered different from any other file, and therefore only conforms to record lockouts with other users of the @ file.</p>

**Table 7-3 Record Locking Details for I/O Functions (continued)**

Function	Description
Read/ ReadLine	<p>Read and ReadLine cause lock out of records only if the file is open in update mode. The locked out area includes all bytes starting with the current file pointer and extending for the number of bytes requested.</p> <p>For example, if you make a ReadLine call for 256 bytes, exactly 256 bytes are locked out, regardless of how many bytes are actually read before a carriage return is encountered. EOF lock occurs if the bytes requested include the current end-of-file.</p> <p>A record remains locked until any of the following occur:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Another read is performed</li> <li>• A write is performed</li> <li>• The file is closed</li> <li>• A record lock SetStat is issued</li> </ul> <p>Releasing a record does not normally release EOF lock. Any read or write of zero bytes releases any record lock, EOF lock, or file lock.</p>
Write/ WriteLine	<p>Write calls always release any record that is locked out. In addition, a write of zero bytes releases EOF lock and file lock. Writing usually does not lock out any portion of the file unless it occurs at end of file when it gains EOF lock.</p>
Seek	<p>Seek does not effect record locking.</p>

**Table 7-3 Record Locking Details for I/O Functions (continued)**

Function	Description
SetStat	<p>There are two SetStat codes to deal with record locking:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <code>SS_Lock</code> locks or releases part of a file</li><li>• <code>SS_Ticks</code> sets the length of time a program waits for a locked record</li></ul> <p>See the <code>I\$SetStt</code> entry in <b>Appendix D: OS-9 for 68K System Calls</b> for a description of the codes.</p>

# File Security

---

Each file has a group/user ID identifying the file's owner. These are copied from the current process descriptor when the file is created. Usually, a file's owner ID is not changed.

An attribute byte is also specified when a file is created. The file's attribute byte tells RBF in which modes the file may be accessed. Together with the file's owner ID, the attribute byte provides (some) file security.

The attribute byte has two sets of bits to indicate whether a file may be opened for read, write, or execute by the **owner** or the **public**. In this context, the file's owner is any user with the same group ID as the file's creator. Public means any user with a different group ID.

When a file is opened, access permissions are checked on all directories specified in the pathlist, as well as the file itself. If you do not have permission to read a directory, you may not read any files in that directory.

Any **super-user** (a user with group ID of zero) may access any file in the system. Files owned by the super-user cannot be accessed by users of any other group unless specific access permissions are set. Files containing modules owned by the super-user must also be owned by the super-user. If not, the modules contained within the file are not loaded.



---

## Note

The system manager should exercise caution when assigning group/user IDs. The RBF File Descriptor stores the group/user ID in a two byte field (`FD_OWN`). The group/user ID residing in the password file is permitted two bytes for the group ID and two bytes for the user ID. RBF only reads the low order byte of both the group and user ID. Consequently, a user with the ID of 256.512 is mistaken for the super user by RBF.

---

---

# Appendix A: Example Code

---

This appendix contains example code you can use as a guide when creating your own modules. It provides examples of RBF, SCF, SBF, and pipe device descriptors. It includes the following topics:

- **The Init Module**
- **The Sysgo Module**
- **Signals: Example Program**
- **Alarms: Example Program**
- **Events: Example Program**
- **Semaphores: Example Program**
- **C Trap Handler**
- **RBF Device Descriptor**
- **SCF Device Descriptor**
- **SBF Device Descriptor**
- **Pipe Device Descriptor**



# The Init Module

The following is an example of the Init module:

```

Microware OS-9/68020 Resident Macro Assembler V2.9  93/10/12  11:15  Page    1
  ../../../../SRC/SYSMODS/INIT/init.a
Init: OS-9 Configuration Module - LRCChip.d - Local Resource Controller definitions
00001          nam          Init: OS-9 Configuration Module
00002
00003 * Copyright 1983, 1984, 1985, 1986, 1987, 1988, 1989, 1990, 1991, 1992, 1993
00004 * by Microware Systems Corporation
00005 * Reproduced Under License
00006
00007 * This source code is the proprietary confidential property of
00008 * Microware Systems Corporation, and is provided to licensee
00009 * solely for documentation and educational purposes.  Reproduction,
00010 * publication, or distribution in any form to any party other than
00011 * the licensee is strictly prohibited.
00012
00078 *
00079 00000029 Edition      equ      41              current edition number
00080
00081 00000c00 Typ_Lang     set      (System<<8)+0
00082 00008000 Attr_Rev   set      (ReEnt<<8)+0
00083
00084                      psect    init,Typ_Lang,Attr_Rev,Edition,0,0
00085
00086 * Configuration constants (default; changable in "systype.d" file)
00087 *
00088 * Constants using VALUES (such as CPUType set 68020) may appear anywhere
00089 * in the "systype.d" file.
00090 * Constants using LABELS (such as Compat set ZapMem) MUST appear OUTSIDE
00091 * the CONFIG macro and must be conditionalized so they are
00092 * only invoked when this file (init.a) is being assembled.
00093 * If they are placed inside the CONFIG macro, then the over-ride does not
00094 * take effect.
00095 * If they are placed outside the macro and not conditionalized then
00096 * "illegal external reference" errors result when making other files.
00097 * The label _INITMOD provides the mechanism to ensure the desired
00098 * operations result.
00099 *
00100 * example systype.d setup:
00101 *
00102 * CONFIG macro
00103 *   <body of macro>
00104 *   endm
00105 *   Slice set 10
00106 *   ifdef _INITMOD
00107 *   Compat set ZapMem patternize memory
00108 *   endc
00109 *
00110 *
00111 * flag reading init module (so local labels can be over-ridden)

```

```

00112 00000001 _INITMOD equ 1 flag reading init module
00113
00114 000109a0 CPUType set 68000 cpu type (68008/68000/68010/etc..)
00115 00000001 Level set 1 OS-9 Level One
00116 00000003 Vers set 3 Version 3.0
00117 00000000 Revis set 0
00118 00000000 Edit set 0 Edition
00119 00000000 IP_ID set 0 interprocessor identification code
00120 00000000 Site set 0 installation site code
00121 00000040 MDirSz set 64 initial module directory count
00122 00000020 PollSz set 32 IRQ polling table size (fixed)
00123 00000020 DevCnt set 32 device table size (fixed)
00124 00000040 Procs set 64 init process table size (divisible by 64)
00125 00000040 Paths set 64 initial path table size (divisible by 64)
00126 00000002 Slice set 2 ticks per time slice
00127 00000080 SysPri set 128 initial system priority
00128 00000000 MinPty set 0 initial system minimum executable priority
00129 00000000 MaxAge set 0 initial system maximum natural age limit
00130 00000000 MaxMem set 0 top of RAM (unused)
00131 00000020 Events set 32 initial event table size
00132 00000000 Compat set 0 version smoothing byte
00133 00000000 Config set 0 system configuration default
00134 00000400 StackSz set 1024 IRQ Stack Size in bytes (must be 1k <=
StackSz < 256k)
00135 00000000 ColdRetrys set 0 number of retries for coldstart's "chd"
before failing
00136 * NOTE: for V3.0, NumSigs is unimplemented
00137 00000010 NumSigs set 16 default queued signal maximum
00138 000005dc PrcDescStack set 1500 default stack size in process descriptor
00139
00140
00141 * Compat flag bit definitions
00142 *
00143 * NOTE: SlowIRQ is obsolete for V3.0
00144 *
00145 *SlowIRQequ 1<<0xxxxxxx1 save all regs during IRQ processing
00146 00000002 NoStop equ 1<<1 xxxxxx1x don't use 'stop' instruction
00147 00000004 NoGhost equ 1<<2 xxxxxlxx don't retain Ghost/Sticky memory
modules
00148 00000008 NoBurst equ 1<<3 xxxxlxxx don't enable 68030 cache burst mode
00149 00000010 ZapMem equ 1<<4 xxxlxxxx wipe out memory that is
allocated/freed
00150 00000020 NoClock equ 1<<5 xxlxxxxx don't start system clock during
coldstart
00151 00000040 SpurIRQ equ 1<<6 x1xxxxxx ignore spurious IRQs
00152 00000080 PrivAlm equ 1<<7 lxxxxxxx only alarm creator (process) can
delete alarm.
00153
00154
00155 * Compat2 flag bit definitions
00156 * (these are reserved for cache control considerations)
00157 *
00158 00000001 ExtC_I equ 1<<0 xxxxxx1 external instruction cache is
coherent
00159 00000002 ExtC_D equ 1<<1 xxxxxx1x external data cache is coherent

```

```

00160 00000004 OnC_I      equ      1<<2  xxxxx1xx on-chip instruction cache is
coherent
00161 00000008 OnC_D      equ      1<<3  xxxxlxxx on-chip data cache is coherent
00162 00000010 CBank0_En equ      1<<4  xxxlxxxxx 68349: enable cache/sram bank 0 as
cache
00163 00000020 CBank1_En equ      1<<5  xxlxxxxxx 68349: enable cache/sram bank 1 as
cache
00164 00000040 CBank2_En equ      1<<6  xlxxxxxxx 68349: enable cache/sram bank 2 as
cache
00165 00000080 CBank3_En equ      1<<7  lxxxxxxx 68349: enable cache/sram bank 3 as
cache
00166
00167 * NOTE: DDIO is obsolete for V3.0
00168 *DDIOequ 1<<7lxxxxxxxx don't disable data caching when in I/O
00169
00170
00171 * Config flag bit definitions
00172 *
00173 * These definitions control various options for the system
00174 *
00175 00000001 NoTblExp    equ      1<<0  xxxxxxxx xxxxxxxx1 system table expansion
disabled
00176 * Note - CRCDIs is only applicable for "atomic" kernel.
00177 00000004 CRCDIs     equ      1<<2  xxxxxxxx xxxxx1xx disable CRC check for
F$VModul
00178 00000008 SysTSDis  equ      1<<3  xxxxxxxx xxxxlxxx disable system-state
time-slicing
00179
00180 * SSM_NoProt is only applicable for Development kernel: SSM  builds
00181 * a "full-system" page table for User-State at cold-start, all user
00182 * processes have access to all memory (ala ATOMIC kernel)
00184
00185 * SSM_SysPT is unimplemented for V3.0
00186 00000020 SSM_SysPT  equ      1<<5  xxxxxxxx xxlxxxxxx (SSM) sys-state page tables
00187
00188
00189 * SSM(MMU) Page Cache Mode definitions
00190 *
00191 * These definitions affect how the SSM(MMU) page tables are setup,
00192 * with respect to USER-state data cache modes.
00193 * Note the options available are dependant upon the caching
00194 * modes supported by the MPU/MMU in use.
00195 *
00196 00000004 CM_WrtProt  equ      1<<2  page is write-protected
00197 00000040 CM_CI      equ      1<<6  cache inhibit bit (68851/68030/68040)
00198 00000020 CM_NotSer  equ      1<<5  not-serialized access (for cache inhibited)
(68040)
00199 00000020 CM_CB      equ      1<<5  copy-back (for cache enabled) (68040)
00200
00201 00000004 WritProt   equ      CM_WrtProt   write-protected page (not usually
useful)
00202
00203 * 68040 definitions
00204 *

```

```

00205 00000000 WrtThru      equ      0          cache enabled, write-through (also
68020/030 cache enabled)
00206 00000020 CopyBack    equ      CM_CB      cache enabled, copy-back
00207 00000040 CISer       equ      CM_CI      cache inhibited, serialized access
00208 00000060 CINotSer    equ      CM_CI+CM_NotSer cache inhibited, not-serialized
access
00209
00210
00211                                use      defsfile (any above definitions may be overridden
in defsfile)
00001
00002                                use      <oskdefs.d>
00043
00004                                use      systype.d
00001                                opt      -1
00005
00212
00213 * Memory list definitions
00214         MemType      macro
00215                                dc.w      \1,\2,\3,\4>>4type, priority, access, search
block size
00216                                dc.l      \5,\6low, high limits (where it appears on local
address bus)
00217                                dc.w      \7,0offset to description string (zero if none),
reserved
00218                                dc.l      \8,0,0address translation adjustment (for DMA,
etc.), reserved
00219                                ifne     \#-8 must have exactly eight arguments
00220                                fail     wrong number of arguments to MemType macro
00221                                endc
00222                                endm
00223
00224 * Cache Mode Memory list definitions
00225 *
00226         CacheType    macro
00227                                dc.l      \1,\2 start and end address (+1) of region
00228                                dc.w      0          reserved
00229                                dc.w      \3          cache modes for region
00230                                dc.l      0          reserved
00231                                ifne     \#-3 must have exactly three arguments
00232                                fail     wrong number of arguments to CacheType macro
00233                                endc
00234                                endm
00235
00236 * Alignment macros (for optimization)
00237 *
00238         CPUALIGN      macro
00239                                ifeq     (CPUTyp-68040)
00240 * force LINE alignment
00241                                ifne     (*-ConfigBody)&15
00242                                rept     16-((*-ConfigBody)&15)
00243                                dc.b      0
00244                                endr
00245                                endc
00246                                else     others just need LONG-WORD

```

```

00247          ifne      (*-ConfigBody) &3
00248          rept      4-((*-ConfigBody)&3)
00249          dc.b       0
00250          endr
00251          endc
00252          endc      CPUType
00253          endm
00254
00255
00256 * Configuration module body
00257 *
00258 00000000 ConfigBody equ      *
00259 0000 0000          dc.l      MaxMem      (unused)
00260 0004 002c          dc.w      PollSz      IRQ polling table
00261 0006 0045          dc.w      DevCnt      device table size
00262 0008 0040          dc.w      Procs      initial number of processes
00263 000a 0040          dc.w      Paths      initial number off paths
00264 000c 00b1          dc.w      SysParam    parameter string for first executable
module
00265 000e 00ab          dc.w      SysStart    first executable module name offset
00266 0010 00b2          dc.w      SysDev      system default device name offset
00267 0012 00b6          dc.w      ConsolNm    standard I/O pathlist name offset
00268 0014 00c2          dc.w      Extens      Customization module name offset
00269 0016 00bc          dc.w      ClockNm    clock module name offset
00270 0018 0002          dc.w      Slice      number of ticks per time slice
00271 001a 0000          dc.w      IP_ID      interprocessor identification
00272 001c 0000          dc.l      Site      installation site code
00273 0020 009e          dc.w      MainFram    installation name offset
00274 0022 0001          dc.l      CPUType    specific 68000 family processor in
use
00275 0026 0103          dc.b      Level,Vers,Revis,Edit OS-9 Level
00276 002a 0090          dc.w      OS9Rev      OS-9 revision string offset
00277 002c 0080          dc.w      SysPri      initial system priority
00278 002e 0000          dc.w      MinPty      initial system minimum executable
priority
00279 0030 0000          dc.w      MaxAge      maximum system natural age limit
00280 0032 0064          dc.w      MDirSz      module directory count
00281 0034 0000          dc.w      0            reserved
00282 0036 0020          dc.w      Events      initial event table size (number of
entries)
00283 0038 10          dc.b      Compat      version change smooth byte
00284 0039 0f          dc.b      Compat2     cache control configuration
00285 003a 00f2          dc.w      MemList      memory definitions
00286 003c 0100          dc.w      StackSz/4    IRQ stack size (in longwords)
00287 003e 0000          dc.w      ColdRetrys   coldstart's "chd" retry count
00288 0040 0000          dc.w      0,0          reserved (MWKK)
00289 0044 0170          dc.w      CacheList   SSM(MMU) cache mode over-ride list
00290 0046 01a4          dc.w      IOMan      IOMan module name
00291 0048 01aa          dc.w      PreIO      "PreIO" module list (called before
IOMan/Extens modules)
00292 004a 0000          dc.w      Config      system configuration control
00293 004c 0010          dc.w      NumSigs     maximum number of queued signals
00294 004e 05dc          dc.w      PrcDescStack stack size in process descriptor
00295 0050 0000          dc.w      0,0,0,0,0,0,0 reserved
00296 0060 0000          dc.w      0,0,0,0,0,0,0 reserved

```

```

00297 0070 0000          dc.w      0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0 reserved
00298 0080 0000          dc.w      0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0 reserved
00299
00300
00301 * Configuration name strings
00302 *
00303 0090 4f53 OS9Rev      dc.b      "OS-9/68K V",Vers+'0',"",Revis+'0',0
00304
00305 * The remaining names are defined in the "systype.d" macro
00306 *
00307             CONFIG
00308
00309 * default Extension module name lists (these are usually defined in
00310 * the system's systype.d file).
00311 * The calling sequence for Extension modules is:
00312 *   1. PreIO module(s)
00313 *   2. IOMan module(s)
00314 *   3. Extens (aka P2) module(s)
00315 *
00319
00321 01a4 494f IOMan        dc.b      "IOMan",0          default IOMan module name
00323
00325 01aa 4f53 PreIO        dc.b      "OS9PreIO",0        default "PreIO" module list
00326 * (these modules are called BEFORE the IOMan and Extens lists)
00328
00332
00336
00337 * define default caching modes (CPUType and system specific)
00338 * NOTE: the following rules should be applied in determining
00339 * the "coherency" of a cache and setting up the Compat2
00340 * cache function flags:
00341 *
00342 *   - if the cache does not exists, then it is always coherent.
00343 *   - the on-chip cache coherency is not changable, except
00344 *     for the 68040. If a 68040 system is used with
00345 *     bus-snooping disabled, then that fact should be registered
00346 *     by the user defining the label NoSnoop040 in their local
00347 *     "systype.d" file.
00348 *   - the coherency of external caches is indicated by the
00349 *     SnoopExt definition. If the external caches are
00350 *     coherent or non-existent, then the label SnoopExt
00351 *     should be defined in "systype.d".
00352 *   - the kernel disables data caching when calling a file
00353 *     manager, unless the "NoDataDis" label is defined.
00354 *     Disabling data caching is required for systems possessing
00355 *     drivers using dma and don't perform any explicit data
00356 *     cache flushing. If your system does NOT use dma drivers,
00357 *     or the drivers care for the cache, then the NoDataDis
00358 *     label should be defined in "systype.d".
00359 *
00361
00364 * external caches are coherent or absent
00365 00000003 ExtCache      equ      ExtC_I!ExtC_D
00370

```

```
00375 0000000f Compat2 set ExtCache!OnC_I!OnC_D 68040 on-chip caches are
snoopy
00394
00396
00397 000001b4 ends
```

# The Sysgo Module

The following is an example of the Sysgo module:

```

Microware OS-9/68000 Resident Macro Assembler V1.6  86/11/04  Page 1  sysgo.a
Sysgo - OS-9/68000 Initial (startup) module
00001          nam      Sysgo
00002          ttl      OS-9/68000      Initial (startup) module
00003
00015 00000004 Edition  equ      4          current edition number
00016
00017 00000101 Typ_Lang set      (Prgrm<<8)+Objct
00018 00000000 Attr_Rev set      0          (non-re- entrant)
00019          psect    sysgo,Typ_Lang,Attr_Rev,Edition,128,Entry
00020
00021          use      defsfile
00022
00023          vssect
00024 00000000          ds.b  255          stack space
00025 00000000          ends
00026
00027 0000=4e40 Intercpt os9      F$RTE          return from intercept
00028
00029 0004 41fa Entry   lea      Intercpt(pc),a0
00030 0008=4e40          os9      F$Icpt
00031 000c 41fa          lea      CmdStr(pc),a0  default execution dir ptr
00032 0010 7004          moveq   #Exec_,d0      execution mode
00033 0012=4e40          os9      I$ChgDir      chg exec dir (ignore errs)
00034 0016 640c          bcc.s   Entry10      continue if no error
00035 0018 7001          moveq   #1,d0        std output path
00036 001a 721a          moveq   #ChdErrSz,d1  size
00037 001c 41fa          lea      ChdErrMs(pc),a0 "Help, I can't find CMDS"
00038 0020=4e40          os9      I$WritLn      output error message
00039
00040 * Process startup file
00041 0024 7000 Entry10  moveq   #0,d0        std input path
00042 0026=4e40          os9      I$Dup          clone it
00043 002a 3e00          move.w  d0,d7        save cloned path number
00044 002c 7000          moveq   #0,d0        std input path
00045 002e=4e40          os9      I$Close
00046 0032 303c          move.w  #Read_,d0
00047 0036 41fa          lea      Startup(pcr),a0 "startup" pathlist
00048 003a=4e40          os9      I$Open        open startup file
00049 003e 640e          bcc.s   Entry15      continue if no error
00050 0040 7001          moveq   #1,d0        std output path
00051 0042 7220          moveq   #StarErSz,d1  size of startup error msg
00052 0044 41fa          lea      StarErMs(pc),a0 "Can't find 'startup'"
00053 0048=4e40          os9      I$WritLn      output error message
00054 004c 6032          bra.s   Entry25
00055
00056 004e 7000 Entry15  moveq   #0,d0        any type module
00057 0050 7200          moveq   #0,d1        no add'l default mem size
00058 0052 7406          moveq   #StartPSz,d2  sz of startup shell params

```

```

00059 0054 7603          moveq    #3,d3          copy three std I/O paths
00060 0056 7800          moveq    #0,d4          same priority
00061 0058 41fa          lea     ShellStr(pcr),a0 shell name
00062 005c 43fa          lea     StartPrm(pcr),a1 initial parameters
00063 0060=4e40          os9     F$Fork          fork shell
00064 0064 6410          bcc.s   Entry20         continue if no error
00065 0066 7001          moveq    #1,d0          std output path
00066 0068 7219          moveq    #FrkErrSz,d1  size
00067 006a 41fa          lea     FrkErrMs(pc),a0 "oh no, can't fork Shell"
00068 006e=4e40          os9     I$WritLn        output error message
00069 0072=4e40          os9     F$SysDbg        crash system
00070
00071 0076=4e40 Entry20  os9     F$Wait          wait for death,ignore error
00072 007a 7000          moveq    #0,d0          std input path
00073 007c=4e40          os9     I$Close         close redirected "startup"
00074 0080 3007 Entry25  move.w   d7,d0
00075 0082=4e40          os9     I$Dup           restore original std input
00076 0086 3007          move.w   d7,d0
00077 0088=4e40          os9     I$Close         remove cloned path
00078
00079 008c 7000 Loop      moveq    #0,d0          any type module
00080 008e 7200          moveq    #0,d1          default memory size
00081 0090 7401          moveq    #1,d2          one parameter byte (CR)
00082 0092 7603          moveq    #3,d3          copy std I/O paths
00083 0094 7800          moveq    #0,d4          same priority
00084 0096 41fa          lea     ShellStr(pcr),a0 shell name
00085 009a 43fa          lea     CRChar(pcr),a1 null paramter string
00086 009e=4e40          os9     F$Fork          fork shell
00087 00a2 650a          bcs.s   ForkErr        abort if error
00088 00a4=4e40          os9     F$Wait          wait for it to die
00089 00a8 6504          bcs.s   ForkErr
00090 00aa 4a41          tst.w   dl              zero status?
00091 00ac 67de          beq.s   Loop           loop if so
00092 00ae=4e40 ForkErr  os9     F$PErr          print error message
00093 00b2 60d8          bra.s   Loop
00094
00095 00b4 7368 ShellStr dc.b     "shell",0
00096 00ba=5379 FrkErrMs dc.b     "Sysgo can't fork 'shell'",C$CR
00097 00000019 FrkErrSz equ     *-FrkErrMs
00098
00099 00d3 434d CmdStr   dc.b     "CMDS",0
00100 00d8=5379 ChdErrMs dc.b     "Sysgo can't chx to 'CMDS'",C$CR
00101 0000001a ChdErrSz equ     *-ChdErrMs
00102
00103 00f2 7374 Startup  dc.b     "startup",0
00104 00fa=5379 StarErrMs dc.b     "Sysgo can't open 'startup' file",C$CR
00105 00000020 StarErSz equ     *-StarErrMs
00106
00107 011a 2d6e StartPrm dc.b     "-npxt"
00108 011f= 00 CRChar   dc.b     C$CR
00109 00000006 StartPSz equ     *-StartPrm
00110 00000120          ends

```

## Signals: Example Program

---

The following program demonstrates a subroutine reading a `\n` terminated string from a terminal with a ten second timeout between the characters. This program is designed to illustrate signal usage; it does not contain any error checking.

The `_ss_ssig(path, value)` library call notifies that operating system to send the calling process a signal with signal code value when data is available on `path`. If data is already pending, a signal is sent immediately. Otherwise, control returns to the calling program and the signal is sent when data arrives.

```
#include <stdio.h>
#include <errno.h>

#define TRUE 1
#define FALSE 0

#define GOT_CHAR 2001
short dataready;      /* flag to show signal was received */

/* sighand - signal handling routine for this process */
sighand(signal)
register int signal;
{
    switch(signal) {
        /* ^E or ^C? */
        case 2:
        case 3:
            _errmsg(0,"termination signal received\n");
            exit(signal);
        /* Signal we're looking for? */
        case GOT_CHAR:
            dataready = TRUE;
            break;
        /* Anything else? */
        default:
            _errmsg(0,"unknown signal received ==> %d\n",signal);
            exit(1);
    }
}

main()
{
    char buffer[256];          /* buffer for typed-in string */

    intercept(sighand);      /* set up signal handler */

    printf("Enter a string:\n"); /* prompt user */
}
```

```

/* call timed_read, returns TRUE if no timeout, -1 if timeout */
if (timed_read(buffer) == TRUE)
    printf("Entered string = %s\n",buffer);
else
    printf("\nType faster next time!\n");
}

int timed_read(buffer)
register char *buffer;
{
    char c = '\0';          /* 1 character buffer for read */
    short timeout = FALSE; /* flag to note timeout occurred on read */
    int pos = 0;           /* position holder in buffer */

    /* loop until <return> entered or timeout occurs */
    while ( (c != '\n') && (timeout == FALSE) ) {
        sigmask(1);        /* mask signals for signal setup */
        _ss_ssig(0,GOT_CHAR); /* set up to have signal sent */
        sleep(10);        /* sleep for 10 seconds or until signal */

/* NOTE: we had to mask signals before doing _ss_ssig() so we did not get the
signal between the time we _ss_ssig()'ed and went to sleep. */

        /* Now we're awake, determine what happened */
        if (!dataready)
            timeout = TRUE;
        else {
            read(0,&c,1);    /* read the ready byte */
            buffer[pos] = c; /* put it in the buffer */
            pos++;          /* move our position holder */
            dataready = FALSE; /* mark data as read */
        }
    }
    /* loop has terminated, figure out why */
    if (timeout)
        return -1;          /* there was a timeout so return -1 */
    else {
        buffer[pos] = '\0'; /* null terminate the string */
        return TRUE;
    }
}

#asm
* C binding for sigmask(value)
sigmask: move.l d1,-(sp)      save d1 on the stack
        move.l d0,d1        get the passed parameter in the right place
        clr.l d0           make d0 = 0
        os9 F$SigMask      make the system call to mask signals
        bcc.s ret          if no error...
        move.l #-1,d0       return -1 to user
        move.l d1,errno(a6) fill errno with error number
        ret move.l (sp)+,d1 restore d1 from the stack
        rts               return to user
#endasm

```

## Alarms: Example Program

---

Compile the following example program with this command:

```
$ cc deton.c
```

The complete source code for the example program is as follows:

```
/*-----|
|         Psect Name:deton.c         |
|         Function: demonstrate alarm to time out user input |
|-----*/
@_sysedit: equ 1

#include <stdio.h>
#include <errno.h>

#define TIME(secs) ((secs << 8) | 0x80000000)
#define PASSWORD "Ripley"

/*-----*/
sighand(sigcode)
{
    /* just ignore the signal */
}

/*-----*/
main(argc,argv)
int    argc;
char   **argv;
{
    register int    secs = 0;
    register int    alarm_id;
    register char   *p;
    register char   name[80];

    intercept(sighand);
    while (--argc)
        if (*(p = *(++argv)) == '-') {
            if (*(++p) == '?')
                printuse();
            else exit(_errmsg(1, "error: unknown option - '%c'\n", *p));
        } else if (secs == 0)
            secs = atoi(p);
            else exit(_errmsg(1, "unknown arg - \"%s\"\n", p));

    secs = secs ? secs : 3;
    printf("You have %d seconds to terminate self-destruct...\n", secs);

    /* set alarm to time out user input */
    if ((alarm_id = alm_set(2, TIME(secs))) == -1)
```

```

        exit(_errmsg(errno, "can't set alarm - "));

    if (gets(name) != 0)
        alm_delete(alarm_id);    /* remove the alarm; it didn't expire */
    else printf("\n");

    if (_cmpnam(name, PASSWORD, 6) == 0)
        printf("Have a nice day, %s.\n", PASSWORD);
    else printf("ka BOOM\n");

    exit(0);
}

/*-----*/
/* printuse() - print help text to standard error */
printuse()
{
    fprintf(stderr, "syntax: %s [seconds]\n", _prgname());
    fprintf(stderr, "function: demonstrate use of alarm to time out I/O\n");
    fprintf(stderr, "options: none\n");
    exit(0);
}

```

## Events: Example Program

---

The following program uses a binary semaphore to illustrate the use of events. To execute this example:

- 
- Step 1. Type the code into a file called `sema1.c`.
  - Step 2. Copy `sema1.c` to `sema2.c`.
  - Step 3. Compile both programs.
  - Step 4. Run both programs with this command: `sema1 & sema2`.
- 

The program creates an event with an initial value of 1 (free), a wait increment of -1, and a signal increment of 1. Then, the program enters a loop that waits on the event, prints a message, sleeps, and signals the event. After ten times through the loop, the program unlinks itself from the event and deletes the event from the system.

```
#include <stdio.h>
#include <events.h>
#include <errno.h>

char *ev_name = "semaevent";    /* name of event to be used */
int ev_id;    /* id used to access event */

main()
{
    int count = 0; /* loop counter */

    /* create or link to the event */
    if ((ev_id = _ev_link(ev_name)) == -1)
        if ((ev_id = _ev_creat(1,-1,1,ev_name)) == -1)
            exit(_errmsg(errno,"error getting access to event - "));

    while (count++ < 10) {
        /* wait on the event */
        if (_ev_wait(ev_id, 1, 1) == -1)
            exit(_errmsg(errno,"error waiting on the event - "));

        _errmsg(0,"entering \"critical section\"\n");

        /* simulate doing something useful */
        sleep(2);
    }
}
```

```
    _errmsg(0,"exiting \"critical section\"\n");

    /* signal event (leaving critical section) */
    if (_ev_signal(ev_id, 0) == -1)
        exit(_errmsg(errno,"error signalling the event - "));

    /* simulate doing something other than critical section */
    sleep(1);
}
/* unlink from event */
if (_ev_unlink(ev_id) == -1)
    exit(_errmsg(errno,"error unlinking from event - "));

/* delete event from system if this was the last process to unlink from it */
if (_ev_delete(ev_name) == -1 && errno != E_EVBUSY)
    exit(_errmsg(errno,"error deleting event from system - "));

_errmsg(0,"terminating normally\n");
}
```

## Semaphores: Example Program

The following example shows how to use semaphores.

```

#ifndef _SEMAPHORE_H
#include <semaphore.h>
#endif
#ifndef _MODULE_H
#include <module.h>
#endif
register Semaphore sema;
Semaphore locate_semaphore();
/* link/create the semaphore */
sema = locate_semaphore();
while (1) {
    /* perform semaphore "P" operation (reserve the semaphore) */
    if ((err = _os_sema_p(sema)) != SUCCESS)
        exit(_errmsg(err, "could not perform P operation - "));
    /* Enter critical section */
    /* perform semaphore "V" operation (release semaphore) */
    if ((err = _os_sema_v(sema)) != SUCCESS)
        exit(_errmsg(err, "could not perform V operation - "));
}
/* terminate usage of the semaphore */
_os_sema_term(sema);
}
#define ATTR_REV 0x8001 /* semaphore data-module's attribute revision value */
/* locate_semaphore - link or create semaphore module (initialize it). */
Semaphore locate_semaphore()
{
    register Semaphore sema;
    register mh_com *semamod;
    static char *semaname = "semaphore";
    mh_com *modlink();
    mh_com *mkdata_module();
    /* attempt to link to the semaphore */
    if ((semamod = modlink(semaname, MT_DATA)) == ((mh_com*)-1)) {
        /* semaphore module did not exist so create it */
        if ((semamod = _mkdata_module("semaphore", sizeof semaphore, ATTR_REV,
            MP_OWNER_READ|MP_OWNER_WRITE)) == ((mh_com*)-1))
            exit(_errmsg(errno, "can't create the semaphore - "));
        /* get the address of the semaphore data structure */
        sema = (Semaphore)((char*)semamod + semamod->m_exec);
        /* initialize the semaphore prior to usage the first time */
        _os_sema_init(sema);
    } else {
        /* the semaphore module already exists */
        /* get the address of the semaphore data structure */
        sema = (Semaphore)((char*)semamod + semamod->m_exec);
    }
    return sema;
}

```

The following example shows how to use semaphores from assembly language.

```
* Semaphore
lea.l Semaphore(a1),a0
move.l a0,d0 semaphore address
bsr _os_sema_init
move.l a0,d0 semaphore address
bsr _os_sema_p
move.l a0,d0 semaphore address
bsr _os_sema_v
move.l a1,d0 semaphore address
bsr _os_sema_term
```



---

## Note

Refer to the *Using Ultra C* manual for information about the `os_sema_XXX` call's operation and syntax.

---

## C Trap Handler

Use the following makefile to make the example C trap handler and test programs:

```
# makefile - Used to make the example C trap handler and test program.

CFLAGS = -sqqixt=/dd
RDIR   = RELS
TRAP   = ctrap
TEST   = traptst

# Dependencies for making the entire example.

ctrap.example: $(TRAP) $(TEST)
    touch ctrap.example

# Dependencies for making the ctrap trap handler.

$(TRAP): tstart.r $(TRAP).r
    chd $(RDIR);\
    168 tstart.r $(TRAP).r -l=/dd/lib/cio.1 -l=/dd/lib/clib.1 -l=/dd/lib/sys.1\
        -o=$(TRAP) -g

# Dependencies for making the traptst test program.

$(TEST): $(TEST).r

$(TEST).r: $(TEST).c
    cc -gim=2k $(TEST).c -r=$(RDIR)
```

The complete source for the C trap handler startup routines (`tstart.a`) is as follows:

```
*****
*
* tstart.a - C trap handler startup routines.
*
        nam      tstart C trap handler interface
        use      /dd/defs/oskdefs.d

*SYSTRAP    equ      1          define if trap should execute in system state

MaxParams   equ      20        maximum number of "C" style parameters allowed

        ifdef    SYSTRAP
AttrRevs    set      (ReEnt+SupStat)<<8  (system state)
        else
AttrRevs    set      (ReEnt)<<8          (user state)
        endc
```

```
TypeLang      set      (TrapLib<<8)+Objct
              psect   traphand,TypeLang,AttrRevs,0,0,TrapEnt
              dc.l    TrapInit
              dc.l    TrapTerm
```

```
*****
```

```
* Subroutine TrapInit
```

```
*   Trap handler initialization entry point
```

```
*
```

```
* Passed: d0.w = User Trap number (1-15)
          d1.l = (optional) additional static storage
          d2-d7 = caller's registers at time of trap
          (a0) = trap handler module name pointer
          (a1) = trap handler execution entry point
          (a2) = trap module pointer
          a3-a5 = caller's registers at time of trap
          (a6) = trap handler static storage pointer
          (a7) = trap init stack frame pointer
*
* Returns: d0.l = "C" trapinit return value
          (a0) = updated trap handler name pointer
          (a1) = trap handler execution entry point
          (a2) = trap module pointer
          cc = carry set, d1.w = error code if error
          Other values returned are dependent on the trap handler
*
```

```
* The user stack looks like this:
```

```
*
*      .------.
*      +8 | caller's return PC |
*      |-----+-----|
*      +4 | 0000 | 0000 |
*      |-----|-----|
*      | caller's a6 register |
*      (usp)-> -----
```

```
* NOTE: In system state, (a7)=system stack pointer. This has a reasonable
* amount of stack space (~1K). No assumptions about where it is
* should be made.
```

```
TrapInit:   bra      TrapEnt      call "C" trap handler (with func. code zero)
```

```
*****
```

```
* Subroutine TrapEnt
```

```
*   User Trap entry point
```

```
*
```

```
* Passed: d0-d7 = caller's registers
          a0-a5 = caller's registers
          (a6) = trap handler static storage pointer
          (a7) = trap entry stack frame pointer
          usp = undisturbed user stack (in system state)
*
```

```
* Returns: cc = carry set, d1.w=error code if error
          Other values returned are dependent on the trap handler
*
```

```
* The system stack looks like this:
```

```

*          .------.
*          | caller's return PC |
*          |-----+-----|
*          | vector # |
*          |-----+-----|
*          | func code |
*          |-----+-----|
*          | caller's (a6) register |
* (a7) -> -----

          org      0          stack offset definitions
S_CParams do.l      MaxParams
S_a0      do.l      1          caller's a0 reg
S_a1      do.l      1          caller's a1 reg
S_a6      do.l      1          caller's a6 reg
S_func    do.w      1          trap function code
S_vect    do.w      1          user trap exception offset
S_cleanup equ      .
S_pc      do.l      1          return pc

TrapEnt:  movem.l  a0-a1, -(a7)      save regs
          lea     -MaxParams*4(a7), a7  allocate parameter space
          lea     S_CParams(a7), a1    ptr to C parameter area

          ifdef   SYSTRAP
          move    usp, a0            caller's parameters are on user stack ptr
          adda.l  #12, a0            above two rts pc's
          else
          lea     S_pc+16(a7), a0    caller's remaining C parameters ptr
          endc

          moveq   #MaxParams-1, d1   number of (potential) parameters
Trap10    move.l  (a0)+, (a1)+       copy caller's params from user stack
          dbra   d1, Trap10
          moveq  #0, d0              sweep reg
          move.w S_func(a7), d0      1st param = func
          move.l S_a6(a7), d1        2nd param = caller's (a6)
          bsr    ctrap               execute C traphandler
Trap90    movea.l S_a6(a7), a6       restore caller's a6
          lea    S_cleanup(a7), a7   discard scratch
          rts                          return to user program

*****
* Subroutine TrapTerm
* Terminate trap handler servicing.
*
* As of this release (OS-9 V2.3) the trap termination entry point
* is never called by the OS-9 kernel. Documentation details will
* be available when a working implementation exists.

TrapTerm: move.w  #1<<8+199, d1     never called; so if it gets here...
          OS9    F$Exit              crash program (Error 001:199)

          ends

```

The complete source for the example C trap handler library (ctrapp.c) is as follows:

```

/*****
 *
 * ctrapp.c - Example C trap handler library.
 *
 * ctrapp(func, a6, p1, p2, ...)
 */

int ctrapp(func, a6, p1, p2, p3, p4)
register int func;          /* trap function code */
char *a6;                  /* caller's static storage base */
unsigned int p1, p2, p3, p4; /* caller's parameters */
{
    register int result;

    switch(func)
    {
        case 0 :    result = 0;          break; /* tlink call */
        case '+' :  result = p1 + p2;    break;
        case '-' :  result = p1 - p2;    break;
        case '*' :  result = p1 * p2;    break;
        case '/' :  result = p1 / p2;    break;
        case '&' :  result = p1 & p2;    break;
        case '|' :  result = p1 | p2;    break;
        case '^' :  result = p1 ^ p2;    break;
        case '>' :  result = p1 >> p2;   break;
        case '<' :  result = p1 << p2;   break;
        default :  result = -1;          break;
    }
    return (result);
}

```

The complete source for traptst.c, which calls the ctrapp handler, is as follows:

```

/*****
 *
 * traptst.c - Calls the "ctrapp" trap handler.
 *
 */

main()
{
    int i, n;
    int x = 22;
    int y = 5;
    int trapnum = 6;
    char *operator = "+-*/&|^<>?";

    printf("tlink: %d\n", tlink(trapnum, "ctrapp"));

    n = strlen (operator);
}

```

```

    for (i = 0; i < n; ++i)
        printf("tcall(%d %c %d) = %d\n", x, operator[i], y,
            tcall(trapnum, operator[i], x, y));
}

/* bindings for tlink, tcall */
/*****
/* tlink(trapnum, trapname) - link to trap handler          */
/* int trapnum;          user trap number (1-15)          */
/* char *trapname;      name of trap module (NULL to unlink) */

#asm
tlink:    link    a5,#0
          movem.l a0-a2,-(a7)    save regs
          movea.l d1,a0          copy ptr to trap handler name
          moveq   #0,d1          no memory override
          OS9     F$TLink        link to trap handler
          bcc.s   tlink99        exit if no error
          move.l  d1,errno(a6)    save error number for caller
          moveq   #-1,d0          return error status
tlink99   movem.l (a7)+,a0-a2    restore regs
          unlk   a5
          rts

#endasm

/*****
/* tcall(trapnum, func, param1, param2, ...) - call trap handler */
/* int trapnum;          user trap number (1-15)          */
/* short func;          trap function number              */
/* other parameters may be ints or pointers              */

#asm
TRAP      equ    $4e40          user trap(0) opcode
RTS       equ    $4e75          rts opcode

          vsect
trapinst  ds.w   2
rtsinst   ds.w   1
          ends

tcall:    link    a5,#0
          tst.l   d0              valid trap number?
          beq.s   paramerr        abort if not
          cmp.l   #15,d0          valid trap number?
          bhi.s   paramerr
          add.w   #TRAP,d0
          movem.w d0-d1,trapinst(a6) build usr trap instruction
          move.w  #RTS,rtsinst(a6) set rts instruction
          moveq.l #0,d0           flush instruction cache
          OS9     F$CCT1          ignore error
          jsr    trapinst(a6)     execute trap call
          bcc.s   tcall99        exit if no error
          move.l  d1,errno(a6)    save error number
          bra.s   tcallerr        abort

```

```
paramerr    move.l    #E$Param,errno(a6)
tcallerr    moveq     #-1,d0
tcall99
            unlk     a5
            rts
#endasm
```

# RBF Device Descriptor

```

Microware OS-9/68020 Resident Macro Assembler V2.9  93/10/15  12:25  Page    1
  .././././SRC/IO/RBF/DESC/d0.a
D0 Device Descriptor - Device Descriptor for Floppy disk controller
00001          nam      D0 Device Descriptor
00002          use      defsfile
00001
00002          use      <oskdefs.d>
00001          opt      -l
00004          use      systype.d
00001 * System Definitions for MVME147 System
00002 *
00003          opt      -l
00005
00006
00003
00004          use      "rbfdesc.a"
00001
00002          ttl      Device Descriptor for Floppy disk controller
00003
00004 * Copyright 1984, 1985, 1986, 1987, 1988, 1989, 1990, 1992, 1993
00005 * by Microware Systems Corporation.
00006 * Reproduced Under License.
00007
00008 * This source code is the proprietary confidential property of
00009 * Microware Systems Corporation, and is provided to licensee
00010 * solely for documentation and educational purposes. Reproduction,
00011 * publication, or distribution in any form to any party other
00012 * than the licensee is prohibited.
00050 00000011 Edition      equ      17          current edition number
00051
00052 * PD_DNS values
00053 00000000 Single      equ      0          FM encoded media
00054 00000001 Double      equ      1          MFM encoded media/double-track
density
00055 00000002 Quad      equ      1<<1      Quad track density
00056 00000004 Octal      equ      1<<2      Octal track density
00057
00058 * PD_TYP values
00059 * Note: For pre-V2.4 Five/Eight defines the disk size, rotational
00060 * speed and data transfer rate. From V2.4 the physical size
00061 * is defined in bits 4 - 1, and PD_Rate defines the rotational
00062 * speed and data transfer rate.
00063
00064 * floppy disk definitions
00065 00000000 Five      equ      0<<0      drive is 5 1/4"
00066 00000001 Eight      equ      1<<0      drive is 8"
00067 00000000 SizeOld      equ      0<<1      size/speed defined by bit 0 value
(pre-V2.4)
00068 00000002 Size8      equ      1<<1      physical size is 8"
00069 00000004 Size5      equ      2<<1      physical size is 5 1/4"
00070 00000006 Size3      equ      3<<1      physical size is 3 1/2"

```

```

00071
00072 * hard disk definitions
00073 00000040 HRemov      equ      1<<6          hard disk is removable
00074 00000080 Hard       equ      1<<7          hard disk media
00075
00076 * PD_Rate values
00077 * Note: V2.4 drivers should derive the disk data transfer rate and
00078 *         rotational speed from this field if PD_TYP, bits 4 - 1 are
00079 *         non-zero.  If not, then PD_TYP, bit 0 infers these.
00080 00000000 rpm300      equ      0          rotational speed is 300 rpm
00081 00000001 rpm360      equ      1          rotational speed is 360 rpm
00082 00000002 rpm600      equ      2          rotational speed is 600 rpm
00083 00000000 xfr125K     equ      0<<4          transfer rate is 125K bits/sec
00084 00000010 xfr250K     equ      1<<4          transfer rate is 250K bits/sec
00085 00000020 xfr300K     equ      2<<4          transfer rate is 300K bits/sec
00086 00000030 xfr500K     equ      3<<4          transfer rate is 500K bits/sec
00087 00000040 xfr1M       equ      4<<4          transfer rate is 1M bits/sec
00088 00000050 xfr2M       equ      5<<4          transfer rate is 2M bits/sec
00089 00000060 xfr5M       equ      6<<4          transfer rate is 5M bits/sec
00090
00091 * PD_VFY values
00092 00000001 ON          equ      1          "no-verify" ON
00093 00000000 OFF        equ      0          "no-verify" OFF (i.e. verify is ON!)
00094
00095 * macro parameter #6 definitions (drive type)
00096
00097 00000001 d877        equ      1          single density 8"
00098 00000004 dd877      equ      4          double density 8"
00099 00000002 d540       equ      2          single density 5 1/4" 40 trk
00100 00000005 dd540     equ      5          double density 5 1/4" 40 trk
00101 00000003 d580     equ      3          single density 5 1/4" 80 trk
00102 00000006 dd580     equ      6          double density 5 1/4" 80 trk
00103 00000007 ramdisk   equ      7          volatile ram disk
00104 00000008 nvramdisk equ      8          non-volatile ram disk
00105 00000009 uv580     equ      9          universal 5 1/4" 80 track
00106 0000000a autosize  equ     10          autosize device (SS_DSize tells media
size)
00107 0000000b dd380     equ      11          double density 3 1/2", 80 trk
00108 0000000c uv380     equ      12          universal 3 1/2" 80 track
00109 0000000d hd580     equ      13          double density 5 1/4" 80 track '8"
image'
00110 0000000e ed380     equ      14          double density 3 1/2" 80 track, 4M
byte unformatted
00111 0000000f hd577     equ      15          double density 5 1/4" 77 track '8"
image'
00112 00000010 uv577     equ      16          universal 5 1/4" '8" image'
00113 00000011 uv877     equ      17          universal 8"
00114 00000012 hd380     equ      18          double density 3 1/2" 80 track, 2M
(UF)/ 1.4M (F)
00115
00116 00000003 Density    set      BitDns+(TrkDns<<1)
00117 00000026 DiskType  set      DiskKind+(DnsTrk0<<5)
00118
00119 00000f00 TypeLang   set      (Devic<<8)+0
00120 00008000 Attr_Rev  set      (ReEnt<<8)+0

```

```

00121
00122                psect      RBFDesc,TypeLang,Attr_Rev,Edition,0,0
00123
00124 0000 fffe      dc.l      Port          port address
00125 0004 45       dc.b      Vector        auto-vector trap assignment
00126 0005 04       dc.b      IRQLevel      IRQ hardware interrupt level
00127 0006 05       dc.b      Priority      irq polling priority
00128 0007 b7       dc.b      Mode          device mode capabilities
00129 0008 0048     dc.w      FileMgr       file manager name offset
00130 000a 004c     dc.w      DevDrv        device driver name offset
00131 000c 0053     dc.w      DevCon        (reserved)
00132 000e 0000     dc.w      0,0,0,0       reserved
00133 0016 0030     dc.w      OptLen
00134
00135 * Default Parameters
00136                OptTbl
00137 0018= 00       dc.b      DT_RBF        device type
00138 0019 00       dc.b      DrvNum        drive number
00139 001a 03       dc.b      StepRate      step rate
00140 001b 26       dc.b      DiskType      type of disk 8"/5 1/4"/Hard/etc
00141 001c 03       dc.b      Density       Bit Density and track density
00142 001d 00       dc.b      0              reserved
00143 001e 004f     dc.w      Cylinders-TrkOffs number of logical cylinders
00144 0020 02       dc.b      Heads          Number of Sides (Floppy) Heads(Hard
Disk)
00145 0021 01       dc.b      NoVerify      OFF = disk verify ON = no verify
00146 0022 0010     dc.w      SectTrk       default sectors/track
00147 0024 0010     dc.w      SectTrk0      default sectors/track track 0
00148 0026 0008     dc.w      SegAlloc      segment allocation size
00149 0028 01       dc.b      Intrleav      sector interleave factor
00150 0029 00       dc.b      DMAmode       DMA mode (driver dependant)
00151 002a 01       dc.b      TrkOffs       track base offset (first accessible
track)
00152 002b 01       dc.b      SectOffs      sector base offset (starting physical
sector number)
00153 002c 0100     dc.w      SectSize      # of bytes/sector
00154 002e 0002     dc.w      Control       control byte
00155 0030 07       dc.b      Trys          number of retries 0 = no retrys/error
correction
00156 0031 00       dc.b      ScsiLun       scsi logical unit number
00157 0032 0000     dc.w      WrtPrecomp    write precomp cylinder
00158 0034 0000     dc.w      RedWrtCrnt    reduce write current cylinder
00159 0036 0000     dc.w      ParkCyl        cylinder to park head for hard disk
00160 0038 0000     dc.l      LSNOffset     logical sector offset
00161 003c 0050     dc.w      TotalCyls     total cylinders on drive
00162 003e 06       dc.b      CtrlrID       scsi controller id
00163 003f 10       dc.b      Rates          data-transfer rate & rotational speed
00164 0040 0000     dc.l      ScsiOpts      scsi option flags
00165 0044 00ff     dc.l      MaxCount-1    maximum byte count passable to driver
00166 00000030 OptLen  equ      *-OptTbl
00167
00168 0048 5242 FileMgr  dc.b      "RBF",0          Random block file manager
00169                RBFDesc  macro
00170
00171                Port     equ      \1 Port address
    
```

```

00172      Vector      equ      \2 autovector number
00173      IRQLevel    equ      \3 hardware interrupt level
00174      Priority     equ      \4 polling priority
00175      DevDrv      dc.b      "\5",0 driver module name
00176      ifgt        \#-5 standard device setup requested?
00177
00178
00179      ifeq        \6-d877 8", 77 track drive, single density
00180      DiskKind     set      Eight+Size8 (set Eight for compatibility)
00181      Cylnders     set      77
00182      BitDns      set      Single FM encoding
00183      Rates       set      xfr250K+rpm360
00184      TrkDns      set      Single 48 tpi
00185      SectTrk     set      16
00186      SectTrk0    set      16
00187      TotalCyls  set      Cylnders number of actual cylinders on disk
00188      endc
00189
00190      ifeq        \6-dd877 8", 77 track, double density
00191      DiskKind     set      Eight+Size8 (set Eight for compatibility)
00192      Cylnders     set      77
00193      BitDns      set      Double MFM encoding
00194      Rates       set      xfr500K+rpm360
00195      TrkDns      set      Single 48 tpi
00196      SectTrk     set      28
00197      SectTrk0    set      16
00198      TotalCyls  set      Cylnders number of actual cylinders on disk
00199      endc
00200
00201      ifeq        \6-d540 5 1/4", 40 track drive, single density
00202      DiskKind     set      Size5
00203      Cylnders     set      40
00204      BitDns      set      Single FM encoding
00205      Rates       set      xfr125K+rpm300
00206      TrkDns      set      Single 48 tpi
00207      SectTrk     set      10
00208      SectTrk0    set      10
00209      TotalCyls  set      Cylnders number of actual cylinders on disk
00210      endc
00211
00212      ifeq        \6-dd540 5 1/4", 40 track, double density drive
00213      DiskKind     set      Size5
00214      Cylnders     set      40
00215      BitDns      set      Double MFM encoding
00216      Rates       set      xfr250K+rpm300
00217      TrkDns      set      Single 48 tpi
00218      SectTrk     set      16
00219      SectTrk0    set      10
00220      TotalCyls  set      Cylnders number of actual cylinders on disk
00221      endc
00222
00223      ifeq        \6-d580 5 1/4", 80 track, single density drive
00224      DiskKind     set      Size5
00225      Cylnders     set      80
00226      BitDns      set      Single FM encoding

```

```

00227          Rates      set      xfr125K+rpm300
00228          TrkDns     set      Double 96tpi
00229          SectTrk    set      10
00230          SectTrk0   set      10
00231          TotalCyls  set      Cylnders number of actual cylinders on disk
00232          endc
00233
00234          ifeq        \6-dd580 5 1/4", 80 track drive, double density
00235          DiskKind     set      Size5
00236          Cylnders    set      80
00237          BitDns      set      Double MFM encoding
00238          Rates      set      xfr250K+rpm300
00239          TrkDns     set      Double 96tpi
00240          SectTrk    set      16
00241          SectTrk0   set      10
00242          TotalCyls  set      Cylnders number of actual cylinders on disk
00243          endc
00244
00245          ifeq        \6-ramdisk volatile ram disk
00246          DiskKind     set      0
00247          Cylnders    set      0
00248          BitDns      set      Single
00249          TrkDns     set      Single
00250          SectTrk0   set      0
00251          Heads      set      0
00252          StepRate   set      0
00253          Intrleav   set      0
00254          NoVerify   set      ON
00255          SegAlloc   set      4
00256          Trys      set      0
00257          DevCon     set      0 not used by ram-disk driver
00258          Control    set      MultEnabl format enabled, m/s capable
00259          MaxCount   set      $fffffff
00260          endc
00261
00262          ifeq        \6-nvramdisk non-volatile ram disk
00263          DiskKind     set      0
00264          Cylnders    set      0
00265          BitDns      set      Single
00266          TrkDns     set      Single
00267          SectTrk0   set      0
00268          Heads      set      0
00269          StepRate   set      0
00270          Intrleav   set      0
00271          NoVerify   set      ON
00272          SegAlloc   set      4
00273          Trys      set      0
00274          DevCon     set      0 not used by ram disk driver
00275          Control    set      FmtDsabl+MultEnabl nvram disks are format disabled,
m/s capable
00276          MaxCount   set      $fffffff
00277          endc
00278
00279          ifeq        \6-uv580 universal 5 1/4" 80 track
00280          DiskKind     set      Size5 five inch disk

```

```

00281      Cylnders      set      80      number of (physical) tracks
00282      BitDns        set      Double MFM recording
00283      Rates          set      xfr250K+rpm300
00284      DnsTrk0       set      Double MFM track 0
00285      TrkDns        set      Double 96tpi
00286      SectTrk       set      16      sectors/track (except trk 0, side 0)
00287      SectTrk0      set      16      sectors/track, track 0, side 0
00288      SectOffs      set      1      physical sector start = 1
00289      TrkOffs       set      1      track 0 not used
00290      TotalCyls     set      Cylnders number of actual cylinders on disk
00291      endc
00292
00293      ifeq          \6-autosize "autosize" device (SS_DSize tells
capacity)
00294      SectTrk       set      0      sectors/track (except trk 0, side 0)
00295      SectTrk0      set      0      sectors/track, track 0, side 0
00296      Cylnders      set      0      total cylinders
00297      Heads         set      0      total heads
00298      endc
00299
00300      ifeq          \6-dd380 3 1/2", 80 track drive
00301      DiskKind      set      Size3
00302      Cylnders      set      80
00303      BitDns        set      Double
00304      Rates          set      xfr250K+rpm300
00305      TrkDns        set      Double 135tpi
00306      SectTrk       set      16
00307      SectTrk0      set      10
00308      TotalCyls     set      Cylnders number of actual cylinders on disk
00309      endc
00310
00311      ifeq          \6-uv380 universal 3 1/2" 80 track
00312      DiskKind      set      Size3
00313      Cylnders      set      80      number of (physical) tracks
00314      BitDns        set      Double MFM recording
00315      Rates          set      xfr250K+rpm300
00316      DnsTrk0       set      Double MFM track 0
00317      TrkDns        set      Double 135tpi
00318      SectTrk       set      16      sectors/track (except trk 0, side 0)
00319      SectTrk0      set      16      sectors/track, track 0, side 0
00320      SectOffs      set      1      physical sector start = 1
00321      TrkOffs       set      1      track 0 not used
00322      TotalCyls     set      Cylnders number of actual cylinders on disk
00323      endc
00324
00325      ifeq          \6-hd580 5 1/4" 80 track '8" image'
00326      DiskKind      set      Eight+Size5 (set Eight for compatibility)
00327      Cylnders      set      80      number of (physical) tracks
00328      BitDns        set      Double MFM recording
00329      Rates          set      xfr500K+rpm360
00330      TrkDns        set      Double 96tpi
00331      SectTrk       set      28      sectors/track (except trk0, side 0)
00332      SectTrk0      set      16      sectors/track, track 0, side 0
00333      TotalCyls     set      Cylnders number of actual cylinders on disk
00334      endc

```

```

00335
00336             ifeq      \6-ed380 3 1/2" 80 track EXTRA density (4M
unformatted)
00337     DiskKind    set      Size3
00338     Cylnders    set      80      number of (physical) cylinders
00339     BitDns      set      Double MFM recording
00340     Rates       set      xfr1M+rpm300
00341     DnsTrk0     set      Double MFM track 0
00342     TrkDns      set      Double 135tpi
00343     SectTrk     set      61      sectors/track (except trk 0, side 0)
00344     SectTrk0   set      61      sectors/track, track 0, side 0
00345     SectOffs   set      1       physical sector start = 1
00346     TotalCyls  set      Cylnders number of actual cylinders on disk
00347     endc
00348
00349             ifeq      \6-hd577 5 1/4" 77 track '8" image'
00350     DiskKind    set      Eight+Size5 (set Eight for compatibility)
00351     Cylnders    set      77      number of (physical) tracks
00352     BitDns      set      Double MFM recording
00353     Rates       set      xfr500K+rpm360
00354     TrkDns      set      Double 96tpi
00355     SectTrk     set      28      sectors/track (except trk0, side 0)
00356     SectTrk0   set      16      sectors/track, track 0, side 0
00357     TotalCyls  set      Cylnders number of actual cylinders on disk
00358     endc
00359
00360             ifeq      \6-uv577 universal 5 1/4" 77 track '8" image'
00361     DiskKind    set      Eight+Size5 (set Eight for compatibility)
00362     Cylnders    set      77      number of (physical) tracks
00363     BitDns      set      Double MFM recording
00364     Rates       set      xfr500K+rpm360
00365     DnsTrk0     set      Double MFM track 0
00366     TrkDns      set      Double 96tpi
00367     SectTrk     set      28      sectors/track (except trk0, side 0)
00368     SectTrk0   set      28      sectors/track, track 0, side 0
00369     SectOffs   set      1       physical sector start = 1
00370     TrkOffs    set      1       track 0 not used
00371     TotalCyls  set      Cylnders number of actual cylinders on disk
00372     endc
00373
00374             ifeq      \6-uv877 universal 8" 77 track
00375     DiskKind    set      Eight+Size8 (set Eight for compatibility)
00376     Cylnders    set      77      number of (physical) tracks
00377     BitDns      set      Double MFM recording
00378     Rates       set      xfr500K+rpm360
00379     DnsTrk0     set      Double MFM track 0
00380     TrkDns      set      Single 48 tpi
00381     SectTrk     set      28      sectors/track (except trk0, side 0)
00382     SectTrk0   set      28      sectors/track, track 0, side 0
00383     SectOffs   set      1       physical sector start = 1
00384     TrkOffs    set      1       track 0 not used
00385     TotalCyls  set      Cylnders number of actual cylinders on disk
00386     endc
00387

```

```

00388                                     ifeq      \6-hd380 3 1/2" 80 track (2M unformatted, 1.4M
formatted)
00389      DiskKind      set      Eight+Size3 (set Eight for compatibility)
00390      Cylnders      set      80      number of (physical) tracks
00391      BitDns        set      Double MFM recording
00392      Rates         set      xfr500K+rpm300
00393      TrkDns        set      Double 96tpi
00394      SectSize      set      512      physical sector size
00395      SectTrk       set      18      sectors/track (except trk0, side 0)
00396      SectTrk0     set      18      sectors/track, track 0, side 0
00397      TotalCyls   set      Cylnders number of actual cylinders on disk
00398                                     endc
00399
00400                                     endc
00401                                     endm
00402
00403 *****
00404 * Descriptor Defaults
00405 000000b7 Mode      set      Dir_+ISize_+Append_+Exec_+Updat_
00406 00000000 BitDns   set      Single
00407 00000002 Heads    set      2
00408 00000002 StepRate set      2
00409 00000003 Intrleav set      3
00410 00000000 NoVerify set      OFF
00411 00000000 DnsTrk0 set      Single
00412 00000000 DMAMode set      0      non dma device
00413 00000008 SegAlloc set      8      minimum segment allocation size
00414 00000000 TrkOffs set      0
00415 00000000 SectOffs set      0
00416 00000100 SectSize set      256      default sector size 256 bytes.
00417 00000000 WrtPrecomp set      0      no write precomp
00418 00000000 RedWrtCrnt set      0      no reduced write current
00419 00000000 ParkCyl set      0      where to park the head for hard disk
00420 00000000 ScsiLun set      0      scsi logical unit number
00421 00000000 CtrlrID set      0      controller id
00422 00000000 LSNOffset set      0      logical sector offset for scsi hard
disks
00423 00000000 TotalCyls set      0      number of actual cylinders on disk
00424
00425 * scsi options flag definitions
00426
00427 00000001 scsi_atn set      1<<0      assert ATN supported
00428 00000002 scsi_target set      1<<1      target mode supported
00429 00000004 scsi_synchr set      1<<2      synchronous transfers supported
00430 00000008 scsi_parity set      1<<3      enable SCSI parity
00431
00432 00000000 ScsiOpts set      0      scsi options flags (default)
00433
00434 * device control word definitions
00435
00436 00000000 FmtEnabl set      0<<0      enable formatting
00437 00000001 FmtDsabl set      1<<0      disable formatting
00438 00000000 MultDsabl set      0<<1      disable multi-sectors
00439 00000002 MultEnabl set      1<<1      enable multi-sectors
00440 00000000 StabDsabl set      0<<2      device doesn't have stable id

```

```

00441 00000004 StabEnabl set 1<<2 device has stable id
00442 00000000 AutoDsabl set 0<<3 device size from device descriptor
00443 00000008 AutoEnabl set 1<<3 device tells size via SS_DSize
00444 00000000 FTrkDsabl set 0<<4 device can't format a single track
00445 00000010 FTrkEnabl set 1<<4 device can format a single track
00446 00000000 WritEnab set 0<<5 device is writable by RBF
00447 00000020 WritDsabl set 1<<5 device is write-protected by RBF
00448 00000000 Control set 0 descriptor control word (default)
00449
00450 00000007 Trys set 7 number of Trys
00451 00010000 MaxCount set 65536 default maximum transfer count of
driver (16-bit)
00452 00000000 Rates set 0 default transfer-rate & rotational
speed
00453
00454 * end of file
00455
00005
00006 00000000 DrvNum set 0
00007 DiskD0
00008 0000005c ends

```

# SCF Device Descriptor

Microware OS-9/68020 Resident Macro Assembler V2.9 93/08/12 16:38 Page 1

```

.././././SRC/IO/SCF/DESC/term.a
Term - 68000 Term device descriptor module
00001          nam      Term
00002          ttl      68000 Term device descriptor module
00003          use      defsfile
00001
00002          use      <oskdefs.d>
00001          opt      -l
00003          use      systype.d
00001          opt      -l
00004
00004
00005 * The default characteristics in "scfdesc.a" can be overridden
00006 * by equating the desired values here.  For example:
00007
00008          use      "scfdesc.a"
00001          ttl      Device Descriptor for SCF serial device
00002
00003 * Copyright 1983, 1984, 1985, 1988, 1991, 1992 by
00004 * Microware Systems Corporation.
00005 * Reproduced Under License.
00006
00007 * This source code is the proprietary confidential property of
00008 * Microware Systems Corporation, and is provided to licensee
00009 * solely for documentation and educational purposes.  Reproduction,
00010 * publication, or distribution in any form to any party other
00011 * than the licensee is prohibited.
00012
00048 0016 001c          dc.w      OptSiz          option byte count
00049
00050 * Default Parameters
00051          Options
00052 *
00053 *
00054 *
00055 0018= 00          dc.b      DT_SCF          device type          SCF
00056 0019= 00          dc.b      upclock          upcase lock          OFF
00057 001a= 00          dc.b      bsb          backspace=BS,SP,BS    ON
00058 001b= 00          dc.b      linedel          line del/bsp line     OFF
00059 001c= 00          dc.b      autoecho          full duplex          ON
00060 001d= 00          dc.b      autolf          auto line feed        ON
00061 001e= 00          dc.b      eolnulls          null count            0
00062 001f= 00          dc.b      pagpause          end of page pause     OFF
00063 0020= 00          dc.b      pagsize          lines per page        24
00064 0021= 00          dc.b      C$Bsp          backspace char        ^H
00065 0022= 00          dc.b      C$Del          delete line char      ^X
00066 0023= 00          dc.b      C$CR          end of record char    <return>
00067 0024= 00          dc.b      C$EOF          end of file char      ESC
00068 0025= 00          dc.b      C$Rprt          reprint line char     ^D
00069 0026= 00          dc.b      C$Rpet          dup last line char    ^A

```

```

00070 0027= 00          dc.b    C$Paus      pause char          ^W
00071 0028= 00          dc.b    C$Intr     Keyboard Interrupt char ^C
00072 0029= 00          dc.b    C$Quit     Keyboard Quit char   ^E
00073 002a= 00          dc.b    C$Bsp      backspace echo char  ^H
00074 002b= 00          dc.b    C$Bell     line overflow char   ^G
00075 002c 00          dc.b    Parity     stop bits and parity none
00076 002d 0e          dc.b    BaudRate   bits/char and baud rate none
00077 002e=0000        dc.w    EchoNam    offset of echo device none
00078 0030= 00          dc.b    C$XOn      Transmit Enable char  ^Q
00079 0031= 00          dc.b    C$XOff     Transmit Disable char ^S
00080 0032= 00          dc.b    C$Tab      tab character        ^I
00088 0000001c OptSiz  equ     *-Options
00089
00090 0034 5363 FileMgr  dc.b    "Scf",0      file manager
00091
00092 * Macro to generate main features of device descriptor
00093          SCFDesc  macro
00094          ifne      \#-7 must have exactly seven arguments
00095          fail      SCFDesc: must specify all 7 arguments
00096          endc
00097
00098          Port      equ     \1 Port address
00099          Vector    equ     \2 autovector number
00100          IRQLevel  equ     \3 hardware interrupt level
00101          Priority  equ     \4 polling priority
00102          Parity    equ     \5 parity, stop bits
00103          BaudRate  equ     \6 baud rate
00104          DevDrv    dc.b    "\7",0 driver module name
00105          EchoNam   equ     bname echo device descriptor (self)
00106
00107          ifdef     KANJI
00108          ifndef    Kinit
00109          set       0default values
00110          endc
00111          ifndef    Kreset
00112          set       0
00113          endc
00114          ifndef    Kin
00115          set       0
00116          endc
00117          ifndef    Kout
00118          set       0
00119          endc
00120          endc     KANJI
00121
00122          endm
00123
00124 00000023 Mode      set     ISize_+Updat_ default device mode capabilities
00009
00010          TERM
00011 00000040          ends
00012

```

# SBF Device Descriptor

Microware OS-9/68020 Resident Macro Assembler V2.9 93/08/12 16:40 Page 1

../../../../SRC/IO/SBF/DESC/mt0.a

MT0 Device Descriptor - LRCChip.d - Local Resource Controller definitions

```

00001          nam      MT0 Device Descriptor
00002          use      defsfile
00001
00002          use      <oskdefs.d>
00001          opt      -l
00003          use      systype.d
00001          opt      -l
00004
00003
00004          use      "sbfdesc.a"
00001          ttl      Device Descriptor for Tape controller
00002
00003 * Copyright 1986, 1988, 1989, 1993 by Microware Systems Corporation.
00004 * Reproduced Under License.
00005
00006 * This source code is the proprietary confidential property of
00007 * Microware Systems Corporation, and is provided to licensee
00008 * solely for documentation and educational purposes. Reproduction,
00009 * publication, or distribution in any form to any party other
00010 * than the licensee is prohibited.
00011
00035 00000f00 TypeLang set      (Devic<<8)+0
00036 00008000 Attr_Rev set      (ReEnt<<8)+0
00037
00038          psect     SBFDesc,TypeLang,Attr_Rev,Edition,0,0
00039
00040 0000 ffff          dc.l      Port          port address
00041 0004 bd          dc.b      Vector        vector trap assignment
00042 0005 02          dc.b      IRQLevel      IRQ hardware interrupt level
00043 0006 05          dc.b      Priority      irq polling priority
00044 0007 67          dc.b      Mode          device mode capabilities
00045 0008 002c       dc.w      FileMgr      file manager name offset
00046 000a 0038       dc.w      DevDrv        device driver name offset
00047 000c 0030       dc.w      DevCon        device constants offset
00048 000e 0000       dc.w      0,0,0,0       reserved
00049 0016 0014       dc.w      OptLen
00050
00051 * Default Parameters
00052 00000018 OptTbl    equ      *
00053 0018= 00          dc.b      DT_SBF        device type
00054 0019 00          dc.b      DrvNum        drive number
00055 001a 00          dc.b      0              reserved
00056 001b 64          dc.b      NumBlks       maximum number of block buffers
00057 001c 0000       dc.l      BlkSize       block size
00058 0020 03e8       dc.w      DrvPrior      driver process priority
00059 0022 00          dc.b      SBFFlags      file manager flags
00060 0023 00          dc.b      DrivFlag      driver flags
00061 0024 0000       dc.w      DMAMode       DMA type/usage

```

```

00062 0026 04          dc.b      ScsiID      controller ID on SCSI bus
00063 0027 00          dc.b      ScsiLUN     tape drive LUN on controller
00064 0028 0000        dc.l      ScsiOpts     scsi option flags
00065 00000014 OptLen   equ       *-OptTbl
00066
00067 002c 5342 FileMgr dc.b      "SBF",0      Sequential Block File manager
00068
00069 * SBFDesc Macro definitions
00070 *
00071          SBFDesc     macro
00072
00073          Port         equ       \1 Port address
00074          Vector      equ       \2 autovector number
00075          IRQLevel    equ       \3 hardware interrupt level
00076          Priority     equ       \4 polling priority
00077          DevDrv      dc.b      "\5",0 driver module name
00078
00079          ifgt         \#-5 standard device setup requested?
00080 * reserved for future "std" options
00081
00082          endc
00083          endm
00084
00085 *****
00086 * Descriptor Defaults
00087 00000067 Mode        set       Share_+ISize_+Exec_+Updat_
00088 00000000 Speed      set       0          driver defined
00089 00000002 NumBlks   set       2          (0=unbuffered mode, else number of
buffers)
00090 00002000 BlkSize   set       0x2000
00091 000003e8 DrvPrior  set       1000          "sbf process" priority
00092 00000000 SBFFlags  set       0
00093 00000000 DrivFlag  set       0
00094 00000000 DMAMode   set       0          driver defined
00095 00000000 ScsiID    set       0
00096 00000000 ScsiLUN   set       0
00097
00098 * scsi options flag definitions
00099
00100 00000001 scsi_atn    set       1<<0      assert ATN supported
00101 00000002 scsi_target set     1<<1      target mode supported
00102 00000004 scsi_synchr set     1<<2      synchronous transfers supported
00103 00000008 scsi_parity set     1<<3      enable SCSI parity
00104 00000000 ScsiOpts  set       0          scsi options flags
00105
00106 * end of file
00107
00108
00005
00006 00000000 DrvNum   set       0
00007          TapeMT0
00008 00000040          ends

```

# Pipe Device Descriptor

```

Microware OS-9/68020 Resident Macro Assembler V2.9  94/05/05  13:20  Page    1
  pipe.a
Pipe device descriptor module -
00001             nam      Pipe device descriptor module
00016
00017             use      defsfile
00001
00002             use      <oskdefs.d>
00001             opt      -l
00003
00018
00019 00000f00 TypeLang set      (Devic<<8)+0
00020 00008000 Attr_Rev set      (ReEnt<<8)+0
00021             psect    Pipe,TypeLang,Attr_Rev,Edition,0,0
00022
00023 0000 0000             dc.l    0          no port address
00024 0004 00             dc.b    0          no trap assignment
00025 0005 00             dc.b    0          no IRQ hardware interrupt level
00026 0006 00             dc.b    0          0 no polling priority
00027 0007 a7             dc.b    Dir_+ISize_+Exec_+Updat_ device mode capabilities
00028 0008 001e          dc.w    PipeMgr      file manager name offset
00029 000a 0026          dc.w    PipeDrv      device driver name offset
00030 000c 0000          dc.w    0            DevCon
00031 000e 0000          dc.w    0,0,0,0      reserved
00032 0016 0006          dc.w    OptLen      option byte count

00033
00034             OptTbl
00035 0018= 00             dc.b    DT_Pipe      Device Type: Pipe
00036 0019 00             dc.b    0            reserved
00037 001a 0000          dc.l    0            pipe buffer size (zero=default tiny
buffer)
00038 00000006 OptLen    equ     *-OptTbl
00039
00040 001e 5069 PipeMgr    dc.b    "PipeMan",0  file manager
00041 0026 4e75 PipeDrv    dc.b    "Null",0     device driver
00042 0000002c          ends
00043

```

---

# Appendix B: Path Descriptors and Device Descriptors

---

This appendix includes the device descriptor initialization table definitions and path descriptor option tables for RBF, SCF, SBF, and PIPEMAN type devices. Refer to [Appendix A: Example Code](#) for RBF, SCF, SBF, and pipe example device descriptors.

This appendix contains the following topics:

- [RBF Device Descriptor Modules](#)
- [RBF Definitions of the Path Descriptor](#)
- [SCF Device Descriptor Modules](#)
- [SCF Definitions of the Path Descriptor](#)
- [SBF Device Descriptor Modules](#)
- [SBF Definitions of the Path Descriptor](#)
- [Pipe Device Descriptor Modules](#)
- [Pipe Definitions of the Path Descriptor](#)



# RBF Device Descriptor Modules

This section describes the definitions of the initialization table contained in device descriptor modules for RBF-type devices. The table immediately follows the standard device descriptor module header fields (see [Chapter 3: OS-9 Input/Output System](#) for full descriptions). [Table B-2](#) shows a graphic representation of the table. The size of the table is defined in the `M$Opt` field.

**Table B-1 RBF Device Descriptor Modules**

Name	Description
PD_DTP	<p><b>Device Type</b>            This field is set to one for RBF devices. (0=SCF, 1=RBF, 2=PIPE, 3=SBF, 4=NET)</p>
PD_DRV	<p><b>Drive Number</b>            Use this field to associate a one-byte logical integer with each drive a driver/ controller handles. Number each controller's drives 0 to <math>n-1</math> (<math>n</math> is the maximum number of drives the controller can handle and is set into <code>V_NDRV</code> by the driver's <code>INIT</code> routine). This number defines which drive table the driver and RBF access for this device. RBF uses this number to set up the drive table pointer (<code>PD_DTB</code>). Before initializing <code>PD_DTB</code>, RBF verifies <code>PD_DRV</code> is valid for the driver by checking for a value less than <code>V_NDRV</code> in the driver's static storage. If not valid, RBF aborts the path open and returns an error. On simple hardware, this logical drive number is often the same as the physical drive number.</p>

**Table B-1 RBF Device Descriptor Modules (continued)**

Name	Description															
PD_STP	<p><b>Step Rate</b></p> <p>PD_STP contains a code that sets the drive's head-stepping rate. To reduce access time, set the step rate to the fastest value of which the drive is capable. For floppy disks, the following codes are commonly used:</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Step Code</th> <th>5" Disks</th> <th>8" Disks</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>30ms</td> <td>15ms</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>20ms</td> <td>10ms</td> </tr> <tr> <td>2</td> <td>12ms</td> <td>6ms</td> </tr> <tr> <td>3</td> <td>6ms</td> <td>3ms</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>For hard disks, the value in this field is usually driver dependent.</p>	Step Code	5" Disks	8" Disks	0	30ms	15ms	1	20ms	10ms	2	12ms	6ms	3	6ms	3ms
Step Code	5" Disks	8" Disks														
0	30ms	15ms														
1	20ms	10ms														
2	12ms	6ms														
3	6ms	3ms														

**Table B-1 RBF Device Descriptor Modules (continued)**

Name	Description
PD_TYP	<p><b>Disk Type</b>            Defines the physical type of the disk, and indicates the revision level of the descriptor.</p> <p>If bit 7 = 0, floppy disk parameters are described in bits 0-6:</p> <p>bit 0:            0 = 5 1/4" floppy disk (pre-Version 2.4 of OS-9 for 68K)                              1 = 8" floppy disk (pre-Version 2.4 of OS-9 for 68K)</p> <p>bits 1-3:        0 = (pre-OS-9 for 68K Version 2.4 descriptor) Bit 0 describes type/rates.                              1 = 8" physical size                              2 = 5 1/4" physical size                              3 = 3 1/2" physical size                              4-7: Reserved</p> <p>bit 4:            Reserved</p> <p>bit 5:            0 = Track 0, side 0, single density                              1 = Track 0, side 0, double density</p> <p>bit 6:            Reserved</p> <p>If bit 7 = 1, hard disk parameters are described in bits 0-6:</p> <p>bits 0-5:        Reserved</p> <p>bit 6:            0 = Fixed hard disk                              1 = Removable hard disk</p>

**Table B-1 RBF Device Descriptor Modules (continued)**

Name	Description
PD_DNS	<p><b>Disk Density</b> The hardware density capabilities of a floppy disk drive:</p> <p>bit 0:           0 = Single bit density (FM)                   1 = Double bit density (MFM)</p> <p>bit 1:           1 = Double track density (96 TPI/135 TPI)</p> <p>bit 2:           1 = Quad track density (192 TPI)</p> <p>bit 3:           1 = Octal track density (384 TPI)</p> <p>This parameter is format specific.</p>
PD_CYL	<p><b>Logical Number of Cylinders (Tracks)</b> The logical number of cylinders per disk. <code>format</code> uses this value, <code>PD_SID</code>, and <code>PD_SCT</code> to determine the size of the drive. <code>PD_CYL</code> is often the same as the physical cylinder count (<code>PD_TotCyls</code>), but can be smaller if using partitioned drives (<code>PD_LSNOffs</code>) or track offsetting (<code>PD_TOffs</code>). If the drive is an autosize drive (<code>PD_Cntl</code>), <code>format</code> ignores this field.</p> <p>This parameter is format specific.</p>
PD_SID	<p><b>Heads or Sides</b> The number of heads for a hard disk (Heads) or the number of surfaces for a floppy disk (Sides). If the drive is an autosize drive (<code>PD_Cntl</code>), <code>format</code> ignores this field.</p> <p>This parameter is format specific.</p>

**Table B-1 RBF Device Descriptor Modules (continued)**

Name	Description
PD_VFY	<p><b>Verify Flag</b>            Indicates whether or not to verify write operations.</p> <p>0 = verify disk write            1 = no verification</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> Write verify operations are generally performed on floppy disks. They are not generally performed on hard disks because of the lower soft error rate of hard disks.</p>
PD_SCT	<p><b>Default Number of Sectors/Track</b>            If the drive is an autosize drive (PD_Cnt1), format ignores this field.</p> <p>This parameter is format specific.</p>
PD_T0S	<p><b>Default Sectors/Track (Track 0)</b>            The number of sectors per track for track 0. This may be different than PD_SCT depending on specific disk format. If the drive is an autosize drive (PD_Cnt1), format ignores this field.</p> <p>This parameter is format specific.</p>
PD_SAS	<p><b>Segment Allocation Size</b>            The default minimum number of sectors to allocate when a file is expanded. Typically, this is set to the number of sectors on the media track (for example, 8 for floppy disks, 32 for hard disks), but you can adjust it to suit your system's requirements.</p>

**Table B-1 RBF Device Descriptor Modules (continued)**

Name	Description
PD_ILV	<p><b>Sector Interleave Factor</b></p> <p>The sequential arrangement of sectors on a disk (for example, 1, 2, 3... or 1, 3, 5...). For example, if the interleave factor is 2, the sectors are arranged by 2's (1, 3, 5...) starting at the base sector (see PD_SOffs).</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> Optimized interleaving can drastically improve I/O throughput.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> PD_ILV is typically only used when the media is formatted, as <code>format</code> uses this field to determine the default interleave. However, when the media format occurs (<code>I\$SetStt</code>, <code>SS_WTrk</code> call), the desired interleave is passed in the parameters of the call.</p> <p>This parameter is format specific.</p>
PD_TFM	<p><b>DMA (Direct Memory Access) Transfer Mode</b></p> <p>The mode of transfer for DMA access, if the driver can handle different DMA modes. Use of this field is driver dependent.</p>
PD_TOffs	<p><b>Track Base Offset</b></p> <p>The offset to the first accessible physical track number. Track 0 is not always used as the base track because it is often a different density.</p> <p>This parameter is format specific.</p>
PD_SOffs	<p><b>Sector Base Offset</b></p> <p>The offset to the first accessible physical sector number on a track. Sector 0 is not always the base sector.</p> <p>This parameter is format specific.</p>

**Table B-1 RBF Device Descriptor Modules (continued)**

Name	Description
PD_SSize	<p><b>Physical Sector Size in Bytes</b></p> <p>The default sector size is 256. Depending on whether the driver supports non-256 byte logical sector sizes (a variable sector size driver), PD_SSize is used as follows:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li> <p><b>Variable Sector Size Driver</b></p> <p>If the driver supports variable logical sector sizes, RBF inspects this value during a path open (specifically, after the driver returns <b>no error</b> on the SS_VarSect GetStat call) and uses this value as the <b>logical</b> sector size of the media. This value is then copied into PD_SctSiz of the path descriptor options section, so application programs can know the logical sector size of the media, if required. RBF supports logical sector sizes from 256 bytes to 32,768 bytes, in integral binary multiples (256, 512, 1024, etc.).</p> <p>During the SS_VarSect call, the driver can validate or update this field (or the media itself) according to the driver's conventions. These typically are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li> <p>If the driver can dynamically determine the media's sector size, and PD_SSize is passed in as 0, the driver updates this field according to the current media setting.</p> </li> </ul> </li> </ul>

**Table B-1 RBF Device Descriptor Modules (continued)**

Name	Description
PD_SSize (continued)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If the driver can dynamically set the media's sector size, and PD_SSize is passed in as a non-zero value, the driver sets the media to the value in PD_SSize (this is typical when reformatting the media).</li> <li>• If the driver cannot dynamically determine or set the media sector size, it usually validates PD_SSize against the supported sector sizes, and returns an error (E\$SectSiz) if PD_SSize contains an invalid value.</li> <li>• <b>Non-Variable Sector Size Driver</b> If the driver does not support variable logical sector sizes (logical sector size is fixed at 256 bytes), RBF ignores PD_SSize. In this case, you can use PD_SSize to support deblocking drivers that support various physical sector sizes.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE:</b> A non-variable sector sized driver is defined as a driver returning the E\$UnkSvc error for GetStat (SS_VarSect).</p>

**Table B-1 RBF Device Descriptor Modules (continued)**

Name	Description
PD_Cntl	<p><b>Device Control Word</b>  Indicates options reflecting the device's capabilities. You may set these options, as follows:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>bit 0:           0 = Format enable                    1 = Format inhibit</li> <li>bit 1:           0 = Single-Sector I/O                    1 = Multi-Sector I/O capable</li> <li>bit 2:           0 = Device has non-stable ID                    1 = Device has stable ID</li> <li>bit 3:           0 = Device size determined from descriptor values                    1 = Device size obtained by SS_DSize GetStat call</li> <li>bit 4:           0 = Device cannot format a single track                    1 = Device can format a single track</li> <li>bit 5:           0 = Media is writable by RBF.                    1 = Media is write-protected by RBF.</li> <li>bits 6-15:       Reserved</li> </ul>

**Table B-1 RBF Device Descriptor Modules (continued)**

Name	Description												
PD_Trys	<p><b>Number of Tries</b></p> <p>Indicates whether a driver should try to access the disk again before returning an error. Depending on the driver in use, this field may be implemented as a flag or a retry counter:</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Value</th> <th>Flag</th> <th>Counter</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>retry ON</td> <td>Default # of retries</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>retry OFF</td> <td>No retries</td> </tr> <tr> <td>other</td> <td>retry ON</td> <td>Specified # of retries</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Drivers working with controllers having error correcting functions (for example, E.C.C. on hard disks) should treat PD_Trys as a flag so they can set the controller's error correction/retry functions accordingly.</p> <p>When formatting media, especially hard disks, the format-enabled descriptor should set this field to one (retry OFF) to ensure marginal media sections are marked out of the media free space.</p>	Value	Flag	Counter	0	retry ON	Default # of retries	1	retry OFF	No retries	other	retry ON	Specified # of retries
Value	Flag	Counter											
0	retry ON	Default # of retries											
1	retry OFF	No retries											
other	retry ON	Specified # of retries											
PD_LUN	<p><b>Logical Unit Number of SCSI Drive</b></p> <p>Used in the SCSI command block to identify the logical unit on the SCSI controller. To eliminate allocation of unused drive tables in the driver static storage, this number may be different from PD_DRV. PD_DRV indicates the logical number of the drive to the driver (the drive table to use). PD_LUN is the physical drive number on the controller.</p>												
PD_WPC	<b>First Cylinder to Use Write Precompensation</b>												

**Table B-1 RBF Device Descriptor Modules (continued)**

Name	Description
PD_RWR	<b>First Cylinder to Use Reduced Write Current</b>
PD_Park	<p><b>Cylinder Used to Park Head</b></p> <p>The cylinder at which to park the hard disk's head when the drive is shut down. Parking is usually done on hard disks when they are shipped or moved and is implemented by the <code>SS_SQD SetStat</code> to the driver.</p>
PD_LSNOffs	<p><b>Logical Sector Offset</b></p> <p>The offset to use when accessing a partitioned drive. The driver adds this value to the logical block address passed by RBF prior to determining the physical block address on the media. Typically, using <code>PD_LSNOffs</code> is mutually exclusive to using <code>PD_TOffs</code>.</p>
PD_TotCyls	<p><b>Total Cylinders on Device</b></p> <p>The actual number of physical cylinders on a drive. It is used by the driver to correctly initialize the controller/drive. <code>PD_TotCyls</code> is typically used for physical initializing a partitioned drive or one with <code>PD_TOffs</code> set to a non-zero value. In this case, <code>PD_CYL</code> denotes the <b>logical</b> number of cylinders of the drive. If <code>PD_TotCyls</code> is 0, the driver should determine the physical cylinder count by using the sum of <code>PD_CYL</code> and <code>PD_TOffs</code>.</p>
PD_CtrlrID	<p><b>SCSI Controller ID</b></p> <p>The ID number of the SCSI controller attached to the drive. The driver uses this number to communicate with the controller.</p>

**Table B-1 RBF Device Descriptor Modules (continued)**

Name	Description
PD_ScsiOpt	<p><b>SCSI Driver Options Flags</b></p> <p>The SCSI device options and operation modes. It is the driver's responsibility to use or reject these values, as applicable.</p> <p> bit 0:            0 = ATN not asserted (no disconnect allowed)                    1 = ATN asserted (disconnect allowed) </p> <p> bit 1:            0 = Device cannot operate as a target                    1 = Device can operate as a target </p> <p> bit 2:            0 = Asynchronous data transfer                    1 = Synchronous data transfer </p> <p> bit 3:            0 = Parity off                    1 = Parity on </p> <p>All other bits are reserved.</p>

**Table B-1 RBF Device Descriptor Modules (continued)**

Name	Description
PD_Rate	<p><b>Data Transfer/Rotational Rate</b>            The data transfer rate and rotational speed of the floppy media. PD_Rate is normally used only when the physical size field (PD_TYP, bits 1-3) is non-zero.</p> <p>bits 0-3:      Rotational speed</p> <p>                  0 = 300 RPM</p> <p>                  1 = 360 RPM</p> <p>                  2 = 600 RPM</p> <p>                  All other values are reserved.</p> <p>bits 4-7:      Data transfer rate</p> <p>                  0 = 125K bits/sec</p> <p>                  1 = 250K bits/sec</p> <p>                  2 = 300K bits/sec</p> <p>                  3 = 500K bits/sec</p> <p>                  4 = 1M bits/sec</p> <p>                  5 = 2M bits/sec</p> <p>                  6 = 5M bits/sec</p> <p>                  All other values are reserved.</p>
PD_MaxCnt	<p><b>Maximum Transfer Count</b>            The maximum byte count the driver can transfer in one call. If this field is 0, RBF defaults to the value of \$ffff (65,535).</p>



## Note

Offset in the following table refers to the location of a module field, relative to the starting address of the static storage area. Offsets are resolved in assembly code by using the names shown here and linking the module with the relocatable library, `sys.l` or `usr.l`.

**Table B-2 Initialization Table for RBF Device Descriptor Modules**

Device Descriptor Offset	Path Descriptor Label	Description
\$48	PD_DTP	Device Class
\$49	PD_DRV	Drive Number
\$4A	PD_STP	Step Rate
\$4B	PD_TYP	Device Type
\$4C	PD_DNS	Density
\$4D		Reserved
\$4E	PD_CYL	Number of Cylinders
\$50	PD_SID	Number of Heads/Sides
\$51	PD_VFY	Disk Write Verification
\$52	PD_SCT	Default Sectors/Track

**Table B-2 Initialization Table for RBF Device Descriptor Modules  
(continued)**

<b>Device Descriptor Offset</b>	<b>Path Descriptor Label</b>	<b>Description</b>
\$54	PD_T0S	Default Sectors/Track 0
\$56	PD_SAS	Segment Allocation Size
\$58	PD_ILV	Sector Interleave Factor
\$59	PD_TFM	DMA Transfer Mode
\$5A	PD_TOffs	Track Base Offset
\$5B	PD_SOffs	Sector Base Offset
\$5C	PD_SSize	Sector Size (in bytes)
\$5E	PD_Cntl	Control Word
\$60	PD_Trys	Number of Tries
\$61	PD_LUN	SCSI Unit Number of Drive
\$62	PD_WPC	Cylinder to Begin Write Precompensation
\$64	PD_RWR	Cylinder to Begin Reduced Write Current
\$66	PD_Park	Cylinder to Park Disk Head
\$68	PD_LSNOffs	Logical Sector Offset
\$6C	PD_TotCyls	Number of Cylinders On Device

**Table B-2 Initialization Table for RBF Device Descriptor Modules  
(continued)**

<b>Device Descriptor Offset</b>	<b>Path Descriptor Label</b>	<b>Description</b>
\$6E	PD_CtrlrID	SCSI Controller ID
\$6F	PD_Rate	Data transfer/Disk Rotation Rates
\$70	PD_ScsiOpt	SCSI Driver Options Flags
\$74	PD_MaxCnt	Maximum Transfer Count

## RBF Definitions of the Path Descriptor

---

The first 26 fields of the path options section (`PD_OPT`) of the RBF path descriptor are copied directly from the device descriptor standard initialization table. All of the values in this table may be examined using `I$GetStt` by applications using the `SS_Opt` code. Some of the values may be changed using `I$SetStt`; some are protected by the file manager to prevent inappropriate changes. You can update the following fields using `GetStat` and `SetStat` system calls:

- `PD_STP`
- `PD_TYP`
- `PD_DNS`
- `PD_CYL`
- `PD_SID`
- `PD_VFY`
- `PD_SCT`
- `PD_TOS`
- `PD_SAS`

All other fields are read-only. The RBF path descriptor option table is shown on the following page.

Refer to the previous section on RBF device descriptors for descriptions of the first 26 fields. The last five fields contain information provided by RBF:

**Table B-3 RBF Path Descriptor Option**

Name	Description
PD_ATT	<p><b>File Attributes</b> (D S PE PW PR E W R)</p> <p>The file's attributes are defined as follows:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>bit 0: Set if owner read.</li> <li>bit 1: Set if owner write.</li> <li>bit 2: Set if owner execute.</li> <li>bit 3: Set if public read.</li> <li>bit 4: Set if public write.</li> <li>bit 5: Set if public execute.</li> <li>bit 6: Set if only one user at a time can open the file.</li> <li>bit 7: Set if directory file.</li> </ul>
PD_FD	<p><b>File Descriptor</b></p> <p>The LSN (Logical Sector Number) of the file's file descriptor is written here.</p>
PD_DFD	<p><b>Directory File Descriptor</b></p> <p>The LSN of the file's directory file descriptor is written here.</p>
PD_DCP	<p><b>File's Directory Entry Pointer</b></p> <p>The current position of the file's entry in its directory.</p>
PD_DVT	<p><b>Device Table Pointer (Copy)</b></p> <p>The address of the device table entry associated with the path.</p>

**Table B-3 RBF Path Descriptor Option (continued)**

Name	Description
PD_SctSiz	<b>Logical Sector Size</b> The logical sector size of the device associated with the path. If this is 0, assume a size of 256 bytes.
PD_NAME	<b>File Name</b>



**Note**

In the following table, offset refers to the location of a path descriptor field relative to the starting address of the path descriptor. Path descriptor offsets are resolved in assembly code by using the names shown here and linking with the relocatable library: `sys.l` or `usr.l`.

**Table B-4 Option Table for RBF Path Descriptor**

Offset	Name	Description
\$80	PD_DTP	Device Class
\$81	PD_DRV	Drive Number
\$82	PD_STP	Step Rate
\$83	PD_TYP	Device Type
\$84	PD_DNS	Density
\$85		Reserved

**Table B-4 Option Table for RBF Path Descriptor (continued)**

<b>Offset</b>	<b>Name</b>	<b>Description</b>
\$86	PD_CYL	Number of Cylinders
\$88	PD_SID	Number of Heads/Sides
\$89	PD_VFY	Disk Write Verification
\$8A	PD_SCT	Default Sectors/Track
\$8C	PD_TOS	Default Sectors/Track 0
\$8E	PD_SAS	Segment Allocation Size
\$90	PD_ILV	Sector Interleave Factor
\$91	PD_TFM	DMA Transfer Mode
\$92	PD_TOffs	Track Base Offset
\$93	PD_SOffs	Sector Base Offset
\$94	PD_SSize	Sector Size (in bytes)
\$96	PD_Cntl	Control Word
\$98	PD_Trys	Number of Tries
\$99	PD_LUN	SCSI Unit Number of Drive
\$9A	PD_WPC	Cylinder to Begin Write Precompensation
\$9C	PD_RWR	Cylinder to Begin Reduced Write Current

**Table B-4 Option Table for RBF Path Descriptor (continued)**

<b>Offset</b>	<b>Name</b>	<b>Description</b>
\$9E	PD_Park	Cylinder to Park Disk Head
\$A0	PD_LSNOffs	Logical Sector Offset
\$A4	PD_TotCyls	Number of Cylinders On Device
\$A6	PD_CtrlrID	SCSI Controller ID
\$A7	PD_Rate	Data Transfer/Rotational Rates
\$A8	PD_ScsiOpt	SCSI Driver Option Flag
\$AC	PD_MaxCnt	Maximum Transfer Count
\$B0		Reserved
\$B5	PD_ATT	File Attributes
\$B6	PD_FD	File Descriptor
\$BA	PD_DFD	Directory File Descriptor
\$BE	PD_DCP	File's Directory Entry Pointer
\$C2	PD_DVT	Device Table Pointer (copy)
\$C6		Reserved
\$C8	PD_SctSiz	Logical Sector Size
\$CC		Reserved
\$E0	PD_NAME	File Name

## SCF Device Descriptor Modules

Device descriptor modules for SCF-type devices contain the device address and an initialization table which defines initial values for the I/O editing features, as listed below. The initialization table immediately follows the standard device descriptor module header fields (refer to [Chapter 3: OS-9 Input/Output System](#) for full descriptions). The size of the table is defined in the `M$Opt` field. The initialization table is graphically shown in [Table B-6](#) and the following table.



### Note

You can change or disable most of these special editing functions by changing the corresponding control character in the path descriptor. You can do this with the `I$SetStt` service request or the `tmode` utility. A permanent solution may be to change the corresponding control character value in the device descriptor module. You can easily change the device descriptors with the `xmode` utility.

**Table B-5 SCF Device Descriptor Modules**

Name	Description
PD_DTP	<b>Device Type</b> Set to 0 for SCF devices. (0=SCF, 1=RBF, 2=PIPE, 3=SBF, 4=NET)
PD_UPC	<b>Letter Case</b> If PD_UPC is not equal to 0, input or output characters in the range a . . z are made A . . Z.

**Table B-5 SCF Device Descriptor Modules (continued)**

Name	Description
PD_BSO	<b>Destructive Backspace</b> If PD_BSO is 0 when a backspace character is input, SCF echoes PD_BSE (backspace echo character). If PD_BSO is non-zero, SCF echoes PD_BSE, space, PD_BSE.
PD_DLO	<b>Delete</b> If PD_DLO is 0, SCF deletes by backspace-erasing over the line. If PD_DLO is non-zero, SCF deletes by echoing a carriage return/line-feed.
PD_EKO	<b>Echo</b> If PD_EKO is non-zero, all input bytes are echoed, except undefined control characters, which are printed as periods. If PD_EKO is 0, input characters are not echoed.
PD_ALF	<b>Automatic Line Feed</b> If PD_ALF is non-zero, line-feeds automatically follow carriage returns.
PD_NUL	<b>End of Line Null Count</b> Indicates the number of NULL padding bytes to send after a carriage return/line-feed character.
PD_PAU	<b>End of Page Pause</b> If PD_PAU is non-zero, an auto page pause occurs upon reaching a full screen of output. See PD_PAG for setting page length.
PD_PAG	<b>Page Length</b> Contains the number of lines per screen (or page).

**Table B-5 SCF Device Descriptor Modules (continued)**

Name	Description
PD_BSP	<p><b>Backspace “Input” Character</b> Indicates the input character recognized as backspace. See PD_BSE and PD_BSO.</p>
PD_DEL	<p><b>Delete Line Character</b> Indicates the input character recognized as the delete line function. See PD_DLO.</p>
PD_EOR	<p><b>End of Record Character</b> Defines the last character on each line entered (<code>I\$Read</code>, <code>I\$ReadLn</code>). An output line is terminated (<code>I\$WriteLn</code>) when this character is sent. Normally PD_EOR should be set to \$0D.</p> <p><b>WARNING:</b> If PD_EOR is set to 0, SCF’s <code>I\$ReadLn</code> <i>never</i> terminates unless an EOF or error occurs.</p>
PD_EOF	<p><b>End of File Character</b> This field defines the end-of-file character. SCF returns an end-of-file error on <code>I\$Read</code> or <code>I\$ReadLn</code> if this is the first (and only) character input.</p>
PD_RPR	<p><b>Reprint Line Character</b> If this character is input, SCF (<code>I\$ReadLn</code>) reprints the current input line. A carriage return is also inserted in the input buffer for PD_DUP (see below) to make correcting typing errors more convenient.</p>
PD_DUP	<p><b>Duplicate Last Line Character</b> If this character is input, SCF (<code>I\$ReadLn</code>) duplicates whatever is in the input buffer through the first PD_EOR character. Normally, this is the previous line typed.</p>

**Table B-5 SCF Device Descriptor Modules (continued)**

Name	Description
PD_PSC	<b>Pause Character</b> If this character is typed during output, output is suspended before the next end-of-line. This also deletes any <i>type ahead</i> input for <code>I\$ReadLn</code> .
PD_INT	<b>Keyboard Interrupt Character</b> If this character is input, SCF sends a keyboard interrupt signal to the last user of this path. It terminates the current I/O request (if any) with an error identical to the keyboard interrupt signal code. PD_INT is normally set to a control-C character.
PD_QUT	<b>Keyboard Abort Character</b> If this character is input, SCF sends a keyboard abort signal to the last user of this path. It terminates the current I/O request (if any) with an error code identical to the keyboard abort signal code. PD_QUT is normally set to a control-E character.
PD_BSE	<b>Backspace “Output” Character (Echo Character)</b> This field indicates the backspace character to echo when PD_BSP is input. See PD_BSP and PD_BSO.
PD_OVF	<b>Line Overflow Character</b> If <code>I\$ReadLn</code> has satisfied its input byte count, SCF ignores any further input characters until an end-of-record character (PD_EOR) is received. It echoes the PD_OVF character for each byte ignored. PD_OVF is usually set to the terminal’s bell character.

**Table B-5 SCF Device Descriptor Modules (continued)**

Name	Description
PD_PAR	<p><b>Parity Code, Number of Stop Bits, and Bits/Character</b></p> <p>Bits zero and one indicate the parity as follows:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>0 = no parity</li><li>1 = odd parity</li><li>3 = even parity</li></ul> <p>Bits two and three indicate the number of bits per character as follows:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>0 = 8 bits/character</li><li>1 = 7 bits/character</li><li>2 = 6 bits/character</li><li>3 = 5 bits/character</li></ul> <p>Bits four and five indicate the number of stop bits as follows:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>0 = 1 stop bit</li><li>1 = 1 1/2 stop bits</li><li>2 = 2 stop bits</li></ul> <p>Bits six and seven are reserved.</p>

**Table B-5 SCF Device Descriptor Modules (continued)**

Name	Description																		
PD_BAU	<p><b>Software Adjustable Baud Rate</b>            This one-byte field indicates the baud rate as follows:</p> <table> <tr> <td>0 = 50 baud</td> <td>9 = 2000 baud</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1 = 75 baud</td> <td>A = 2400 baud</td> </tr> <tr> <td>2 = 110 baud</td> <td>B = 3600 baud</td> </tr> <tr> <td>3 = 134.5 baud</td> <td>C = 4800 baud</td> </tr> <tr> <td>4 = 150 baud</td> <td>D = 7200 baud</td> </tr> <tr> <td>5 = 300 baud</td> <td>E = 9600 baud</td> </tr> <tr> <td>6 = 600 baud</td> <td>F = 19200 baud</td> </tr> <tr> <td>7 = 1200 baud</td> <td>10 = 38400 baud</td> </tr> <tr> <td>8 = 1800 baud</td> <td>FF = External</td> </tr> </table>	0 = 50 baud	9 = 2000 baud	1 = 75 baud	A = 2400 baud	2 = 110 baud	B = 3600 baud	3 = 134.5 baud	C = 4800 baud	4 = 150 baud	D = 7200 baud	5 = 300 baud	E = 9600 baud	6 = 600 baud	F = 19200 baud	7 = 1200 baud	10 = 38400 baud	8 = 1800 baud	FF = External
0 = 50 baud	9 = 2000 baud																		
1 = 75 baud	A = 2400 baud																		
2 = 110 baud	B = 3600 baud																		
3 = 134.5 baud	C = 4800 baud																		
4 = 150 baud	D = 7200 baud																		
5 = 300 baud	E = 9600 baud																		
6 = 600 baud	F = 19200 baud																		
7 = 1200 baud	10 = 38400 baud																		
8 = 1800 baud	FF = External																		
PD_D2P	<p><b>Offset to Output Device Descriptor Name String</b>            SCF sends output to the device named in this string. Input comes from the device named by the M\$PDev field. This permits two separate devices (a keyboard and video display) to be one logical device. Usually PD_D2P refers to the name of the same device descriptor in which it appears.</p>																		
PD_XON	<p><b>X-ON Character</b>            See PD_XOFF below.</p>																		

**Table B-5 SCF Device Descriptor Modules (continued)**

Name	Description
PD_XOFF	<p><b>X-OFF Character</b></p> <p>The X-ON and X-OFF characters are used to support software handshaking. Output from a SCF device is halted immediately when PD_XOFF is received and does not resume until PD_XON is received. This allows the distant end to control its incoming data stream. Input to a SCF device is controlled by the driver. If the input FIFO is nearly full, the driver sends PD_XOFF to the distant end to halt input. When the FIFO has been emptied sufficiently, the driver resumes input by sending the PD_XON character. This allows the driver to control its incoming data stream.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> When software handshaking is enabled, the driver consumes the PD_XON and PD_XOFF characters itself.</p>
PD_Tab	<p><b>Tab Character</b></p> <p>In <code>I\$WritLn</code> calls, SCF expands this character into spaces to make tab stops at the column intervals specified by PD_Tabs.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> SCF does not know the effect of tab characters on particular terminals. Tab characters may expand incorrectly if they are sent directly to the terminal.</p>
PD_Tabs	<p><b>Tab Field Size</b></p> <p>See PD_Tab.</p>



## Note

In the following table, offset refers to the location of a module field, relative to the starting address of the module. Module offsets are resolved in assembly code by using the names shown here and linking the module with the relocatable library: `sys.l` or `usr.l`.

**Table B-6 SCF Device Descriptor Initialization Table**

Device Descriptor Offset	Path Descriptor Label	Description
\$48	PD_DTP	Device Type
\$49	PD_UPC	Upper Case Lock
\$4A	PD_BSO	Backspace Option
\$4B	PD_DLO	Delete Line Character
\$4C	PD_EKO	Echo
\$4D	PD_ALF	Automatic Line Feed
\$4E	PD_NUL	End Of Line Null Count
\$4F	PD_PAU	End Of Page Pause
\$50	PD_PAG	Page Length
\$51	PD_BSP	Backspace Input Character

**Table B-6 SCF Device Descriptor Initialization Table (continued)**

<b>Device Descriptor Offset</b>	<b>Path Descriptor Label</b>	<b>Description</b>
\$52	PD_DEL	Delete Line Character
\$53	PD_EOR	End Of Record Character
\$54	PD_EOF	End Of File Character
\$55	PD_RPR	Reprint Line Character
\$56	PD_DUP	Duplicate Line Character
\$57	PD_PSC	Pause Character
\$58	PD_INT	Keyboard Interrupt Character
\$59	PD_QUT	Keyboard Abort Character
\$5A	PD_BSE	Backspace Output
\$5B	PD_OVF	Line Overflow Character (bell)
\$5C	PD_PAR	Parity Code, number of Stop Bits, and number of Bits/Character
\$5D	PD_BAU	Adjustable Baud Rate
\$5E	PD_D2P	Offset To Output Device Name
\$60	PD_XON	X-ON Character
\$61	PD_XOFF	X-OFF Character

**Table B-6 SCF Device Descriptor Initialization Table (continued)**

<b>Device Descriptor Offset</b>	<b>Path Descriptor Label</b>	<b>Description</b>
\$62	PD_TAB	Tab Character
\$63	PD_TABS	Tab Column Width

## SCF Definitions of the Path Descriptor

---

The first 27 fields of the path options section (`PD_OPT`) of the SCF path descriptor are copied directly from the SCF device descriptor initialization table. The table is shown on the following page.

You can examine or change the fields with the `I$GetStt` and `I$SetStt` service requests or the `tmode` and `xmode` utilities.

You may disable the SCF editing functions by setting the corresponding control character value to 0. For example, if you set `PD_INT` to 0, there is no **keyboard interrupt** character.



### Note

Full definitions for the fields copied from the device descriptor are available in the previous section. The additional path descriptor fields are defined below.

---

**Table B-7 SCF Path Descriptors**

Name	Description
<code>PD_TBL</code>	<b>Device Table Entry</b> A user-visible copy of the device table entry for the device.
<code>PD_COL</code>	<b>Current Column</b> The current column position of the cursor.
<code>PD_ERR</code>	<b>Most Recent Error Status</b> The most recent I/O error status.



## Note

In the following table, offset refers to the location of a module field, relative to the starting address of the module. Module offsets are resolved in assembly code by using the names shown here and linking the module with the relocatable library: `sys.l` or `usr.l`.

**Table B-8 SCF Path Descriptor Module Option Table for I/O Editing**

Offset	Name	Description
\$80	PD_DTP	Device Type
\$81	PD_UPC	Upper Case Lock
\$82	PD_BSO	Backspace Option
\$83	PD_DLO	Delete Line Character
\$84	PD_EKO	Echo
\$85	PD_ALF	Automatic Line Feed
\$86	PD_NUL	End Of Line Null Count
\$87	PD_PAU	End Of Page Pause
\$88	PD_PAG	Page Length
\$89	PD_BSP	Backspace Input Character
\$8A	PD_DEL	Delete Line Character

**Table B-8 SCF Path Descriptor Module Option Table for I/O Editing  
(continued)**

<b>Offset</b>	<b>Name</b>	<b>Description</b>
\$8B	PD_EOR	End Of Record Character
\$8C	PD_EOF	End Of File Character
\$8D	PD_RPR	Reprint Line Character
\$8E	PD_DUP	Duplicate Line Character
\$8F	PD_PSC	Pause Character
\$90	PD_INT	Keyboard Interrupt Character
\$91	PD_QUT	Keyboard Abort Character
\$92	PD_BSE	Backspace Output
\$93	PD_OVF	Line Overflow Character (bell)
\$94	PD_PAR	Parity Code, number of Stop Bits, and number of Bits/Character
\$95	PD_BAU	Adjustable Baud Rate
\$96	PD_D2P	Offset To Output Device Name
\$98	PD_XON	X-ON Character
\$99	PD_XOFF	X-OFF Character
\$9A	PD_TAB	Tab Character
\$9B	PD_TABS	Tab Column Width

**Table B-8 SCF Path Descriptor Module Option Table for I/O Editing  
(continued)**

<b>Offset</b>	<b>Name</b>	<b>Description</b>
\$9C	PD_TBL	Device Table Entry
\$A0	PD_Col	Current Column
\$A2	PD_Err	Most Recent Error Status
\$A3		Reserved

## SBF Device Descriptor Modules

This section describes the definitions of the initialization table contained in device descriptor modules for SBF devices. The initialization table immediately follows the standard device descriptor module header fields (see [Chapter 3: OS-9 Input/Output System](#) for full descriptions). A graphic representation of the table is shown in [Table B-9](#). The size of the table is defined in the M\$Opt field.

**Table B-9 Initialization Table for SBF Device Descriptor Module**

Device Descriptor Offset	Path Descriptor Label	Description
\$48	PD_DTP	Device Type
\$49	PD_TDrv	Tape Drive Number
\$4A	PD_SBF	Reserved
\$4B	PD_NumBlk	Maximum Number of Blocks to Allocate
\$4C	PD_BlkJiz	Logical Block Size
\$50	PD_Prior	Driver Process Priority
\$52	PD_SBFflags	SBF Path Flags
\$53	PD_DrivFlag	Driver Flags
\$54	PD_DMAMode	Direct Memory Access Mode

**Table B-9 Initialization Table for SBF Device Descriptor Module  
(continued)**

<b>Device Descriptor Offset</b>	<b>Path Descriptor Label</b>	<b>Description</b>
\$56	PD_ScsiID	SCSI Controller ID
\$57	PD_ScsiLUN	LUN on SCSI Controller
\$58	PD_ScsiOpts	SCSI Options Flags



**Note**

In this table the offset values are the device descriptor offsets, while the labels are the path descriptor offsets. To correctly access these offsets in a device descriptor using the path descriptor labels, make the following adjustment:  $(M\$DTyp - PD\_OPT)$ .

For example, to access the tape drive number in a device descriptor, use the following value:  $PD\_TDrv + (M\$DTyp - PD\_OPT)$ . To access the tape drive number in the path descriptor, use  $PD\_TDrv$ . Module offsets are resolved in assembly code by using the names shown here and linking with the relocatable library: `sys.l` or `usr.l`.

**Table B-10 SBF Device Descriptor Modules**

Name	Description
PD_DTP	<p><b>Device Class</b></p> <p>This field is set to three for SBF devices. (0=SCF, 1=RBF, 2=PIPE, 3=SBF, 4=NET)</p>
PD_TDrv	<p><b>Tape Drive Number</b></p> <p>This is used to associate a one-byte integer with each drive a controller handles.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If using dedicated (for example, non-SCSI bus) controllers, this field usually defines both the <b>logical</b> and <b>physical</b> drive number of the tape drive.</li> <li>• If using tape drives connected to SCSI controllers, this number defines the <b>logical</b> number of the tape drive to the device driver.</li> </ul> <p>The <b>physical</b> controller ID and LUN are specified by the PD_ScsiID and PD_ScsiLUN fields. Each controller's drives should be numbered 0 to n-1 (n is the maximum number of drives the controller can handle). This number also defines how many drive tables are required by the driver and SBF. SBF verifies this number against SBF_NDRV prior to calling the driver.</p>
PD_NumBlk	<p><b>Number of Buffers/Blocks Used for Buffering</b></p> <p>Specifies the maximum number of buffers to be allocated by SBF for use by the auxiliary process in buffered I/O. If this field is set to 0, unbuffered I/O is specified.</p>



**Table B-10 SBF Device Descriptor Modules (continued)**

<b>Name</b>	<b>Description</b>
<code>PD_DrivFlag</code>	<p><b>Driver Flags</b></p> <p>This field is available for use by the device driver.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> References to these flags are often made using the <code>PD_Flags</code> offset (defined in <code>sys.l</code> and <code>usr.l</code>). This reference is equivalent to <code>PD_SBFFlags</code>. References to <code>PD_DrivFlag</code> should use a value of <code>PD_Flags + 1</code>.</p>
<code>PD_DMAMode</code>	<p><b>Direct Memory Access Mode</b></p> <p>This field is hardware specific. If available, you can use this word to specify the DMA Mode of the driver.</p>
<code>PD_ScsiID</code>	<p><b>SCSI Controller ID</b></p> <p>This is the ID number of the SCSI controller attached to the device. The driver uses this number when communicating with the controller.</p>

**Table B-10 SBF Device Descriptor Modules (continued)**

Name	Description
PD_ScsiLUN	<p><b>Logical Unit Number of SCSI Device</b>            This number is the value to use in the SCSI command block to identify the logical unit on the SCSI controller. This number may be different from PD_TDrv to eliminate allocation of unused drive table storage. PD_TDrv indicates the logical number of the drive to the driver and SBF (drive table to use). PD_ScsiLUN is the physical drive number on the controller.</p>
PD_ScsiOpts	<p><b>SCSI Driver Options Flags</b>            This field allows SCSI device options and operation modes to be specified. It is the driver's responsibility to use or reject these if applicable:</p> <p>bit 0: 0 = ATN not asserted (no disconnects allowed).            1 = ATN asserted (disconnects allowed).</p> <p>bit 1: 0 = Device cannot operate as a target.            1 = Device can operate as a target.</p> <p>bit 2: 0 = asynchronous data transfers.            1 = synchronous data transfers.</p> <p>bit 3: 0 = parity off.            1 = parity on.</p> <p>All other bits are reserved.</p>

## SBF Definitions of the Path Descriptor

---

The reserved section (PD\_OPT) of the path descriptor used by SBF is copied directly from the initialization table of the device descriptor. The following table is provided to show the offsets used in the path descriptor. For a full explanation of the path descriptor fields, refer to the previous pages.



### Note

In the following table, offset refers to the location of a path descriptor field relative to the starting address of the path descriptor. Path descriptor offsets are resolved in assembly code by using the names shown here and linking the module with the relocatable library: `sys.l` or `usr.l`.

---

**Table B-11 Path Descriptor PD\_OPT for SBF**

Offset	Name	Description
\$80	PD_DTP	Device Type
\$81	PD_TDrv	Tape Drive Number
\$82	PD_SBF	Reserved
\$83	PD_NumBlk	Maximum Number of Blocks to Allocate
\$84	PD_BlkJiz	Logical Block Size
\$88	PD_Prior	Driver Process Priority

**Table B-11 Path Descriptor PD\_OPT for SBF (continued)**

Offset	Name	Description
\$8A	PD_SBFFlags†	SBF Path Flags
\$8B	PD_DrivFlag†	Driver Flags
\$8C	PD_DMAMode	Direct Memory Access Mode
\$8E	PD_ScsiID	SCSI Controller ID
\$8F	PD_ScsiLUN	LUN on SCSI controller
\$90	PD_ScsiOpts	SCSI Options Flags

† References to these flags are often made using the PD\_Flags offset (defined in `sys.l` and `usr.l`). This reference is equivalent to PD\_SBFFlags. References to PD\_DrivFlag should use a value of PD\_Flags + 1.

## Pipe Device Descriptor Modules

This section describes the definitions of the initialization table contained in device descriptor modules for pipe devices. The initialization table immediately follows the standard device descriptor module header fields (see [Chapter 3: OS-9 Input/Output System](#) for full descriptions). A graphic representation of the table is shown in [Table B-12](#). The size of the table is defined in the `M$Opt` field.



### Note

In this table the offset values are the device descriptor offsets, while the labels are the path descriptor offsets. To correctly access these offsets in a device descriptor using the path descriptor labels, the following adjustment must be made:  $(M\$DType - PD\_OPT)$ .

For example, to access the default buffer size in a device descriptor, use the following value:  $PD\_BufSz + (M\$DType - PD\_OPT)$ . Module offsets are resolved in assembly code by using the names shown here and linking with the relocatable library: `sys.l` or `usr.l`.

**Table B-12 Initialization Table for Pipe Device Descriptor Module**

Device Descriptor Offset	Path Descriptor Label	Description
\$48	PD_DTP	Device Type
\$49		Reserved
\$4A	PD_BufSz	Default pipe buffer size

**Table B-13 Pipe Device Descriptor Modules**

Name	Description
PD_DTP	<p><b>Device Class</b>            (0=SCF 1=RBF 2=PIPE 3=SBF 4=NET) This field is set to 2 for pipe devices.</p>
PD_BufSz	<p><b>Default Pipe Buffer Size</b>            Contains the default size of the FIFO buffer used by the pipe. If no default size is specified and no size is specified when creating the pipe, PD_IOBuf (see Path Descriptor definitions) is used.</p>

## Pipe Definitions of the Path Descriptor

---

The table shown below describes the option section (PD\_OPT) of the path descriptor used by Pipeman.



### Note

In the following table, offset refers to the location of a module field, relative to the starting address of the module. Module offsets are resolved in assembly code by using the names shown here and linking the module with the relocatable library: `sys.l` or `usr.l`.

---

**Table B-14 Path Descriptor PD\_OPT for Pipeman**

Offset	Name	Description
\$80	DV_DTP	Device Type
\$81		Reserved
\$82	PD_BufSz	Default pipe buffer size
\$86	PD_IOBuf	Reserved I/O buffer
\$E0	PD_Name	Pipe file name

**Table B-15 Pipe Definitions of the Path Descriptor**

Name	Description
DV_DTP	<p><b>Device Type</b>            This field is set to 2 for Pipe devices.            (0 = SCF, 1 = RBF, 2 = PIPE, 3 = SBF, 4 = NET)</p>
PD_BufSz	<p><b>Default Pipe Buffer Size</b>            Contains the default size of the FIFO buffer used by the pipe. If no default size is specified and no size is specified when creating the pipe, PD_IOBuf is used.</p>
PD_IOBuf	<p><b>Reserved I/O Buffer</b>            This contains the small I/O buffer to be used by the pipe if no other buffer is specified.</p>
PD_Name	<p><b>Pipe File Name (if any)</b></p>

---

# Appendix C: Error Codes

---

This appendix lists OS-9 error codes in numerical order. It contains the following topics:

- **Error Codes**
- **Miscellaneous Errors**
- **Ultra C Related Errors**
- **Math Trap Errors**
- **Processor Exception Errors**
- **Miscellaneous Errors**
- **Semaphore Errors**
- **Operating System Errors**
- **I/O Errors**
- **Compiler Errors**
- **Rave Errors**
- **Internet Errors**
- **ISDN Errors**



# Error Codes

OS-9 error codes are categorized as follows:

**Table C-1 OS-9 Error Codes**

Range	Description
000:001 - 000:031	<b>Miscellaneous Errors</b> For more information, refer to <a href="#">Miscellaneous Errors</a> .
000:032 - 000:047	<b>Ultra C related Errors</b> For more information, refer to <a href="#">Ultra C Related Errors</a> .
000:064-000:067	<b>Math Trap Related Errors</b> For more information, refer to <a href="#">Math Trap Errors</a> .
000:102 - 000:163	<b>Processor Exception Errors</b> Error codes in this range are reserved to indicate a processor related exception occurred on behalf of the program. Only those listed within this range can occur on behalf of the user program. All other numbers between 100 - 163 are reserved. Unless the program provides for special handling of the exception condition ( <a href="#">F\$STrap</a> ), the error is fatal and the program terminates. The listed errors that fall between 100-163 represent the hardware exception vector plus 100. For more information, refer to <a href="#">Processor Exception Errors</a> .

**Table C-1 OS-9 Error Codes (continued)**

<b>Range</b>	<b>Description</b>
000:164 - 000:176	<b>Miscellaneous Errors</b> For more information, refer to <a href="#">Miscellaneous Errors</a>
000:177	<b>Semaphore Error</b> For more information, refer to <a href="#">Semaphore Errors</a> .
000:200 - 000:239	<b>Operating System Errors</b> These errors are normally generated by the kernel or file managers. For more information, refer to <a href="#">Operating System Errors</a> .
000:240 - 000:255	<b>I/O Errors</b> These error codes are generated by device drivers or file managers. For more information, refer to <a href="#">I/O Errors</a> .
001:000 - 001:001	<b>Compiler Errors</b> For more information, refer to <a href="#">Compiler Errors</a> .
006:100 - 006:206	<b>RAVE Errors</b> For more information, refer to <a href="#">Rave Errors</a> .
007:001 - 007:029	<b>Internet Errors</b> For more information, refer to <a href="#">Internet Errors</a> .
008:001 - 008:017	<b>ISDN Errors</b> For more information, refer to <a href="#">ISDN Errors</a> .

# Miscellaneous Errors

---

**Table C-2 OS-9 Miscellaneous Errors**

<b>Number</b>	<b>Name</b>	<b>Description</b>
000:001		<b>Process has aborted</b>
000:002	S\$Abort signal	<b>Keyboard Quit</b> The keyboard abort signal (S\$Abort) was sent. This is usually generated by typing <control>e.
000:003	S\$Intrpt signal	<b>Keyboard Interrupt</b> The keyboard interrupt signal (S\$Intrpt) was sent. This is usually generated by typing <control>c.
000:004	S\$HangUp signal	<b>Modem Hang-up</b> The modem hang-up signal (S\$HangUp) was sent. This is usually generated when the device driver detects the loss of the data carrier.

## Ultra C Related Errors

---

**Table C-3 OS-9 Ultra C Related Errors**

<b>Number</b>	<b>Name</b>	<b>Description</b>
000:032	E_SIGABRT	<b>Abort Signal</b> An abort signal was received.
000:033	E_SIGFPE	<b>Erroneous Math Operation</b> An erroneous math operation was received.
000:034	E_SIGILL	<b>Illegal Function Image Signal</b> An illegal function image signal was received.
000:035	E_SIGSEGV	<b>Segment Violation</b> A segment violation (bus error) signal was received.
000:036	E_SIGTERM	<b>Termination Request Signal</b> A termination request signal was received.
000:037	E_SIGALRM	<b>Elapsed Alarm Time</b> An elapsed alarm time signal was received.
000:038	E_SIGPIPE	<b>No Readers for Pipe</b> A write to a pipe with no readers signal was received.

**Table C-3 OS-9 Ultra C Related Errors (continued)**

<b>Number</b>	<b>Name</b>	<b>Description</b>
000:039	E_SIGUSR1	<b>User Signal Number 1</b> A user signal number 1 was received.
000:040	E_SIGUSR2	<b>User Signal Number 2</b> A user signal number 2 was received.
000:041	E_SIGADDR	<b>Address Error Signal</b> An address error signal was received.
000:042	E_SIGCHK	<b>CHK Signal</b> A <code>chk</code> instruction signal was received.
000:043	E_SIGTRAPV	<b>TRAPV Signal</b> A <code>trapv</code> instruction signal was received.
000:044	E_SIGPRIV	<b>Privilege Violation Signal</b> A privilege violation signal was received.
000:045	E_SIGTRACE	<b>Trace Exception Signal</b> A trace exception signal was received.

**Table C-3 OS-9 Ultra C Related Errors (continued)**

<b>Number</b>	<b>Name</b>	<b>Description</b>
000:046	E_SIG1010	<b>Line A Exception Signal</b> A line-A exception signal was received.
000:047	E_SIG1111	<b>Line F Exception Signal</b> A line-F exception signal was received.

# Math Trap Errors

---

**Table C-4 OS-9 Math Trap Errors**

<b>Number</b>	<b>Name</b>	<b>Description</b>
000:064	E\$IllFnc	<b>Illegal Function Code</b> A math trap handler error.
000:065	E\$FmtErr	<b>Format Error</b> A math trap handler error. An ASCII to numeric format conversion error.
000:066	E\$NotNum	<b>Number Not Found</b> A math trap handler error.
000:067	E\$IllArg	<b>Illegal Argument</b> A math trap handler error.

# Processor Exception Errors

---

**Table C-5 OS-9 Processor Exception Errors**

<b>Number</b>	<b>Name</b>	<b>Description</b>
000:102	E\$BusErr	<b>Bus Error</b> A bus error exception occurred.
000:103	E\$AdrErr	<b>Address Error</b> An address error exception occurred.
000:104	E\$IllIns	<b>Illegal Instruction</b> An illegal instruction exception occurred.
000:105	E\$ZerDiv	<b>Zero Divide</b> An integer zero divide exception occurred.
000:106	E\$Chk	<b>Check</b> A CHK or CHK2 instruction exception occurred.
000:107	E\$TrapV	<b>Trap</b> A TRAPV, TRAPcc, or FTRAPcc instruction exception occurred.
000:108	E\$Violat	<b>Privilege Violation</b> A privilege violation exception occurred.

**Table C-5 OS-9 Processor Exception Errors (continued)**

<b>Number</b>	<b>Name</b>	<b>Description</b>
000:109	E\$Trace	<b>Uninitialized Trace Exception</b> An uninitialized trace exception occurred.
000:110	E\$1010	<b>1010 Trap</b> An A Line emulator exception occurred.
000:111	E\$1111	<b>1111 Trap</b> An F Line emulator exception occurred.
000:112	E\$Resrvd	<b>Reserved</b>
000:113	E\$CProto	<b>Co-processor Protocol Violation</b>
000:114	E\$StkFmt	<b>Format Error</b> A system stack frame format error occurred.
000:115	E\$UnIRQ	<b>Uninitialized Interrupt Occurred</b>
000:116- 000:123		<b>Reserved</b>
000:124		<b>Spurious Interrupt Occurred</b>
000:133- 000:147	E\$Trap	<b>Uninitialized User TRAP 1-15 Executed</b>

**Table C-5 OS-9 Processor Exception Errors (continued)**

<b>Number</b>	<b>Name</b>	<b>Description</b>
000:148	E\$FPUnordC	<b>FPCP Error</b> Branch or set on floating point unordered condition error.
000:149	E\$FPInxact	<b>FPCP Error</b> Floating point inexact result.
000:150	E\$FPDivZer	<b>FPCP Error</b> Floating point divide by zero error.
000:151	E\$FPUndrFl	<b>FPCP Error</b> Floating point underflow error.
000:152	E\$FP OprErr	<b>FPCP Error</b> Floating point operand error.
000:153	E\$FPOverFl	<b>FPCP Error</b> Floating point overflow error.
000:154	E\$FPNotNum	<b>FPCP Error</b> Floating point NAN (not a number).
000:155	E\$UnData	<b>FPCP Error</b> Floating point unimplemented Data Type
000:156	E\$MMUConf	<b>PMMU Configuration Error</b>
000:157	E\$MMUIlleg	<b>PMMU Illegal Operation</b>

**Table C-5 OS-9 Processor Exception Errors (continued)**

<b>Number</b>	<b>Name</b>	<b>Description</b>
000:158	E\$MMUAcces	<b>PMMU Access Level Violation</b>
000:159- 000:163		<b>Invalid Exception</b>

## Miscellaneous Errors

---

**Table C-6 OS-9 Miscellaneous Errors**

Number	Name	Description
000:164	E\$Permit	<p><b>No Permission</b> A super user must own the process or module in order to perform the requested function.</p>
000:165	E\$Differ	<p><b>Different Arguments</b> The arguments to <a href="#">F\$ChkMem</a> do not match.</p>
000:166	E\$StkOvf	<p><b>Stack Overflow</b> The process' system or user stack was about to overflow. This error could be caused by:</p> <p><a href="#">F\$ChkMem</a> can cause this error if the pattern string is too complex.</p> <p>The data area associated with a user exception handler (<a href="#">F\$STrap</a>) is not part of your data area. This can be caused by specifying an invalid address or when your stack is nested too deep (unmasking signals within the signal handler can cause this).</p> <p>The signal handler is nested too deep. Unmasking signals within the signal handler can cause this.</p>

**Table C-6 OS-9 Miscellaneous Errors (continued)**

<b>Number</b>	<b>Name</b>	<b>Description</b>
000:167	E\$EvntID	<b>Illegal Event ID</b> You specified an invalid or illegal event ID number.
000:168	E\$EvNF	<b>Event Name Not Found</b> You tried to link to or delete an event, but the name of the event is not in the event table.
000:169	E\$EvBusy	<b>Event Busy</b> You tried to delete an event, but its link count is non-zero. This can also occur if you try to create a named event that already exists.
000:170	E\$EvParm	<b>Impossible Event Parameter</b> You passed parameters to <a href="#">F\$Event</a> that are not possible.
000:171	E\$Damage	<b>System Damage</b> A system data structure has been corrupted.
000:172	E\$BadRev	<b>Incompatible Revision</b> The software revision is not compatible with the operating system revision.

**Table C-6 OS-9 Miscellaneous Errors (continued)**

<b>Number</b>	<b>Name</b>	<b>Description</b>
000:173	E\$PthLost	<p><b>Path Lost</b> The path became lost. This usually occurs when:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• A network node has gone down.</li> <li>• A serial connection has lost data carrier.</li> <li>• A pipe path has been broken due to an <code>SS_Break</code> <code>SetStat</code>.</li> </ul>
000:174	E\$BadPart	<p><b>Bad Partition</b> Bad partition data or no active partition.</p>
000:175	E\$Hardware	<p><b>Hardware Damage Has Been Detected</b> <code>E\$Hardware</code> usually occurs when the driver fails to detect the correct responses from the hardware. This can occur due to hardware failure or an incorrect hardware configuration.</p>
000:176	E\$SectSize	<p><b>Invalid Sector Size</b> The sector size of an RBF device must be a binary multiple of 256 (256, 512, 1024, and so forth). The maximum sector size is 32768.</p>

# Semaphore Errors

---

**Table C-7 OS-9 Semaphore Errors**

<b>Number</b>	<b>Name</b>	<b>Description</b>
000:177	E\$BSig	<b>Unexpected or Bad Signal</b>

# Operating System Errors

---

**Table C-8 OS-9 Operating System Errors**

<b>Number</b>	<b>Name</b>	<b>Description</b>
000:200	E\$PthFul	<b>Path Table Full</b> A user program has tried to open more than 32 I/O paths simultaneously. When the system path table gets full, the kernel automatically expands it. However, this error could be returned if there is not enough contiguous memory to expand the table.
000:201	E\$BPNum	<b>Illegal Path Number</b> The path number was too large or for a non-existent path. This could occur whenever passing a path number to an I/O call.
000:202	E\$Poll	<b>Interrupt Polling Table Full</b> You tried to install an IRQ Service Routine into the system polling table, but the table was full. To install another interrupt producing device, you must first remove one already in the table. The system's INIT module specifies the maximum number of IRQ devices you may install.

**Table C-8 OS-9 Operating System Errors (continued)**

Number	Name	Description
000:203	E\$BMode	<b>Illegal Mode</b> You tried to perform an I/O function that the device or file cannot perform. This could occur, for instance, when trying to read from an output file (for example, a printer).
000:204	E\$DevOvf	<b>Device Table Full</b> OS-9 cannot add the specified device to the system because the device table is full. To install another device, you must first remove one already in the table. The system's <code>INIT</code> module specifies the maximum number of devices supported, but this may be changed to add more.
000:205	E\$BMID	<b>Illegal Module Header</b> OS-9 cannot load the specified module because its module sync code is incorrect.
000:206	E\$DirFul	<b>Module Directory Full</b> The module directory is full. To load or create another module, you must first unlink one already in the directory. Although OS-9 expands the module directory when it becomes full, this error may be returned because there is not enough memory or the memory is too fragmented to use.

**Table C-8 OS-9 Operating System Errors (continued)**

<b>Number</b>	<b>Name</b>	<b>Description</b>
000:207	E\$MemFull	<b>Memory Full</b> The process can not execute because there is not enough contiguous RAM free. This can also occur if a process has already been allocated the maximum number of blocks permitted by the system.
000:208	E\$UnkSvc	<b>Unknown Service Code</b> The specified service call has an unknown or invalid service code number. This can also occur if a GetStat/SetStat call is made with an unknown status code.
000:209	E\$ModBsy	<b>Module Busy</b> You tried to access a non-sharable module or non-sharable device that is already in use.
000:210	E\$BPAddr	<b>Boundary Error</b> A memory de-allocation request was not passed a valid block address or you tried to de-allocate memory not previously assigned. The system detects trouble when the buffer returns to free memory or if it is used as the destination of a data transfer, such as <a href="#">I\$Read</a> .

**Table C-8 OS-9 Operating System Errors (continued)**

<b>Number</b>	<b>Name</b>	<b>Description</b>
000:211	E\$EOF	<b>End of File</b> An end of file condition was encountered on a read operation.
000:212	E\$VctBsy	<b>Vector Busy</b> A device is trying to use an IRQ vector that another device is currently using.
000:213	E\$NES	<b>Non-Existing Segment</b> A search was made for a disk file segment that cannot be found. The device may have a damaged file structure.
000:214	E\$FNA	<b>File Not Accessible</b> You tried to open a file or device without the correct access permissions. Check the file's attributes and the owner ID.
000:215	E\$BPNam	<b>Bad Path Name</b> There is a syntax error in the specified pathlist (for example, an illegal character). This can occur whenever you reference a path by name.
000:216	E\$PNNF	<b>Path Name Not Found</b> The specified pathlist cannot be found. This could be caused by misspellings or incorrect directories.

**Table C-8 OS-9 Operating System Errors (continued)**

<b>Number</b>	<b>Name</b>	<b>Description</b>
000:217	E\$SLF	<b>Segment List Full</b> A file is too fragmented to be expanded any further. This can be caused by expanding a file many times without regard to memory allocation. It also occurs on disks with little free memory or disks whose free memory is too scattered. A simple way to solve this problem is to copy the file (or disk). This should move it into contiguous areas.
000:218	E\$CEF	<b>File Already Exists</b> You tried to create a file using a name that already appears in the current directory.
000:219	E\$IBA	<b>Illegal Block Address</b> A search for an illegal block address has occurred. An invalid pointer or block size has been passed or the device's file structure is damaged.
000:220	E\$HangUp	<b>Telephone (Modem) Data Carrier Lost</b> You tried to perform an I/O operation on a path after irrecoverable line problems occurred (for example, data carrier lost). It may be returned from network devices if the network connection is lost.

**Table C-8 OS-9 Operating System Errors (continued)**

Number	Name	Description
000:221	E\$MNF	<b>Module Not Found</b> A request is made to link to a module that is not found in the module directory. Modules whose headers have been modified or corrupted can not be found.
000:222	E\$NoClk	<b>No Clock</b> This error returns when a request is made that uses the system clock and the system has no clock running. For example, a timed sleep request returns this error if there is no system clock running. Use <code>setime</code> to start the system clock.
000:223	E\$DelSP	<b>Delete Stack Pointer Memory</b> A user requested de-allocation and return of the memory where the user's stack is located. This could be caused, for example, by using the <code>F\$Mem</code> system call to contract the data memory of the specified process.
000:224	E\$IPrCID	<b>Illegal Process Number</b> A system call was passed a process ID to a non-existent process or a process you may not access.

**Table C-8 OS-9 Operating System Errors (continued)**

<b>Number</b>	<b>Name</b>	<b>Description</b>
000:225	E\$Param	<b>Bad Parameter</b> You passed a service request an illegal or impossible parameter.
000:226	E\$NoChld	<b>No Children</b> You made an F\$Wait request, but your process has no child process for which to wait.
000:227	E\$ITrap	<b>Illegal Trap Code</b> You used an unavailable (already in use) or invalid trap code in a F\$TLink call.
000:228	E\$PrcAbt	<b>Process Aborted</b> A process is aborted by the kill signal code.
000:229	E\$PrcFul	<b>Process Table Full</b> The system process table is full (too many processes currently running). Although OS-9 automatically tries to expand the table, this error may occur if there is not enough contiguous memory to do so.
000:230	E\$IForkP	<b>Illegal Parameter Area</b> Ridiculous parameters were passed to a fork call.
000:231	E\$KwnMod	<b>Known Module</b> You tried to install a module that is already in memory.

**Table C-8 OS-9 Operating System Errors (continued)**

Number	Name	Description
000:232	E\$BMCRC	<b>Incorrect Module CRC</b> The specified module being checked or verified has a bad CRC value. Use <code>fixmod</code> to generate a valid CRC.
000:233	E\$USigP	<b>Unprocessed Signal Pending</b>
000:234	E\$NEMod	<b>Non-Executable Module</b> A process tried to execute a module with a type other than program/object.
000:235	E\$BNam	<b>Bad Name</b> There is a syntax error in the specified name.
000:236	E\$BMHP	<b>Bad Parity</b> The specified module has bad module header parity.
000:237	E\$NoRAM	<b>RAM Full</b> There is no free system RAM available at the time of the request for memory allocation. This also occurs when there is not enough contiguous memory to process a fork request.  <b>NOTE:</b> <code>F\$Mem</code> is no longer available. Use <code>F\$SRqMem</code> instead.

**Table C-8 OS-9 Operating System Errors (continued)**

<b>Number</b>	<b>Name</b>	<b>Description</b>
000:238	E\$DNE	<b>Directory Not Empty</b> You tried to remove the directory attribute from a directory that is not empty.
000:239	E\$NoTask	<b>No Task Number Available</b> All task numbers are currently in use and a request was made to execute or create a new task. This might be returned by an OS-9 System Security Module (SSM).

# I/O Errors

---

**Table C-9 OS-9 I/O Errors**

<b>Number</b>	<b>Name</b>	<b>Description</b>
000:240	E\$Unit	<b>Illegal Drive Number</b>
000:241	E\$Sect	<b>Bad Sector</b> Bad disk sector number.
000:242	E\$WP	<b>Write Protect</b> Media is write protected.
000:243	E\$CRC	<b>CRC Error</b> A CRC error occurred on read or write verify.
000:244	E\$Read	<b>Read Error</b> A data transfer error occurred during disk read operation, or SCF (terminal) input buffer overrun.
000:245	E\$Write	<b>Write Error</b> A hardware error occurred during disk write operation.
000:246	E\$NotRdy	<b>Not Ready</b> Device has not ready status.
000:247	E\$Seek	<b>Seek Error</b> You tried to perform a physical seek to a non-existent sector.

**Table C-9 OS-9 I/O Errors (continued)**

<b>Number</b>	<b>Name</b>	<b>Description</b>
000:248	E\$Full	<b>Media Full</b> Insufficient free space on media.
000:249	E\$BTyp	<b>Wrong Type</b> You tried to read incompatible media (you attempted to read a double-sided disk on single-sided drive).
000:250	E\$DevBsy	<b>Device Busy</b> A non-sharable device is in use.
000:251	E\$DIDC	<b>Disk ID Change</b> The disk media was changed with open files. RBF copies the disk ID number (from sector 0) into the path descriptor of each path when it is opened. If this does not agree with the driver's current disk ID, this error is returned. The driver updates the current disk ID only when sector 0 is read. Therefore, it is possible to swap disks without RBF noticing. This check helps to prevent this possibility.

**Table C-9 OS-9 I/O Errors (continued)**

Number	Name	Description
000:252	E\$Lock	<p><b>Record Is Locked-Out</b>            Another process is accessing the requested record. Normal record locking routines wait forever for a record in use by another user to become available. However, RBF may be told to wait for a finite amount of time with a SetStat. If the time expires before the record becomes free, this error is returned.</p>
000:253	E\$Share	<p><b>Non-Sharable File Busy</b>            The requested file or device has the single user bit set or it was opened in single user mode and another process is accessing the requested file. A common way to get this error is to attempt to delete a currently open file.</p>

**Table C-9 OS-9 I/O Errors (continued)**

<b>Number</b>	<b>Name</b>	<b>Description</b>
000:254	E\$DeadLk	<b>I/O Deadlock</b> Two processes are trying to use the same two disk areas simultaneously. Each process is locking out the other process, producing the I/O deadlock. One of the processes must release its control to allow the other to proceed.
000:255	E\$Format	<b>Device Is Format Protected</b> You tried to format a format protected disk. To allow the device to be formatted, change a bit in the device descriptor. Formatting is usually inhibited on hard disks to prevent erasure.

# Compiler Errors

---

**Table C-10 OS-9 Compiler Errors**

<b>Number</b>	<b>Name</b>	<b>Description</b>
001:000	ERANGE	<b>ANSI C Number Out of Range</b>
001:001	EDOM	<b>ANSI C Number Not in Domain</b>

## Rave Errors

---

**Table C-11 OS-9 Rave Errors**

<b>Number</b>	<b>Name</b>	<b>Description</b>
006:000	E\$IllPrm	<b>Illegal Parameter</b> An illegal parameter was passed to a function.
006:001	E\$IdFull	<b>Identifier Table Full</b> An ID table could not be expanded any further.
006:002	E\$BadSiz	<b>Bad Size Error</b>
006:003	E\$RgFull	<b>Region definition full (overflow)</b> The region is too complex.
006:004	E\$UnID	<b>Unallocated Identifier Number</b> An attempt was made to use an ID number for an object (drawmap, action region, etc.) that was not allocated.
006:005	E\$NullRg	<b>Null Region</b> You attempted to use a null region.
006:006	E\$BadMod	<b>Bad Drawmap/Pattern Mode</b> An illegal mode was passed to create a drawmap or pattern.

**Table C-11 OS-9 Rave Errors (continued)**

<b>Number</b>	<b>Name</b>	<b>Description</b>
006:007	E\$NoFont	<b>No Active Font</b> No font was activated when an attempt to output text was made.
006:008	E\$NoDM	<b>No Drawmap</b> No character output drawmap was available when attempting an <code>_os_write</code> or <code>_os_writeln</code> .
006:009	E\$NoPlay	<b>No Audio Play in Progress</b> An attempt was made to stop an audio play when none was in progress.
006:010	E\$Abort	<b>Audio Record/Play Aborted</b> An <code>sm_off()</code> call was done to abort a play in progress.
006:011	E\$QFull	<b>Audio Queue is Full</b> The driver queue could not handle the number of soundmaps you were attempting to output.
006:012	E\$Busy	<b>Audio Processor Is Busy</b>
006:100	E_RES_NOSLOT	<b>No Free Slot Is Left in the Resource Table</b> <code>res_load()</code> returns this error when no more resource modules can be loaded for this application.

**Table C-11 OS-9 Rave Errors (continued)**

<b>Number</b>	<b>Name</b>	<b>Description</b>
006:101	E_RES_BADSLOT	<p><b>Specified Resource Module ID Is Not a Valid Slot in the Resource Table</b></p> <p><code>res_set()</code> and <code>res_free()</code> return this error if the resource module ID does not correspond to a valid resource module.</p>
006:102	E_RES_NOSHARE	<p><b>Resource Is Not Sharable</b></p> <p><code>res_get()</code> returns this error if the resource is non-sharable.</p>
006:103	E_RES_NOTYPE	<p><b>Resource Type Is Bad</b></p> <p>The specified type was not found in the resource map.</p>
006:104	E_RES_NORES	<p><b>Bad Resource ID</b></p> <p>The specified resource ID was not found in the resource map.</p>
006:110	E_REQ_NOITEMS	<p><b>No Items Are Specified for Request</b></p> <p><code>req_create()</code> returns this error if the <code>rq_numits</code> field is 0.</p>
006:111	E_REQ_BADITEM	<p><b>Out of Range Item Number</b></p> <p>A specified item number is greater than the number of items in a request.</p>
006:112	E_REQ_BADCOLS	<p><b>Out of Range Column Number</b></p> <p><code>req_create()</code> returns this error if the <code>rq_numcols</code> field is 0.</p>

**Table C-11 OS-9 Rave Errors (continued)**

<b>Number</b>	<b>Name</b>	<b>Description</b>
006:113	E_REQ_BADPTR	<b>Bad Item Array Pointer</b> req_create() returns this error if the rq_choices pointer is not initialized correctly.
006:114	E_REQ_NOCREATE	<b>Could Not Create Request</b> req_create() returns this error if the request could not be created. Other functions may return it if you try to use a non-created request.
006:115	E_REQ_TIMEOUT	<b>Modal Request Has Timed Out</b> req_make() returns this error if the time-out value is reached before you make a selection in the request.
006:116	E_REQ_NOSEL	<b>No Selection Was Made for a Modal Request</b> req_make() returns this error if you clicked outside of the request or on a disabled item, thus making no selection.
006:117	E_REQ_DEFID	<b>Bad Definition Function ID</b> You did not correctly initialize the rq_type field.
006:118	E_REQ_DEFACT	<b>Bad Definition Action Code</b> You called the definition function with an invalid action parameter.

**Table C-11 OS-9 Rave Errors (continued)**

<b>Number</b>	<b>Name</b>	<b>Description</b>
006:119	E_REQ_STATE	<b>Bad Item State Value</b> You called the REQ_A_ISTATE action of the standard definition function with an invalid item state value.
006:120	E_REQ_BADRECT	<b>Bad Request Rectangle</b> req_create() returns this error if the rq_rect structure is not initialized correctly.
006:130	E_CNT_BHVID	<b>Bad Standard Behavior ID</b> The cnt_bhv field was not correctly initialized, or a bad bhv parameter was passed to cntl_bhv().
006:131	E_CNT_DEFID	<b>Bad Standard Definition ID</b> The cnt_def field was not correctly initialized, or a bad def parameter was passed to cntl_def().
006:132	E_CNT_DEFACT	<b>Bad Action for Definition Function</b> You passed a bad action parameter to cntl_def().
006:133	E_CNT_BHVACT	<b>Bad Action for Behavior Function</b> You passed a bad action parameter to cntl_bhv().

**Table C-11 OS-9 Rave Errors (continued)**

<b>Number</b>	<b>Name</b>	<b>Description</b>
006:134	E_CNT_STATE	<p><b>Bad Control State</b>            A bad <code>state</code> parameter was passed to <code>cntl_state()</code>, or a bad value was found in the <code>cnt_state</code> field.</p>
006:135	E_CNT_PART	<p><b>Bad Control Part Code</b>            The definition function of standard controls returns this error if you try to draw a bad part of a control.</p>
006:136	E_CNT_FLAGS	<p><b>Bad Flags</b>  <code>cntl_create()</code> returns this error if the <code>cnt_flags</code> field is not correctly initialized.</p>
006:137	E_CNT_MINMAX	<p><b>Bad Minimum, Maximum, or Value</b>  <code>cntl_create()</code> returns this error if the <code>cnt_min</code>, <code>cnt_max</code>, and <code>cnt_value</code> fields are not correctly ordered. The order must be:  <code>cnt_min &lt;= cnt_value &lt;= cnt_max</code>.</p>
006:138	E_CNT_TYPE	<p><b>Bad Control Type</b></p>

**Table C-11 OS-9 Rave Errors (continued)**

<b>Number</b>	<b>Name</b>	<b>Description</b>
006:140	E_CLIP_DEV	<b>Cannot Find the Clipboard Device in Preferences</b> You tried to load or save the clipboard from a writable media and the device name was not found in the preferences.
006:141	E_CLIP_FULL	<b>Clipboard Is Full</b> You tried to write too many types in the clipboard.
006:142	E_CLIP_TYPE	<b>Type Not Represented in Clipboard</b> <code>clip_getptr()</code> returns this error when the requested type is not in the clipboard.
006:143	E_CLIP_ACC	<b>Clipboard Not Opened for Requested Access</b> You tried to write the clipboard which was opened for read access.
006:144	E_CLIP_CNT	<b>Type Offset Is Greater than Type Count</b> <code>clip_type()</code> returns this error if the type index is out of range of the available types.
006:145	E_CLIP_OPEN	<b>Clipboard Is Currently Not Open</b> You tried to access the clipboard before opening it.

**Table C-11 OS-9 Rave Errors (continued)**

<b>Number</b>	<b>Name</b>	<b>Description</b>
006:146	E_CLIP_INIT	<b>Clipboard Is Not Initialized</b> The clipboard was accessed before the program linked to it.
006:147	E_CLIP_CLOSE	<b>Clipboard Is Currently Not Closed</b> clip_unlink() returns this error if the clipboard was not closed before trying to unlink it.
006:148	E_CLIP_RW	<b>Cannot Rewrite, the Type Is Not in the Clipboard</b> clip_rewrite() returns this error if the type was not previously allocated with the clip_write() function.
006:150	E_HNDLR_UNKNOWN	<b>The Handler Is Unknown</b> hndlr_delete() returns this error if the handler specified is not known.
006:155	E_ATABL_NOENTRY	<b>No Entry Found</b> atbl_delassoc() returns this error when you try to delete an association that does not exist.
006:160	E_BOX_TABLE	<b>Line Table Overflow</b> The specified linetab array is too small to store the offsets of each line start.

**Table C-11 OS-9 Rave Errors (continued)**

<b>Number</b>	<b>Name</b>	<b>Description</b>
006:161	E_BOX_COUNT	<b>Text Too Long (Maximum Is 65535)</b> The maximum number of characters is 65535. This restriction is because line start offsets are coded on short integers.
006:162	E_BOX_TYPE	<b>Bad Type or Type Not Implemented</b>
006:163	E_BOX_MAXL	<b>Attempt to Draw a Line Too Long</b> The maximum number of characters allowed in a line is 1023.
006:164	E_BOX_NOTAB	<b>Need a Line Table</b> If BOX_F_USETAB is set in the type parameter, you must specify the linetab and size parameters.
006:165	E_BOX_NOFONT	<b>Font Not Set in Drawmap</b> The appropriate font(s) should have been activated in the output drawmap.
006:166	E_BOX_RECT	<b>Bad Rectangle</b> The specified rectangle is incorrect.

**Table C-11 OS-9 Rave Errors (continued)**

Number	Name	Description
006:180	E_INIT_VARError	<b>Global Variable Error</b> You passed an illegal global variable ID to <code>gsl_get()</code> or <code>gsl_set()</code> .
006:185	E_INTER_NOMOD	<b>No Preference Module</b> No preference module was linked before using any <code>intl_xxx()</code> function.
006:186	E_INTER_ILLARG	<b>Illegal Argument</b> You passed a bad argument to an internationalization function.
006:190	E_OVL_BADRECT	<b>Bad Rectangle for Overlay</b> The rectangle passed is illegal. For example, <code>ex &lt;= sx</code> or <code>ey &lt;= sy</code> .
006:191	E_OVL_NOTTOP	<b>Overlay Is Not the Top of the Stack</b> <code>ovl_close()</code> returns this error if you try to close an overlay which is not the top of the overlay stack.
006:192	E_OVL_UNKNOWN	<b>Unknown Overlay</b> You tried to access an overlay which was not created.

**Table C-11 OS-9 Rave Errors (continued)**

<b>Number</b>	<b>Name</b>	<b>Description</b>
006:200	E_IND_DEFID	<b>Bad Definition ID</b> The <code>ind_type</code> field was not correctly initialized, or a bad <code>def</code> parameter was passed to <code>ind_def()</code> .
006:201	E_IND_DEFACT	<b>Bad Definition Action</b> You passed a bad <code>action</code> parameter to a definition function.
006:202	E_IND_MINMAX	<b>Bad Minimum, Maximum, or Value</b> The <code>ind_min</code> or <code>ind_max</code> values were not initialized correctly or you tried to set the value of the indicator out of the minimum/maximum range.
006:203	E_IND_BADCOORDS	<b>Bad Coordinates</b> <code>ind_create()</code> returns this error if the coordinates given for the indicator are not valid.
006:204	E_IND_NOCREATE	<b>Indicator Not Created</b> You tried to use an indicator which was not properly created via <code>ind_create()</code> .
006:205	E_IND_BADFLAGS	<b>Bad Flags</b> <code>ind_create()</code> returns this error when two or more mutually exclusive flags are set.

**Table C-11 OS-9 Rave Errors (continued)**

<b>Number</b>	<b>Name</b>	<b>Description</b>
006:206	E_IND_BADPTR	<b>Bad Pointer</b> A bad (NULL) pointer was found where an initialized pointer should be found.
006:207	E_IND_BADDISP	<b>Bad Displacement</b>

## Internet Errors

---

**Table C-12 OS-9 Internet Errors**

Number	Name	Description
007:001	EWOULDBLOCK -or-	<b>I/O Operation Would Block</b> You tried to perform an operation causing a process to block on a socket in non-blocking mode.
	E_IFF_RDONLY	<b>Read-only Path</b> This path is read-only.
007:002	EINPROGRESS -or-	<b>I/O Operation Now in Progress</b> You tried to perform an operation that takes a long time to complete (such as <code>connect()</code> ) on a socket in non-blocking mode.
	E_IFF_WRONLY	<b>Write-only Path</b> This path is write-only.
007:003	EALREADY -or-	<b>Operation Already in Progress</b> An operation was attempted on a non-blocking object that already had an operation in progress.
	E_IFF_ACTFORM	<b>No Active Form</b> No form is active.

**Table C-12 OS-9 Internet Errors (continued)**

<b>Number</b>	<b>Name</b>	<b>Description</b>
007:004	EDESTADDRREQ	<b>Destination Address Required</b> The attempted socket operation requires a destination address.
	-or-	
	E_IFF_READER	<b>Wrong Reader</b> Wrong reader for this type of form.
007:005	EMSGSIZE	<b>Message Too Long</b> A message sent on a socket was larger than the internal message buffer or some other network limit. Messages should be smaller than 32768 bytes.
	-or-	
	E_IFF_NOTIFF	<b>Not IFF</b> Not an IFF file.
007:006	EPROTOTYPE	<b>Protocol Wrong Type for Socket</b> A protocol was specified that does not support the semantics of the socket type requested. For example, an AF_INET UDP protocol as SOCK_STREAM is the wrong protocol type for the socket.
	-or-	
	E_IFF_BADPARAM	<b>Bad Parameters</b>
007:007	ENOPROTOOPT	<b>Bad Protocol Option</b> You specified a bad option or level in getsockopt () or setsockopt ().
	-or-	

**Table C-12 OS-9 Internet Errors (continued)**

<b>Number</b>	<b>Name</b>	<b>Description</b>
	E_IFF_BADCAT	<b>Bad CAT ID</b> Bad CAT ID for <code>iff_open</code> .
007:008	EPROTONOSUPPORT -or-	<b>Protocol Not Supported</b> The requested protocol is not available or not configured for use.
	E_IFF_SIZE_UNKNOWN	<b>Size Unknown</b> Cannot skip because size is unknown.
007:009	ESOCKNOSUPPORT -or-	<b>Socket Type Not Supported</b> The requested socket type is not supported or not configured for use.
	E_IFF_NOT_DATA	<b>Not To the Data Yet</b>
007:010	EOPNOTSUPPORT -or-	<b>Operation Not Supported on Socket</b> For example, <code>accept()</code> on a datagram socket.
	E_IFF_PIPE_SEEK	<b>Bad Seek</b> You attempted to <b>seek back</b> in a pipe.
007:011	EPFNOSUPP -or-	<b>Protocol Family Not Supported</b> The requested protocol family is not currently supported. For example, <code>PF_SNA</code> .

**Table C-12 OS-9 Internet Errors (continued)**

<b>Number</b>	<b>Name</b>	<b>Description</b>
	E_IFF_BADCHUNKSIZE	<b>Bad Chunk Size</b> The fixed size chunk is not the correct size. The reader version may be invalid.
007:012	EAFNOSUPPORT -or-	<b>Protocol Does Not Support This Address Family</b> The current protocol does not support the requested address family. For example, PF_INET and PF_UNIX.
	E_IFF_FPNOTNUM	<b>No Floating Point Conversion</b> Cannot make floating point conversion.
007:013	EADDRINUSE	<b>Address Already in Use</b> Only one use of each address is normally permitted. Wildcard use and connectionless communication are the exceptions.
007:014	EADDRNOTAVAIL	<b>Cannot Assign Requested Address</b> Normally results when you try to create a socket with an address not on this machine.
007:015	ENETDOWN	<b>Network Is Down</b> The network hardware is not accessible.

**Table C-12 OS-9 Internet Errors (continued)**

<b>Number</b>	<b>Name</b>	<b>Description</b>
007:016	ENETUNREACH	<b>Network Is Not Reachable</b> The network is unreachable. Usually caused by network interface hardware that is operational, but not physically connected to the network. Or, the network has no way to reach the destination address.
007:017	ENETRESET	<b>Network Dropped Connection on Reset</b> The host you were connected to crashed and rebooted.
007:018	ECONNABORTED	<b>Software Caused Connection Abort</b> The local (host) machine caused a connection abort.
007:019	ECONNRESET	<b>Peer Reset Connection</b> A peer forcibly closed a connection. This normally results from a loss of the connection on the remote socket due to a time out or reboot.
007:020	ENOBUFS	<b>No Buffer Space Available</b> A socket operation could not be performed because the system lacked sufficient buffer space or a queue was full.

**Table C-12 OS-9 Internet Errors (continued)**

<b>Number</b>	<b>Name</b>	<b>Description</b>
007:021	EISCONN	<b>Socket Is Already Connected</b> You tried to connect an already connected socket. Also caused by a <code>sendto()</code> request on a connected socket to an already connected destination.
007:022	ENOTCONN	<b>Socket Is Not Connected</b> A request to send or receive data was rejected because the socket was not connected or no destination was given with a datagram socket.
007:023	ESHUTDOWN	<b>Cannot Send After Socket Shutdown</b> Socket was shut down, so additional data transmissions are not allowed.
007:024	ETOOMANYREFS	<b>Too Many References</b>
007:025	ETIMEDOUT	<b>Connection Timed Out</b> A <code>connect()</code> or <code>send()</code> request failed because the connected peer did not properly respond after a period of time. The time out period depends on the protocol used.

**Table C-12 OS-9 Internet Errors (continued)**

<b>Number</b>	<b>Name</b>	<b>Description</b>
007:026	ECONNREFUSED	<b>Target Refused Connection</b> No connection could be established because the target machine actively refused it. This usually results from trying to connect to a service that is inactive on the target host.
007:027	EBUFTOOSMALL	<b>Buffer Too Small for F\$Mbuf Operation</b> The specified buffer cannot be used to support F\$Mbuf (SysMbuf).
007:028	ESMODEXISTS	<b>Socket Module Already Attached</b> You tried to attach a socket module when it was already successfully attached.
007:029	ENOTSOCK	<b>Path is Not a Socket</b> You tried to perform a socket function on a path which is not a socket.
007:030	EHOSTUNREACH	<b>No Route to Host</b>
007:031	EHOSTDOWN	<b>Host is Down</b>

# ISDN Errors

---

**Table C-13 OS-9 ISDN Errors**

Number	Name	Description
008:001	E\$LnkDwn	<p><b>Line Down or Layer 1 Error on Attach</b></p> <p>Check to make sure the line is plugged in or check to see if there was a hardware failure.</p>
008:002	E\$Conn	<p><b>Connection Error - Connection Not Made</b></p> <p>An error occurred when the connection to the call was trying to be made. Possibilities include maximum number of connections have already been made or the connection requested is not possible.</p>
008:003	E\$RxThread	<p><b>Receive Thread Incoming Packet Handler Error</b></p> <p>There may be something in the received packet that the receive thread process cannot identify. It may be due to a non-existent SAPI or TEI. Or the driver has sent an incorrect receive packet to the receive thread.</p>

**Table C-13 OS-9 ISDN Errors (continued)**

<b>Number</b>	<b>Name</b>	<b>Description</b>
008:004	E\$ME	<b>Management Entity Error</b> There is an error with the management entity. This could be due to a packet that the management entity software cannot interpret or requests to the management entity are not understood or cannot be carried out.
008:005	E\$SAPI	<b>Unrecognized Service Access Point Identifier (SAPI)</b> The SAPI of the virtual unit or incoming message from the network is not a legal value.
008:006	E\$TEI	<b>Terminal Endpoint Identifier (TEI) Error</b> The TEI of the virtual unit, TEI list, or incoming message from the network is not valid.
008:007	E\$Max_TEI	<b>Maximum Number of Terminal Endpoints in Use</b> You tried to open a new virtual unit, but the number of TEIs currently open is already at the maximum. The network places this restriction on the system of eight TEIs for multipoint lines.

**Table C-13 OS-9 ISDN Errors (continued)**

Number	Name	Description
008:008	E\$TState	<b>Illegal Layer 2 State</b> The number of the TEI state in the virtual unit is not a legal TEI state at layer 2. Valid TEI states are 1-8. Any other states are illegal.
008:009	E\$TEI_Denied	<b>Terminal Endpoint (TEI) Initialization Denied</b> The network has denied the TEI request made by the file manager when opening a path to the device.
008:010	E\$Primitive	<b>Unrecognized Primitive</b> A primitive has been sent to the layer 3 part of the file manager that is not understood or is an incorrect primitive for the state the call is currently in for layer 3.
008:011	E\$L2In	<b>Layer 2 Error on Incoming Message</b> A message has come into the layer 2 part of the file manager that cannot be interpreted. This may be due to a message that is not understandable, or a message that cannot be acted on due to the state of the layer 2 state machine.

**Table C-13 OS-9 ISDN Errors (continued)**

<b>Number</b>	<b>Name</b>	<b>Description</b>
008:012	E\$Peer_Busy	<b>Peer Receiver (Far End) Busy Condition</b> The far end has indicated it is busy and you should not send any more data until the far end can take more. This is analogous to X-ON/X-OFF protocol in serial communications.
008:013	E\$K	<b>Maximum Number of Outstanding Messages Exceeded</b> The maximum number of outstanding frames (K) have been sent without the far end's acknowledgment. For the D channel and other reliable data links, this error indicates you should re-initialize layer 2.
008:014	E\$MaxCRef	<b>Maximum Number of Call References in Use</b> The maximum number of call references are already in use. The path must wait until a call hangs up before trying again.
008:015	E\$CRef	<b>Call Reference Does Not Exist</b> This error usually occurs when the path references a non-existent call.

**Table C-13 OS-9 ISDN Errors (continued)**

<b>Number</b>	<b>Name</b>	<b>Description</b>
008:016	E\$CallProg	<b>Call Progress State Error</b> An error occurred with the call progress state machine of layer 3. Either an inappropriate action for the state is requested, or the call progress number does not correspond to a legal layer 3 state.
008:017	E\$Rcvr	<b>Receiver Assignment/Removal Error</b> An error occurred when you tried to assign or remove a path from being a receiver. This error usually occurs when trying to assign when there is already a path with the same layer 3 parameters assigned on the same virtual unit.
008:018	E\$REQDENIED	<b>Request Denied by Far End</b>
008:019	E\$RXSTART	<b>Receive Thread Did Not Start</b>
008:020	E\$NOSTACK	<b>Last Driver on Path's Stack</b>
008:021	E\$BTMSTK	<b>Attempt to Pop Last Driver</b>
008:022	E\$NPBNULL	<b>Notify Param Block is NULL</b>
008:023	E\$PPS_NOTFND	<b>Per Path Storage Not Found</b>
008:024	E\$STKFULL	<b>Path's stack Array is Full</b>

**Table C-13 OS-9 ISDN Errors (continued)**

<b>Number</b>	<b>Name</b>	<b>Description</b>
008:025	E\$MBNOTINST	<b>Sysmuf not Installed</b>
008:026	E\$TMRNTFND	<b>Timer Not Found</b>
008:027	E\$GETIME	<b>Get Time Error</b>
008:028	E\$TIMERINT	<b>Timer Interrupt</b>
008:029	E\$RXMB_NODEVENTRY	<b>No Device Entry in Mbuf</b>
008:030	E\$PGM+TBLBSY	<b>PSI/SI Table is in Use</b>
008:031	E\$TBLOVF	<b>Too Many Tables Being Read</b>
008:032	E\$PGM_TBLNFND	<b>Table not Found</b>
008:033	E\$PGM_NFND	<b>Program not Found</b>
008:034	E\$NOPLAY	<b>No Program Currently Playing</b>
008:035	E\$NODNDRVR	<b>No Down Driver</b>
008:040	E\$RXMB_ERR	<b>Receive Data Error Base</b>



---

# Appendix D: OS-9 for 68K System Calls

---

# System Calls

---

System calls allow you to communicate between the OS-9 operating system and assembly language level programs. There are three general categories of system calls:

- User-state
- I/O
- System-state

All system calls have a mnemonic name for easy reference:

- User and system state functions start with `F$`
- I/O related functions begin with `I$`

The mnemonic names are defined in the relocatable library file `usr.l` or `sys.l`. You should link these files with your programs.

The OS-9 I/O system calls are simple to use because the calling program does not have to allocate and set up file control blocks, sector buffers, etc. Instead, OS-9 returns a path number word when you open a file/device. You can use this path number in subsequent I/O requests to identify the file/device until the path is closed. OS-9 internally allocates and maintains its own data structures; you never have to deal with them.

System-state system calls are privileged and can only execute while OS-9 is in system state (when it is processing another service request, executing a file manager, device driver, etc.). System state functions are included in this manual primarily for the benefit of those programmers who are writing device drivers and other system-level applications.



---

## For More Information

For a full description of system state and its uses, refer to **Chapter 2: The Kernel**.

---

System calls are performed by loading the MPU registers with the appropriate parameters and executing a Trap #0 instruction, immediately followed by a constant word (the request code). Function results (if any) are returned in the MPU registers after OS-9 has processed the service request.

All system calls use a standard convention for reporting errors; if an error occurred, the carry bit of the condition code register is set and register `d1.w` contains an appropriate error code, permitting a BCS or BCC instruction immediately following the system call to branch on error/no error.

Here is an example system call for the `Close` service request:

```
MOVE.W Pathnum (a6),d0
TRAP   #0
DC.W   I$Close
BCS.S  Error
```

Using the assembler's `OS9` directive simplifies the call:

```
MOVE.W Pathnum (a6),d0
OS9    I$Close
BCS.S  Error
```

Some system calls generate errors themselves; these are listed in the following pages as *POSSIBLE ERRORS*. If the returned error code does not match any of the given possible errors, then it was probably returned by another system call made by the main call.

The *SEE ALSO* listing for each service request shows related service requests and/or documentation that may yield more information about the request.

In the following system call descriptions, registers not explicitly specified as input or output parameters are not altered. Strings passed as parameters are normally terminated by a null byte.

## System Calls and the System Environment

The availability of some of the system calls described in these sections varies according to the kernel environment you are using (the development kernel or the atomic kernel). In addition, some of these system calls are implemented in modules other than the kernel (for example, the `I$` calls are implemented by IOMan).

The system call descriptions in the following pages apply to a development kernel environment. When system call functionality differs between development and atomic environments, the differences are noted in the description. System calls implemented by modules other than the kernel are also noted.

The following tables list each system call, the module (the kernel, IOMan, SSM, or SysCache) implementing it, and points out calls with development/atomic environment differences.



---

### Note

`F$DExec`, `F$DExit`, and `F$DFork` are not available under the atomic kernel.

There are functional differences between the development and atomic kernel for `F$SysID`.

---

**Table D-1 Kernel System Calls**

---

<code>F\$Alarm</code> (User-State)	<code>F\$AllPD</code>	<code>F\$AllPrc</code>	<code>F\$AProc</code>
<code>F\$Chain</code>	<code>F\$CmpNam</code>	<code>F\$CpyMem</code>	<code>F\$CRC</code>
<code>F\$DatMod</code>	<code>F\$DExec</code>	<code>F\$DExit</code>	<code>F\$DFork</code>
<code>F\$DelPrc</code>	<code>F\$Exit</code>	<code>F\$Event</code>	<code>F\$FindPD</code>

**Table D-1 Kernel System Calls (continued)**


---

F\$FIRQ	F\$Fork	F\$FModul	F\$GBlkMp
F\$GModDr	F\$GPrDBT	F\$GPrDsc	F\$GProcP
F\$Gregor	F\$Icpt	F\$Icpt	F\$IIRQ
F\$Julian	F\$Link	F\$Move	F\$Mem
F\$NProc	F\$PrsNam	F\$RetPD	F\$RTE
F\$Sema	F\$Send	F\$SetCRC	F\$SetSys
F\$Sigmask	F\$SigReset	F\$Sleep	F\$SPrior
F\$SRqMem	F\$SRqCMem	F\$SRtMem	F\$SSvc
F\$STrap	F\$STime	F\$SUser	F\$SysDbg
F\$SysID	F\$Time	F\$TLink	F\$Trans
F\$UnLink	F\$UnLoad	F\$Wait	F\$UAcct
F\$VModul			

---

**Table D-2 IOMan System Calls**


---

F\$AllBit	F\$DelBit	F\$IOQu	F\$IODEl
F\$Load	F\$PErr	F\$SchBit	I\$Attach
I\$Create	I\$ChgDir	I\$Close	I\$Delete
I\$Detach	I\$Dup	I\$GetStt	I\$MakDir

**Table D-2 IOMan System Calls (continued)**

---

I\$Open	I\$Read	I\$ReadLn	I\$Seek
I\$SetStt	I\$SGetSt	I\$Write	I\$WritLn

---

**Table D-3 SSM System Calls**

---

F\$AllTsk	F\$ChkMem	F\$DelTsk	F\$GSPUMp
F\$Permit (User-State)	F\$Protect (User-State)		

---

**Table D-4 SysCache System Calls**

---

F\$Cctl
---------

---

**F\$Alarm (System-State)**

Set Alarm Clock

**ASM Call**

OS9 F\$Alarm

**Input**

d0.l = Alarm ID (or zero)  
 d1.w = Function code  
 d2.l = Reserved, must be zero  
 d3.l = Time interval (or time)  
 d4.l = Date (when using absolute time)  
 (a0) = Register image

**Output**

d0.l = Alarm ID

**Error Output**

cc = Carry bit set  
 d1.w = Appropriate error code

**Attributes**

State: System

**Description**

When called from system state, F\$Alarm executes a system-state subroutine at a specified time. It is provided for such functions as turning off a disk drive motor if the disk is not accessed for a period of time.

The register image pointed to by register (a0) contains an image of the registers to be passed to the alarm subroutine. The subroutine entry point must be placed in R\$pc(a0). The register image is copied by the F\$Alarm request into another buffer area and may be re-used immediately for other purposes.

You can use the returned alarm ID to delete an alarm request.

The time interval is the number of system clock ticks (or 256ths of a second) to wait before the alarm subroutine is executed. If the high order bit is set, the low 31 bits are interpreted as 256ths of a second.



---

## Note

All times are rounded up to the nearest clock tick.

---

The system automatically deletes a process' pending alarms when the process dies.

The alarm function code is used to select one of the related alarm functions. Not all input parameters are always needed; each function is described in the following pages.

System-state alarm subroutines must conform to the following conventions:

### Input

d0-d7 = caller's registers (R\$d0-R\$d7(a5))  
(a0)-(a3) = caller's registers (R\$a0-R\$a3(a5))  
(a4) = system process descriptor pointer\*  
(a5) = ptr to register image  
(a6) = system global storage pointer

### Output

cc = carry set  
d1.w = error code if error



---

## Note

The user number in the system process descriptor is temporarily changed to the user number of original F\$Alarm request. You do not have to preserve the registers d0-d7 and (a0) - (a3).

---

**Note**

The system process executes system-state alarms at priority 65535. They may never perform any function resulting in any kind of queuing, such as `F$Sleep`, `F$Wait`, `F$Load`, `F$Event (Ev$Wait)`, `F$IOQu`, or `F$Fork`. When such functions are required, the caller must provide a separate process to perform the function, rather than an alarm.

**WARNING**

If an alarm execution routine suffers any kind of bus trap, address trap, or other hardware-related error, the system crashes.

The following `F$Alarm` system-state function codes are supported:

**Table 7-4** `F$Alarm` Function Codes

Name	Description
<code>A\$AtDate (System-State)</code>	Execute a subroutine at a Gregorian date/time.
<code>A\$AtJul (System-State)</code>	Execute a subroutine at Julian date/time.
<code>A\$Cycle (System-State)</code>	Execute a subroutine at specified time intervals.
<code>A\$Delete (System-State)</code>	Remove a pending alarm request.
<code>A\$Set (System-State)</code>	Execute a subroutine after a specified time interval.

## Possible Errors

E\$BPAddr

E\$MemFul

E\$NoRAM

E\$Param

E\$UnkSvc

## See Also

F\$Alarm (User-State)

## F\$Alarm (User-State)

### Set Alarm Clock

---

#### ASM Call

OS9 F\$Alarm

#### Input

d0.l = Alarm ID (or zero)  
d1.w = Alarm function code  
d2.l = Signal code  
d3.l = Time interval (or time)  
d4.l = Date (when using absolute time)

#### Output

d0.l = Alarm ID

#### Error Output

cc = carry bit set  
d1.w = error code if error

#### Attributes

State: User

#### Description

F\$Alarm creates an asynchronous software alarm clock timer. The timer sends a signal to the calling process when the specified time period has elapsed. A process may have multiple alarm requests pending.

The time interval is the number of system clock ticks (or 256ths of a second) to wait before an alarm signal is sent. If the high order bit is set, the low 31 bits are interpreted as 256ths of a second.



---

## Note

All times are rounded up to the nearest clock tick.

---

The system automatically deletes a process' pending alarm when the process dies.

The alarm function code selects one of the several related alarm functions. Not all input parameters are always needed; each function is described in detail in the following pages.

OS-9 supports the following user-state alarm function codes:

**Table D-5 Alarm Function Codes**

<b>Name</b>	<b>Description</b>
<code>A\$AtDate (User-State)</code>	Send a signal at Gregorian date/time.
<code>A\$AtJul (User-State)</code>	Send a signal at Julian date/time.
<code>A\$Cycle (User-State)</code>	Send a signal at specified time intervals.
<code>A\$Cycle (User-State)</code>	Remove a pending alarm request.
<code>A\$Set (User-State)</code>	Send a signal after specified time interval.

## Possible Errors

`E$BPAddr`

`E$MemFul`

`E$NoRAM`

`E$Param`

E\$UnkSvc

**See Also**

[F\\$Alarm \(System-State\)](#)

## A\$AtDate (System-State)

Execute System-State Subroutine at Gregorian Date/Time

---

### Input

d0.l = Reserved, must be zero  
d1.w = A\$AtDate function code  
d2.l = Reserved, must be zero  
d3.l = Time (00hhmmss)  
d4.l = Date (YYYYMMDD)  
(a0) = Register image

### Output

d0.l = alarm ID

### Error Output

cc = carry bit set  
d1.w = appropriate error code

### Attributes

State: System

### Description

A\$AtDate executes a system-state subroutine at a specific date and time.



### Note

A\$AtDate only allows you to specify time to the nearest second. However, it does adjust if the system's date and time have changed (via F\$STime). The alarm subroutine executes anytime the system date/time becomes greater than or equal to the alarm time.

---

## A\$AtDate (User-State)

Send Signal at Gregorian Date/Time

---

### Input

d0.l = Reserved, must be zero  
d1.w = A\$AtDate function code  
d2.l = Signal code  
d3.l = Time (00hhmmss)  
d4.l = Date (YYYYMMDD)

### Output

d0.l = Alarm ID

### Error Output

cc = carry bit set  
d1.w = error code if error

### Attributes

State: User

### Description

A\$AtDate sends a signal to the caller at a specific date and time.



---

### Note

A\$AtDate only allows you to specify time to the nearest second. However, it does adjust if the system's date and time have changed (via F\$STime). The alarm signal is sent anytime the system date/time becomes greater than or equal to the alarm time.

---

## A\$AtJul (System-State)

### Execute System-State Subroutine at Julian Date/Time

---

#### Input

d0.l = Reserved, must be zero  
d1.w = A\$AtDate or A\$AtJul function code  
d2.l = Reserved, must be zero  
d3.l = Time (seconds after midnight)  
d4.l = Date (Julian day number)  
(a0) = Register image

#### Output

d0.l = alarm ID

#### Error Output

cc = carry bit set  
d1.w = appropriate error code

#### Attributes

State: System

#### Description

A\$AtJul executes a system-state subroutine at a specific Julian date and time.



#### Note

A\$AtJul function only allows time to be specified to the nearest second. However, it does adjust if the system's date and time have changed (via F\$STime). The alarm subroutine is executed anytime the system date/time becomes greater than or equal to the alarm time.

---

## A\$AtJul (User-State)

### Send Signal at Julian Date/Time

---

#### Input

d0.l = Reserved, must be zero  
d1.w = A\$AtDate or A\$AtJul function code  
d2.l = Signal code  
d3.l = Time (seconds after midnight)  
d4.l = Date (Julian day number)

#### Output

d0.l = Alarm ID

#### Error Output

cc = carry bit set  
d1.w = error code if error

#### Attributes

State: User

#### Description

A\$AtJul sends a signal to the caller at a specific Julian date and time.



---

#### Note

A\$AtJul only allows you to specify time to the nearest second. However, it does adjust if the system's date and time have changed (via F\$STime). The alarm signal is sent anytime the system date/time becomes greater than or equal to the alarm time.

---

## A\$Cycle (System-State)

Execute System-State Subroutine Every N Ticks/Seconds

---

### Input

d0.l = reserved, must be zero  
d1.w = A\$Cycle function code  
d2.l = reserved, must be zero  
d3.l = time interval

### Output

d0.l = alarm ID

### Error Output

cc = carry bit set  
d1.w = appropriate error code

### Attributes

State: System

### Description

The cycle function is similar to the set function, except the alarm is reset after it is sent. This causes periodic execution of a system-state subroutine.

Keep cyclic system-state alarms as fast as possible and schedule them with as long a cycle as possible to avoid consuming a large portion of available CPU time.

## A\$Cycle (User-State)

Send Signal Every N Ticks/Seconds

---

### Input

d0.l = reserved, must be zero  
d1.w = A\$Cycle function code  
d3.l = time interval (N)  
(a0) = Register Image

### Output

d0.l = Alarm ID

### Error Output

cc = carry bit set  
d1.w = error code if error

### Attributes

State: User

### Description

A\$Cycle sends one signal after the specified time interval has elapsed. A\$Cycle is similar to the [A\\$Set \(User-State\)](#) function, except the alarm is reset after it is sent, to provide a recurring periodic signal.

## A\$Delete (System-State)

Remove Pending Alarm Request

---

### Input

d0.l = Alarm ID (or zero)  
d1.w = A\$Delete function code

### Output

None

### Attributes

State: System

### Description

A\$Delete removes a cyclic alarm or any unexpired alarm. If 0 is passed as the alarm ID, all pending alarm requests for the current process are removed.

## A\$Delete (User-State)

### Remove Pending Alarm Request

---

#### Input

d0.l = Alarm ID (or zero)  
d1.w = A\$Delete function code

#### Output

None

#### Error Output

cc = carry bit set  
d1.w = error code if error

#### Attributes

State: User

#### Description

A\$Delete removes a cyclic alarm, or any unexpired alarm. If 0 is passed as the alarm ID, all pending alarm requests are removed.



---

#### Note

If you are running a cyclic alarm, you cannot delete the alarm from within the context of the alarm itself.

---

## A\$Set (System-State)

### Execute System-State Subroutine After Specified Time Interval

---

#### Input

d0.l = Reserved, must be zero  
d1.w = A\$Set function code  
d2.w = Reserved, must be zero  
d3.l = Time Interval  
(a0) = Register image

#### Output

d0.l = Alarm ID

#### Error Output

cc = carry bit set to one  
d1.w = Error code

#### Attributes

State: System

#### Description

A\$Set executes a system-state subroutine after the specified time interval has elapsed. The time interval may be specified in system clock ticks, or 256ths of a second. The minimum time interval allowed is two system clock ticks.

## A\$Set (User-State)

### Send Signal After Specified Time Interval

---

#### Input

d0.l = Reserved, must be zero  
d1.w = A\$Set function code  
d2.w = Signal code  
d3.l = Time Interval

#### Output

d0.l = Alarm ID

#### Error Output

cc = carry bit set  
d1.w = error code if error

#### Attributes

State: User

#### Description

A\$Set sends one signal after the specified time interval has elapsed. The time interval may be specified in system clock ticks, or 256ths of a second.

**ASM Call**

```
OS9 F$AllBit
```

**Input**

```
d0.w = Bit number of first bit to set
```

```
d1.w = Bit count (number of bits to set)
```

```
(a0) = Base address of an allocation bit map
```

**Attributes**

```
State: User
```

**Output**

```
None
```

**Error Output**

```
cc = carry bit set
```

```
d1.w = error code if error
```

**Description**

F\$AllBit sets bits in the allocation map that were found by F\$SchBit, and are now allocated. Bit numbers range from 0 to  $n-1$ , where  $n$  is the number of bits in the allocation bit map.



---

**Note**

The IOMan module implements F\$AllBit.

---

In some applications you must allocate and de-allocate segments of a fixed resource, such as memory. One convenient way is to set up a map describing which blocks are available or in use. Each bit in the map represents one block.

- If the bit is set, the block is in use
- If the bit is clear, the block is available

The `F$AllBit`, `F$DelBit`, and `F$SchBit` system calls perform the elementary bitmap operations of:

- Finding a free segment
- Allocating it
- Returning it when it is no longer needed

RBF uses these routines to manage cluster allocation on disks. They are accessible to users because they are occasionally useful.

### See Also

`F$DelBit`

`F$SchBit`

**ASM Call**

OS9 F\$AllPD

**Input**

(a0) = process/path table pointer

**Output**

d0.w = process/path number

(a1) = pointer to process/path descriptor

**Error Output**

cc = Carry bit set

d1.w = error code if error

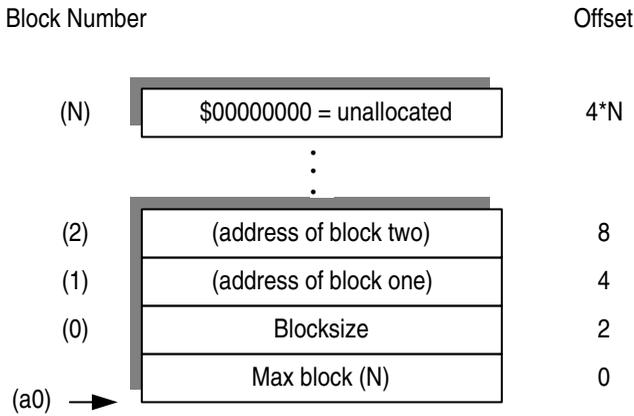
**Attributes**

State: System

**Description**

F\$AllPD allocates fixed-length blocks of system memory. It allocates and initializes (to zeros) a block of storage and returns its address.

It can be used with [F\\$FindPD](#) and [F\\$RetPD](#) to perform simple memory management. The system uses these routines to keep track of memory blocks used for process and path descriptors. They can be used generally for similar purposes by creating a map table for the data allocations. The table must be initialized as shown in [Figure D-1](#).

**Figure D-1 Map Table Initialization****See Also**[F\\$FindPD](#)[F\\$RetPD](#)**Note**


---

This is a privileged system-state service request.

---

**ASM Call**

OS9 F\$AllPrc

**Input**

None

**Output**

(a2) = Process Descriptor pointer

**Error Output**

cc = Carry bit set.

d1.w = Appropriate error code.

**Attributes**

State: System

**Description**

F\$AllPrc allocates and initializes a process descriptor. The address of the descriptor is kept in the process descriptor table. Initialization consists of:

- Clearing the descriptor
- Setting up the state as system-state
- Marking as unallocated as much of the MMU image as the system allows

On systems without memory management/protection, this is a direct call to [F\\$AllPD](#).

**Possible Errors**

E\$PrcFul

## See Also

[F\\$AllPD](#)



---

### Note

This is a privileged system-state service request.

---

**ASM Call**

OS9 F\$AllTsk

**Input**

(a4) = current process descriptor pointer to allocate

**Error Output**

cc = carry bit set

d1.w = error code if error

**Attributes**

State: System

**Description**

F\$AllTsk is called by the kernel just before a process becomes active to insure the protection hardware is ready for the process.

**Note**

The system-state code making this call should know using the `Trap 0` mechanism (OS9 F\$) to call this routine causes the current process to be specified, regardless of the value in (a4). If you need to specify a process other than the current one, use the system dispatch tables to make the call directly to the system routine, with the following input parameter:

(a4) = process descriptor pointer

The System Security Module (SSM) implements F\$AllTsk.

---

**See Also**

[F\\$DelTsk](#)

**ASM Call**

OS9 F\$AProc

**Input**

(a0) = Address of process descriptor

**Output**

None

**Error Output**

cc = Carry bit set

d1.w = Appropriate error code

**Attributes**

State: System

**Description**

F\$AProc inserts a process into the active process queue so it may be scheduled for execution. All processes already in the active process queue are aged. The age of the specified process is set to its priority. The process is then inserted according to its relative age. If the new process has a higher priority than the currently active process, the active process gives up the remainder of its time-slice and the new process runs immediately.

**See Also**

[F\\$NProc](#)

**Process Scheduling** in **Chapter 2: The Kernel**



---

**Note**

This is a privileged system-state service request.

---

## ASM Call

OS9 F\$CCtl

## Input

d0.l = desired cache control operation

## Output

None

## Error Output

cc = carry bit set

d1.w = error code if error

## Attributes

State: User

## Description

F\$CCtl performs operations on the system instruction and/or data caches, if there are any.

If d0.l is 0, the system instruction and data caches are flushed. Non-super-group, user-state processes may perform this generic operation.



---

## Note

The `syscache` module implements F\$CCtl.

---

Only system-state processes (for example, device driver) and super-group processes may perform precise operation of `F$CCt1`. The following bits are defined in `d0.1` for precise operation:

**Table D-6** `F$CCt1` Bits

Bit	If Set
0	Enable data cache.
1	Disable data cache.
2	Flush data cache.
4	Enable instruction cache.
5	Disable instruction cache.
6	Flush instruction cache.

All other bits are reserved. If any reserved bit is set, an `E$Param` error is returned.

Any program building or changing executable code in memory should flush the instruction cache by `F$CCt1` before executing the new code. This is necessary because the hardware instruction cache is not updated by data (write) accesses and may therefore contain the unchanged instruction(s). For example, if a subroutine builds an OS-9 system call on its stack, the `F$CCt1` system call to flush the instruction cache must execute before executing the temporary instructions.



### Note

The cache should be flushed before trying to disable the data cache.

## Possible Error

E\$Param

**F\$Chain****Load and Execute New Primary Module****ASM Call**

OS9 F\$Chain

**Input**

d0.w = desired module type/language (must be program/object or 0=any)  
 d1.l = additional memory size  
 d2.l = parameter size  
 d3.w = number of I/O paths to copy  
 d4.w = priority  
 (a0) = module name ptr  
 (a1) = parameter ptr

**Output**

None. F\$Chain does not return to the calling process.

**Error Output**

cc = carry bit set  
 d1.w = error code if error

**Attributes**

State: User

**Description**

F\$Chain executes an entirely new program, but without the overhead of creating a new process. It is similar to a Fork command followed by an Exit. F\$Chain effectively resets the calling process' program and data memory areas and begins executing a new primary module. Open paths are not closed or otherwise affected.

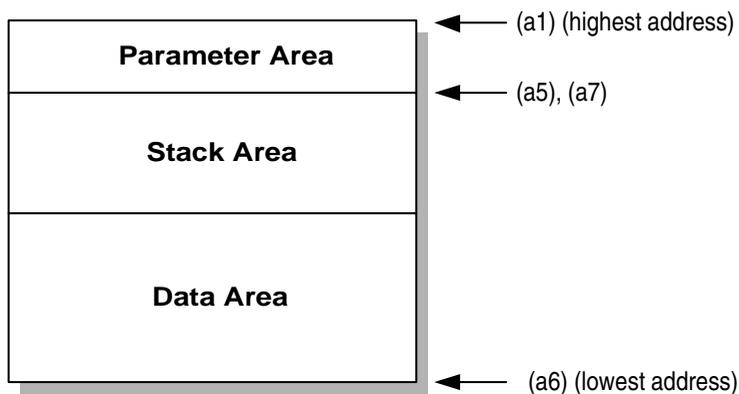
Chain executes as follows:

- Unlink the process' old primary module.

- The system parses the name string of the new process' primary module (the program to be executed). Next, the system module directory is searched to see if a module of the same name and type/language is already in memory. If so, the module is linked. If not, the name string is used as the pathlist of a file which is to be loaded into memory. The first module in this file is linked.
- Reconfigure the data memory area to the specified size in the new primary module's header.
- Erase intercepts and any pending signals.

**Figure D-2** shows how `Chain` sets up the data memory area and registers for the new module (these are identical to `F$Fork`).

**Figure D-2 Data Memory Area and Registers in Child Process**



The following registers are passed to the child process:

**Table D-7 Registers Passed to the Child Process**

Register	Description
sr	n000, where: n = 0 for non-MSP systems n = 1 for MSP systems
pc	Module entry point
d0.w	Process ID
d1.l	Group/user number
d2.w	Priority
d3.w	Number of I/O paths inherited
d4.l	Undefined
d5.l	Parameter size
d6.l	Total initial memory allocation
d7.l	Undefined
(a0)	Undefined
(a1)	Top of memory pointer
(a2)	Undefined
(a3)	Primary (forked) module pointer
(a4)	Undefined

**Table D-7 Registers Passed to the Child Process (continued)**

Register	Description
(a5)	Parameter pointer
(a6)	Static storage (data area) base pointer
(a7)	Stack pointer (same as (a5))



### Note

(a6) is actually biased by \$8000, but this can usually be ignored because the linker biases all data references by -\$8000. However, it may be significant to note when debugging programs.

The minimum overall data area size is 256 bytes. Address registers point to even addresses.



### Note

Most errors occurring during the `Chain` are returned as an exit status to the parent of the process doing the chain.

### Possible Error

`E$NEMod`

### See Also

`F$Fork`

`F$Load`

## F\$ChkMem

### Check Access Permissions

---

#### ASM Call

OS9 F\$ChkMem

#### Input

d0.l = size of area in bytes

d1.b = permission requested (Read\_/Write\_/Exec\_)

(a2) = address of area to check

(a4) = process descriptor requesting access

#### Error Output

cc = carry bit set

d1.w = error code (E\$BPAddr) if error (access denied)

#### Attributes

State: System

#### Description

F\$ChkMem is called by system routines prior to accessing data at the specified address on behalf of a process to determine if the process has access to the specified memory block.

F\$ChkMem must check the process' protection image to determine if access to the specified memory area is permitted. F\$ChkMem is called by system state routines that may access memory (such as I\$Read and I\$Write) to verify the user process itself has access to the requested memory. This software check is necessary because the protection hardware is expected to be disabled for system state routines.



---

## Note

If the current system call being checked was made from system-state, you should not make `F$ChkMem` calls, as system-state code is expected to have access to all system memory.

The System Security Module (SSM) implements `F$ChkMem`.

The system-state code making this call should know using the `Trap 0` mechanism (`OS9 F$`) to call this routine causes the current process to be specified, regardless of the value in `(a4)`. If you need to specify a process other than the current one, use the system dispatch tables to make the call directly to the system routine, with the following input parameters:

- `d0.l` = size of area in bytes
  - `d1.b` = permission requested (`Read_/Write_/Exec_`)
  - `(a2)` = address of area to check
  - `(a4)` = process descriptor requesting access
-

**F\$CmpNam**

## Compare Two Names

**ASM Call**

OS9 F\$CmpNam

**Input**

d1.w = Length of pattern string  
 (a0) = Pointer to pattern string  
 (a1) = Pointer to target string

**Output**

cc = Carry bit clear if the strings match

**Error Output**

cc = carry bit set  
 d1.w = error code if error

**Attributes**

State: User

**Description**

F\$CmpNam compares a target name to a source pattern to determine if they are equal. Upper and lower case are considered to match. Two wildcard characters are recognized in the pattern string:

- Question mark (?) matches any single character
- Asterisk (\*) matches any string

The target name must be terminated by a null byte.

**Possible Errors**

E\$Differ	The names do not match.
E\$StkOvf	The pattern is too complex.

### ASM Call

OS9 F\$CpyMem

### Input

d0.w = process ID of external memory's owner

d1.l = number of bytes to copy

(a0) = address of memory in external process to copy

(a1) = caller's destination buffer pointer

### Output

None

### Error Output

cc = carry bit set

d1.w = error code if error

### Attributes

State: User

### Description

F\$CpyMem copies external memory into your buffer for inspection. You can use F\$CpyMem to copy portions of the system's address space. This is especially helpful in examining modules. You can view any memory in the system with F\$CpyMem.

### See Also

[F\\$Move](#)

**F\$CRC**

## Generate CRC

**ASM Call**

```
OS9 F$CRC
```

**Input**

```
d0.l = Data byte count  
d1.l = CRC accumulator  
(a0) = Pointer to data
```

**Output**

```
d1.l = Updated CRC accumulator
```

**Error Output**

```
cc = carry bit set  
d1.w = error code if error
```

**Attributes**

```
State: User
```

**Description**

F\$CRC generates or checks the CRC (cyclic redundancy check) values of sections of memory. Compilers, assemblers, or other module generators use F\$CRC to generate a valid module CRC.

If the CRC of a new module is to be generated, the CRC is accumulated over the entire module, excluding the CRC itself. The accumulated CRC is complemented and then stored in the correct position in the module.

You can calculate the CRC starting at the source address over a specified number of bytes. It is not necessary to cover an entire module in one call, since the CRC may be accumulated over several calls. The CRC accumulator must be initialized to -1 before the first F\$CRC call for any particular module because `accum` is an `int32` value.

An easier method of checking an existing module's CRC is to perform the calculation on the entire module, including the module CRC. The CRC accumulator contains the CRC constant bytes if the module CRC is correct. The CRC constant is defined in `sys.l` and `usr.l` as `CRCCon`. Its value is `$00800fe3`.



---

## Note

The CRC value is three bytes long, in a four-byte field. To generate a valid module CRC, the caller must include the byte preceding the CRC in the check. This byte must be initialized to 0. For convenience, if a data pointer of 0 is passed, the CRC is updated with one zero data byte. `F$CRC` always returns `$ff` in the most significant byte of `d1`, so `d1.l` may be directly stored (after complement) in the last four bytes of a module as the correct CRC.

---

## See Also

The section on the [The CRC Value](#) in [Chapter 1: System Overview](#).

**F\$DatMod**

## Create Data Module

**ASM Call**

OS9 F\$DatMod

**Input**

d0.l = size of data required (not including header or CRC)  
d1.w = desired attr/revision  
d2.w = desired access permission  
d3.w = desired type/language (optional)  
d4.l = memory color type (optional)  
(a0) = module name string ptr

**Output**

d0.w = module type/language  
d1.w = module attr/revision  
(a0) = updated name string ptr  
(a1) = module data ptr ('execution' entry)  
(a2) = module header ptr

**Error Output**

cc = carry bit set  
d1.w = error code if error

**Attributes**

State: User

**Description**

F\$DatMod creates a data module with the specified attribute/revision and clears the data portion of the module. The module is initially created with a CRC value of 0 and entered into the system module directory. Several processes can communicate with each other using a shared data module.

Be careful not to modify the data module's header or name string to avoid the possibility of the module becoming unknown to the system.

To utilize the optional parameters (`d3.l` and `d4.l`) set the most significant bit of `d2.w` (`0x8000`), the specified module permissions. If that bit is not set, the default type will be `MT_DATA`, the default language will be `ML_ANY`, and the default memory color will be `MEM_ANY`.



---

## Note

The module created contains at least `d0.l` usable data bytes, but may be somewhat larger. The module itself is larger by at least the size of the module header and CRC, and rounded up to the nearest system memory allocation boundary.

---

## Possible Errors

`E$BNam`

`E$MemFul`

`E$NORAM`

## See Also

`F$Move`

`F$SetCRC`

**F\$DelBit**De-allocate in Bit Map

---

**ASM Call**

OS9 F\$DelBit

**Input**

d0.w = Bit number of first bit to clear  
d1.w = Bit count (number of bits to clear)  
(a0) = Base address of an allocation bit map

**Output**

None

**Error Output**

cc = carry bit set  
d1.w = error code if error

**Attributes**

State: User

**Description**

F\$DelBit clears bits in the allocation bit map that were previously allocated and are now free for general use. Bit numbers range from 0 to n-1, where n is the number of bits in the allocation bit map.



---

**Note**

The IOMan module implements F\$DelBit.

---

**See Also**[F\\$AllBit](#)

F\$CpyMem

F\$SchBit

**F\$DExec**

## Execute Debugged Program

**ASM Call**

OS9 F\$DExec

**Input**

d0.w = process ID of child to execute  
d1.l = number of instructions to execute  
      (0 = continuous)  
d2.w = number of breakpoints in list  
(a0) = breakpoint list  
register buffer contains child register image

**Output**

d0.l = total number of instructions executed so far  
d1.l = remaining count not executed  
d2.w = exception occurred, if non-zero; exception  
      offset  
d3.w = classification word (addr or bus trap only)  
d4.l = access address (addr or bus trap only)  
d5.w = instruction register (addr or bus trap only)  
      register buffer updated

**Error Output**

cc = carry bit set  
d1.w = error code if error

**Attributes**

State: User

**Description**

F\$DExec controls the execution of a suspended child process created by the F\$DFork call. The process performing F\$DExec is suspended and its debugged child process is executed instead. Once the specified number of instructions are executed, a breakpoint is reached or an unexpected

exception occurs, execution terminates and control returns to the parent process. Thus, the parent and the child processes are never active at the same time.

`F$DExec` traces every instruction of the child process. It checks for the termination conditions after each instruction. Breakpoints are simply lists of addresses to check and work with ROMed object programs. Consequently, the child process being debugged runs at a slow speed.

If a `-1` (hex `$ffffff`) is passed in `d1.l`, `F$DExec` replaces the instruction at each breakpoint address with an illegal opcode. It then executes the child process at full speed (with the trace bit clear) until a breakpoint is reached or the program terminates. This can save an enormous amount of time, but it is impossible for `F$DExec` to count the number of executed instructions.

Any OS-9 for 68K system calls made by the suspended program are executed at full speed and are considered one logical instruction. The same is true of system-state trap handlers. You cannot debug system-state processes.

The system uses the register buffer passed in the `F$DFork` call to save and restore the child's registers. Changing the contents of the register buffer alters the child process' registers.

If the child process terminates for any reason, the carry bit is set and returned. Tracing may continue as long as the child process does not perform an `F$Exit` (even after encountering any normally fatal error). An `F$DExit` call must be made to return the debugged process' resources (memory).



---

## Note

The Atomic kernel does not support `F$DExec`.

---



---

**Note**

Tracing is not allowed through user-state trap handlers, intercept routines, and the `F$Chain` system call. This is not a problem, but may seem strange at times.

---

**Possible Errors**

`E$IProcID`

`E$ProcAbt`

**See Also**

`F$DExit`

`F$DFork`

### ASM Call

OS9 F\$DExit

### Input

d0.w = process ID of child to terminate

### Output

None

### Error Output

cc = carry bit set

d1.w = error code if error

### Attributes

State: User

### Description

F\$DExit terminates a suspended child process that was created with the F\$DFork system call. To permit examination after the process dies, normal termination by the child process does not release any of its resources.



---

### Note

The Atomic kernel does not support F\$DExit.

---

### Possible Errors

E\$IPrcID

**See Also**

[F\\$DExec](#)

[F\\$DFork](#)

[F\\$Exit](#)



control its execution through the special system calls `F$DExec` and `F$DExit`. (The child process is created with the trace bit of its status register set and is executed with the `F$DExec` system call.)

The register buffer is an area in the caller's data area permanently associated with each child process. It is set to an image of the child's initial registers for use with the `F$DExec` call.

For information about process creation, see the `F$Fork` service request.



---

### Note

A process created by `F$DFork` does not execute unless it is told to do so. When a process is run, the trace bit is set in the user status register. This causes the system trace exception handler to occur once for each user instruction executed, thus user programs run slowly.

Processes whose primary module is owned by a super-user may only be debugged by a super-user. You cannot debug system-state processes.

---



---

### Note

The Atomic kernel does not support `F$DFork`.

---

### See Also

`F$DExec`

`F$DExit`

`F$Fork`

**ASM Call**

OS9 F\$DelPrc

**Input**

d0.w = process ID to de-allocate

**Output**

None

**Error Output**

cc = carry set

d1.w = appropriate error code

**Attributes**

State: System

**Description**

F\$DelPrc de-allocates a process descriptor previously allocated by [F\\$AllPD](#). You must ensure any system resources used by the process are returned before calling F\$DelPrc.

Currently, the F\$DelPrc request is simply a convenient interface to the [F\\$RetPD](#) service request. It is preferred to [F\\$RetPD](#) to ensure compatibility with future releases of the operating system needing to perform process specific de-allocations.

**Possible Errors**

E\$BNam

E\$KwnMod

**See Also**[F\\$AllPD](#)[F\\$AllPrc](#)[F\\$FindPD](#)[F\\$RetPD](#)

---

**Note**

This is a privileged system-state service request.

---

**ASM Call**

OS9 F\$DelTsk

**Input**

(a4) = process descriptor pointer to release

**Error Output**

cc = carry bit set  
d1.w = error code if error

**Attributes**

State: System

**Description**

F\$DelTsk is called by the kernel when a process terminates to return the process' protection resources.



---

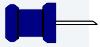
**Note**

The system-state code making this call should know using the `Trap 0` mechanism (OS9 F\$) to call this routine causes the current process to be specified, regardless of the value in (a4). If you need to specify a process other than the current one, use the system dispatch tables to make the call directly to the system routine, with the following input parameter:

(a4) = process descriptor pointer

The System Security Module (SSM) implements F\$DelTsk.

---



---

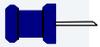
**Note**

The OS-9 kernel ignores all errors returned by `F$De1Tsk`.

---

**See Also**

`F$AllTsk`



---

**Note**

This is a privileged system-state service request.

---

### ASM Call

OS9 F\$Event

### Input

d1.w = Event function code

All others are dependent on function code

### Output

Dependent on function code

### Error Output

Dependent on function code

### Attributes

State: User

### Description

Events are multiple-value semaphores that synchronize concurrent processes sharing resources such as files, data modules, and CPU time. F\$Event provides facilities:

- To create and delete events.
- To permit processes to link/unlink events and obtain event information.
- To suspend operation until an event occurs.
- For various means of signaling.

An OS-9 event is a 32-byte system global variable maintained by the system. The following fields are included in each event:

**Table D-8 Event Fields**

<b>Event</b>	<b>Description</b>
Event ID	This number and the event's array position are used to create a unique ID.
Event name	This name must be unique and cannot exceed 12 characters.
Event value	This four-byte integer value has a range of two billion.
Wait increment	This value is added to the event value when a process waits for the event. It is set when the event is created and does not change.
Signal increment	This value is added to the event value when the event is signaled. This value is set when the event is created and does not change.
Link Count	This is the event use count.
Next event	This is a pointer to the next process in the event queue. An event queue is circular and includes all processes waiting for the event. Each time the event is signaled, this queue is searched.
Previous event	This is a pointer to the previous process in the event queue.

The following function codes are supported:

**Table 7-5 Event Function Codes**

<b>Name</b>	<b>Description</b>
<code>Ev\$Creat</code>	Create new event.
<code>Ev\$Delet</code>	Delete existing event.
<code>Ev\$Info</code>	Return event information.
<code>Ev\$Link</code>	Link to existing event by name.
<code>Ev\$Pulse</code>	Signal an event occurrence.
<code>Ev\$Read</code>	Read event value without waiting.
<code>Ev\$Set</code>	Set event variable and signal an event occurrence.
<code>Ev\$SetR</code>	Set relative event variable; signal an event occurrence.
<code>Ev\$Signl</code>	Signal an event occurrence.
<code>Ev\$UnLnk</code>	Unlink event.
<code>Ev\$Wait</code>	Wait for event to occur.
<code>Ev\$WaitR</code>	Wait for relative to occur.

### **Possible Errors**

Dependent on function code

### **See Also**

The section on events in [Chapter 1: System Overview](#).

**Ev\$Creat**

## Create New Event

**Input**

d0.l = initial event variable value  
 d1.w = 2 (Ev\$Creat function code)  
 d2.w = auto-increment for Ev\$Wait  
 d3.w = auto-increment for Ev\$Signl  
 (a0) = event name string pointer (max 11-chars)

**Output**

d0.l = event ID number  
 (a0) = updated past event name

**Error Output**

cc = carry bit set  
 d1.w = error code if error

**Attributes**

State: User

**Description**

You can create and delete events dynamically as needed. When an event is created, an initial signed value is specified, as well as signed increments to be applied each time the event occurs or is waited for. The returned event ID number is used in subsequent [F\\$Event](#) calls to refer to the event created.

**Possible Errors**

E\$BNam	Name is syntactically incorrect or longer than 11 chars.
E\$EvFull	The event table is full.
E\$EvBusy	The named event already exists.

### Input

(a0) = event name string pointer (max 11-chars)  
d1.w = 3 (Ev\$Delet function code)

### Output

(a0) = updated past event name

### Error Output

cc = carry bit set  
d1.w = error code if error

### Attributes

State: User

### Description

Ev\$Delet removes an event from the system event table, freeing the entry for use by another event. Events have an implicit use count (initially set to 1), that is incremented with each Ev\$Link call and decremented with each Ev\$UnLnk call. An event may not be deleted unless its use count is zero.



---

### Note

OS-9 does not automatically unlink events when an F\$Exit occurs.

---

### Possible Errors

E\$BNam	Name is syntactically incorrect or longer than 11 chars.
E\$EvNF	Event not found in the event table.
E\$EvBusy	The event has a non-zero link count.

**Ev\$Info**Return Event Information

---

**Input**

d0.l = event index (ID number) to begin search  
d1.w = 7 (Ev\$Info function code)  
(a0) = ptr to buffer for event information

**Output**

d0.l = event index found  
(a0) = data returned in buffer

**Error Output**

cc = carry bit set  
d1.w = error code if error

**Attributes**

State: User

**Description**

Ev\$Info returns a copy of the 32-byte event table entry associated with an event. Unlike other F\$Event functions, Ev\$Info only uses the low word of d0. This index is the system event number, ranging from zero to the maximum number of system events minus one. The event information block for the first active event with an index greater than or equal to this index is returned in the caller's buffer. If none exists, an error is returned. Ev\$Info is provided for utilities needing to determine the status of all active events.

**Possible Errors**

E\$EvtID The index is above all active events.

### Input

(a0) = event name string pointer (max 11 chars)  
d1.w = 0 (Ev\$Link function code)

### Output

d0.l = event ID number  
(a0) = updated past event name

### Error Output

cc = carry bit set  
d1.w = error code if error

### Attributes

State: User

### Description

Ev\$Link determines the ID number of an existing event. Once an event is linked, all subsequent references are made using the event ID returned. This permits the system to access events quickly, while protecting against programs using invalid or deleted events. The event use count is incremented when an Ev\$Link is performed. To keep the use count synchronized properly, perform an Ev\$UnLnk when the event will no longer be used.

### Possible Errors

E\$BNam	Name is syntactically incorrect or longer than 11 chars.
E\$EvNF	Event not found in the event table.



#### Input

d0.l = event ID number  
d1.w = 6 (Ev\$Read function code)

#### Output

d1.l = current event value

#### Error Output

cc = carry bit set  
d1.w = error code if error

#### Attributes

State: User

#### Description

Ev\$Read reads the value of an event without waiting or modifying the event variable. You can use this to determine the availability of the event (or associated resource) without waiting.

#### Possible Errors

E\$EvntID ID specified is not a valid active event.

**Ev\$Set****Set Event Variable and Signal Event Occurrence**

---

**Input**

d0.l = event ID number

d1.w = MS bit set to activate all processes in range  
LS bits = A (Ev\$Set function code)

d2.l = new event value

**Output**

d1.l = previous event value

**Error Output**

cc = carry bit set

d1.w = error code if error

**Attributes**

State: User

**Description**

Ev\$Set is similar to the [Ev\\$Signal](#) call, except the event variable is initially set to the value passed in d2 rather than updated with the signal auto-increment. After this is done, the [Ev\\$Signal](#) routine is executed directly.

**Possible Errors**

E\$EvtID The ID specified is not a valid active event.

**Set Relative Event Variable and Signal Event Occurrence**

---

**Input**

d0.l = event ID number

d1.w = MS bit set to activate all processes in range  
LS bits = B (Ev\$SetR function code)

d2.l = (signed) increment for event variable

**Output**

d1.l = previous event value

**Error Output**

cc = carry bit set

d1.w = error code if error

**Attributes**

State: User

**Description**

Ev\$SetR is similar to [Ev\\$Signal](#), but instead of using the signal auto-increment value to update the event variable, the value in d2 is used. Arithmetic underflows or overflows are set to \$80000000 or \$7fffffff, respectively.

**Possible Errors**

E\$EvtID The ID specified is not a valid active event.

**Ev\$Signl**

## Signal Event Occurrence

**Input**

d0.l = event ID number

d1.w = MS bit set to activate all processes in range  
 LS bits = 8 (Ev\$Signl function code)

**Output**

None

**Error Output**

cc = carry bit set

d1.w = error code if error

**Attributes**

State: User

**Description**

Ev\$Signl signals an event has occurred. The current event variable is updated with the signal auto-increment specified when the event was created. Then, the event queue is searched for the first process waiting for that event value. If the MS bit of d1 (the function code) is set, all processes in the event queue with a value in range are activated. The sequence is the same for each event in the queue until the queue is exhausted:

- The signal auto-increment is added to the event variable
- The first process in range is awakened
- The event variable is updated with the wait auto-increment
- The search continues with the updated value

**Possible Errors**

E\$EvtID The ID specified is not a valid active event.

### Input

d0.l = event ID number

d1.w = 1 (Ev\$UnLnk function code)

### Output

None

### Error Output

cc = carry bit set

d1.w = error code if error

### Attributes

State: User

### Description

Ev\$UnLnk informs the system a process no longer uses an event. The event use count is decremented. When it reaches zero, you must delete it. OS-9 uses this only for error checking.

### Possible Errors

E\$EvtID ID specified is not a valid active event.

**Ev\$Wait**

## Wait for Event to Occur

**Input**

d0.l = event ID number  
 d1.w = 4 (Ev\$Wait function code)  
 d2.l = minimum activation value (signed)  
 d3.l = maximum activation value (signed)

**Output**

d1.l = actual event value

**Error Output**

cc = carry bit set  
 d1.w = error code if error

**Attributes**

State: User

**Description**

Ev\$Wait waits for an event to occur. The event variable is compared to the range specified in d2 and d3. If the value is not in range, the calling process is suspended in a FIFO event queue. It waits until an [Ev\\$Signal](#) occurs putting the value in range and adding the wait auto-increment (specified at creation) to the event variable.

If the process receives a signal while in the event queue, it is activated even though the event has not actually occurred. The auto-increment is not added to the event variable, and the event value returned is not within the specified range. The caller's intercept routine is executed, but an event error is not returned.

**Possible Errors**

E\$EvtID ID specified is not a valid active event.

### Input

d0.l = event ID number  
d1.w = 5 (Ev\$WaitR function code)  
d2.l = minimum relative activation value (signed)  
d3.l = maximum relative activation value (signed)

### Output

d1.l = actual event value  
d2.l = minimum actual activation value  
d3.l = maximum actual activation value

### Error Output

cc = carry bit set  
d1.w = error code if error

### Attributes

State: User

### Description

Ev\$WaitR works exactly like Ev\$Wait, except the range specified in d2 and d3 is relative to the current event value. The event value is added to d2 and d3 respectively, and the actual values are returned to the caller. The Ev\$Wait function is then executed directly.

If an underflow or overflow occurs on the addition, the values \$80000000 (minimum integer), and \$7fffffff (maximum integer) are used, respectively.

### Possible Errors

E\$EvtID ID specified is not a valid active event.

**F\$Exit**Terminate Calling Process

---

**ASM Call**

```
OS9 F$Exit
```

**Input**

```
d1.w = Status code to be returned to parent process
```

**Output**

Process is terminated

**Error Output**

```
cc = carry bit set  
d1.w = error code if error
```

**Attributes**

State: User

**Description**

`F$Exit` is the means by which a process can terminate itself. Its data memory area is de-allocated and its primary module is unlinked. All open paths are automatically closed.

The parent can execute an `F$Wait` call to detect the death of the process. This returns (to the parent) the status word passed by the child in its exit call. The shell assumes the status word is an OS-9 error code that the terminating process wishes to pass back to its parent process. The status word could also be a user-defined status value.

Processes called directly by the shell should only return an OS-9 error code or zero if no error occurred.



---

## Note

The parent *must* do an `F$Wait` before the process descriptor is returned.

---

An `F$Exit` call functions as follows:

- Close all paths
- Return memory to the system
- Unlink the primary module and user trap handlers
- Free process descriptor of any dead child processes
- If the parent is dead, free the process descriptor
- If the parent has not executed an `F$Wait` call, leave the process in limbo until the parent notices the death
- If the parent is waiting, move the parent to the active queue, inform the parent of the death/status, remove the child from the sibling list, and free its process descriptor memory



---

## Note

Only the primary module and the user trap handlers are unlinked. Unlink any other modules that are loaded or linked by the process before calling `F$Exit`.

---

Although `F$Exit` closes any open paths, it pays no attention to errors returned by the `I$Close` request. Because of I/O buffering, this can cause write errors to go unnoticed when paths are left open. However, by convention, the standard I/O paths (0, 1, 2) are usually left open.

**See Also**

F\$AProc

F\$FindPD

F\$Fork

F\$RetPD

F\$SRtMem

F\$UnLink

F\$Wait

I\$Close

### ASM Call

OS9 F\$FindPD

### Input

d0.w = process/path number  
(a0) = process/path table pointer

### Output

(a1) = pointer to process/path descriptor

### Error Output

cc = Carry bit set  
d1.w = error code if error

### Attributes

State: System

### Description

F\$FindPD converts a process or path number to the absolute address of its descriptor data structure. You can use it for simple memory management of fixed length blocks. See [F\\$AllPD](#) for a description of the data structure used.

### See Also

[F\\$AllPD](#)

[F\\$RetPD](#)



---

### Note

This is a privileged system-state service request.

---

**F\$FIRQ****Add or Remove Device from Fast IRQ Table (System-State Only)**

---

**ASM Call**

OS9 F\$FIRQ

**Input**

d0.b = vector number  
(25 - 31 for autovectors,  
57 - 63 for 68070 on-chip autovectors,  
64 - 255 for vectored IRQs.)

d1.b = reserved, must be 0.  
(a0) = IRQ service routine entry point (0 = remove)  
(a2) = device static storage.

**Output**

None

**Error Output**

cc = carry bit set  
d1.w = error code

**Attributes**

State: System

**Description**

F\$FIRQ installs an IRQ service routine into or removes one from the system's fast IRQ table. This fast IRQ system provides a faster interrupt response context than the normal IRQ vector polling scheme (provided via [F\\$IRQ](#)).

To:

- place a routine into the fast IRQ system, set a0 to a non-zero value.
- remove a routine from the fast IRQ system, set a0 to zero.

Only one `F$FIRQ` routine can be active at a time per vector. An attempt to install a second routine on a vector using `F$FIRQ` causes an `E$VctBsy` error. If additional devices are required to be on the same vector as an `F$FIRQ` device, use `F$IRQ` to install them.

Device drivers are required to determine if their device caused the interrupt. Service routines conform to the following register conventions:

### Input

```
d0.w = vector address (vector number * 4)
(a2) = device static storage pointer
(a6) = system global data pointer (D_'s)
(a7) = system stack (small IRQ default stack)
```

### Output

```
cc = carry clear: return to interrupted context
cc = carry set: poll further devices on vector using
                 F$IRQ polling system.
```



---

## WARNING

Fast interrupt service routines may destroy the `d0` and `a2` registers. You must preserve all other registers used.

---

The interrupt stack provided is a small *default* IRQ stack. The service routine must ensure this stack is not overflowed. The `Init` module's *IRQ stack* value does *not* affect this stack; the `Init` module value is used to control the `F$IRQ` polling system stack.

### Possible Errors

`E$VctBsy`

## See Also

[F\\$IRQ](#)

The ***OS-9 for 68K Processors Technical I/O Manual*** contains more information on RBF and SCF device drivers.

## ASM Call

OS9 F\$Fork

### Input

d0.w = desired module type/revision (usually  
program/object 0=any)  
d1.l = additional memory size  
d2.l = parameter size  
d3.w = number of I/O paths to copy  
d4.w = priority  
(a0) = module name pointer  
(a1) = parameter pointer

### Output

d0.w = child process ID  
(a0) = updated beyond module name

### Error Output

cc = carry bit set  
d1.w = error code if error

### Attributes

State: User

### Description

F\$Fork creates a new process that becomes a child of the caller. It sets up the new process' memory, MPU registers, and standard I/O paths.

The system parses the name string of the new process' primary module (the program initially executed). Next, the system module directory is searched to see if the program is already in memory. If so, the module is linked and executed. If not, the name string is used as the pathlist of the file

to be loaded into memory. The first module in this file is linked and executed. To be loaded, the module must be program object code and have the appropriate read and/or execute permissions set for the user.

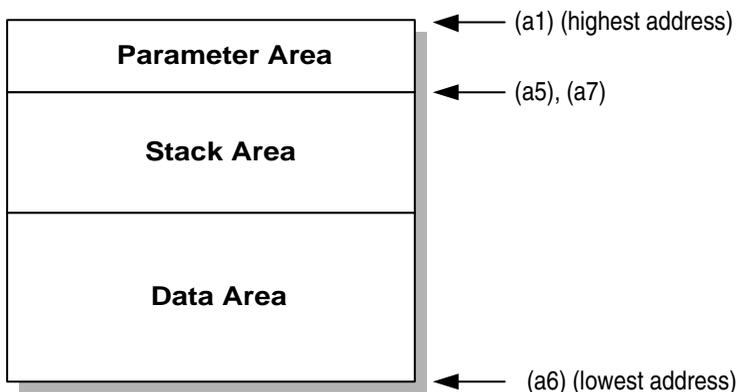
The primary module's module header is used to determine the process' initial data area size. OS-9 then attempts to allocate RAM equal to the required data storage size plus any additional size specified in `d1`, plus the size of any parameter passed. The RAM area must be contiguous.

The new process' registers are set up as shown in the diagram on the next page. The execution offset given in the module header is used to set the PC to the module's entry point. If `d4.w` is set to zero, the new process inherits the same priority as the calling process.

When the shell processes a command line, it passes a copy of the parameter portion (if any) of the command line as a parameter string. The shell appends an end-of-line character to the parameter string to simplify string-oriented processing.

If any of the these operations are unsuccessful, the fork is aborted and an error is returned to the caller. The following diagram shows how `F$Fork` sets up the data memory area and registers for a newly-created process. For more information, see [F\\$Wait](#).

**Figure D-3 Data Memory Area and Registers in Child Process**



**Table D-9 Registers Passed to the Child Process**

<b>Register</b>	<b>Description</b>
sr	n000, where: n = 0 for non-MSP systems n = 1 for MSP systems
pc	Module entry point
d0.w	Process ID
d1.l	Group/user number
d2.w	Priority
d3.w	Number of I/O paths inherited
d4.l	Undefined
d5.l	Parameter size
d6.l	Total initial memory allocation
d7.l	Undefined
(a0)	Undefined
(a1)	Top of memory pointer
(a2)	Undefined
(a3)	Primary (forked) module pointer
(a4)	Undefined

**Table D-9 Registers Passed to the Child Process (continued)**

Register	Description
(a5)	Parameter pointer
(a6)	Static storage (data area) base pointer
(a7)	Stack pointer (same as (a5))

 **Note**

(a6) is actually biased by \$8000, but this can usually be ignored because the linker biases all data references by -\$8000. However, it may be significant to note when debugging programs.

 **Note**

Both the child and parent process execute concurrently. If the parent executes an `F$Wait` call immediately after the fork, it waits until the child dies before it resumes execution. A child process descriptor is returned only when the parent does an `F$Wait` call.

Modules owned by a super-user execute in system state if the system-state bit in the module's attributes is set. This is rarely necessary, quite dangerous, and not recommended for beginners.

**Possible Errors**

E\$IPrcID

## See Also

F\$Chain

F\$Exit

F\$Wait

**F\$GBlkMp**Get Free Memory Block Map

---

**ASM Call**

OS9 F\$GblkMp

**Input**

d0.l = Address to begin reporting segments

d1.l = Size of buffer in bytes

(a0) = Buffer pointer

**Output**

d0.l = System's minimum memory allocation size

d1.l = Number of memory fragments in system

d2.l = Total RAM found by system at startup

d3.l = Current total free RAM available

(a0) = Memory fragment information

**Error Output**

cc = carry bit set

d1.w = error code if error

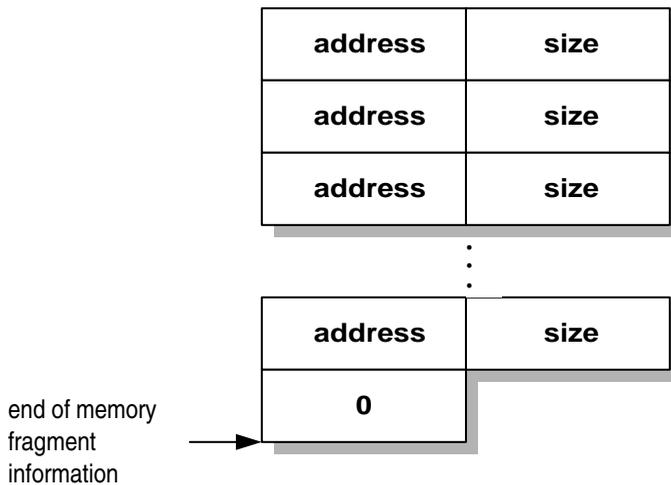
**Attributes**

State: User

## Description

F\$GBlkMp copies the address and size of the system's free RAM blocks into the user's buffer for inspection. It also returns various information concerning the free RAM as noted by the output registers above. The address and size of the free RAM blocks are returned in the user's buffer in following format (address and size are 4-bytes):

Figure D-4



Although F\$GBlkMp returns the address and size of the system's free memory blocks, these blocks may never be accessed directly. Use F\$SRqMem to request free memory blocks.



## Note

F\$GBlkMp provides a status report concerning free system memory for mfree and similar utilities. The address and size of free RAM changes with system use. Although F\$GBlkMp returns the address and size of the system's free memory blocks, these blocks may never be accessed directly. Use F\$SRqMem to request free memory blocks.

**See Also**

[F\\$Mem](#)

[F\\$SRqMem](#)

**ASM Call**

OS9 F\$GModDr

**Input**

d1.l = Maximum number of bytes to copy  
(a0) = Buffer pointer

**Output**

d1.l = Actual number of bytes copied

**Error Output**

cc = Carry bit set  
d1.w = Appropriate error code

**Attributes**

State: User

**Description**

F\$GModDr copies the system's module directory into the user's buffer for inspection. `mdir` uses F\$GModDr to look at the module directory. Although the module directory contains pointers to each module in the system, you should never directly access the modules. Rather, use [F\\$CpyMem](#) to copy portions of the system's address space for inspection. On some systems, directly accessing the modules may cause address or bus trap errors.



---

**Note**

F\$GModDr is provided primarily for use by `mDir` and similar utilities. The format and contents of the module directory may change on different releases of OS-9 for 68K. For this reason, it is often preferable to use the output of `mDir` to determine the names of modules in memory.

---

**See Also**

[F\\$CpyMem](#)

[F\\$Move](#)

**ASM Call**

OS9 F\$GPrDBT

**Input**

d1.l = maximum number of bytes to copy  
(a0) = Buffer pointer

**Output**

d1.l = Actual number of bytes copied

**Error Output**

cc = Carry bit set  
d1.w = Appropriate error code

**Attributes**

State: User

**Description**

F\$GPrDBT copies the process descriptor block table into the caller's buffer for inspection. The `procs` utility uses F\$GPrDBT to quickly determine which processes are active in the system. Although F\$GPrDBT returns pointers to the process descriptors of all processes, never access the process descriptors directly. Instead, use the [F\\$GPrDsc](#) system call if you need to inspect particular process descriptors.

The system call, [F\\$AllPD](#), describes the format of the process descriptor block table.

**See Also**

[F\\$AllPD](#)

[F\\$GPrDsc](#)

**F\$GPrDsc**Get Copy of Process Descriptor

---

**ASM Call**

OS9 F\$GPrDsc

**Input**

d0.w = Requested process ID  
d1.w = Number of bytes to copy  
(a0) = Process descriptor buffer pointer

**Output**

None

**Error Output**

cc = Carry bit set  
d1.w = Appropriate error code

**Attributes**

State: User

**Description**

F\$GPrDsc copies a process descriptor into the caller's buffer for inspection. There is no way to change data in a process descriptor. The `procs` utility uses F\$GPrDsc to gain information about an existing process.



---

**Note**

The format and contents of a process descriptor may change with different releases of OS-9 for 68K.

---

## Possible Errors

E\$IPrcID

## See Also

F\$GPrDBT

**F\$GProcP**Get Process Pointer

---

**ASM Call**`OS9 F$GProcP`**Input**`d0.w = requested process ID`**Output**`(a1) = process descriptor pointer`**Error Output**`cc = Carry bit set``d1.w = appropriate error code`**Attributes**

State: System

**Description**

`F$GProcP` returns a pointer to the process descriptor associated with the requested process ID. It is used by system-state code to inspect and possibly change the contents of a process descriptor.

**Note**

The format and contents of a process descriptor may change with different releases of OS-9 for 68K.

---

If you use this call, be aware of having the process die while using this pointer. To prevent the process descriptor from being deleted, ensure system-state preemption for your process is disabled while using the pointer. To do this, set the `P$Preempt` field of your process descriptor.

## Possible Errors

E\$IPrcID



---

### Note

This is a privileged system-state service request.

---

## F\$Gregor

### Get Gregorian Date

---

#### ASM Call

OS9 F\$Gregor

#### Input

d0.l = time (seconds since midnight)

d1.l = Julian date

#### Output

d0.l = time (00hhmmss)

d1.l = date (yyyymmdd)

#### Error Output

cc = Carry bit set

d1.w = Appropriate error code

#### Attributes

State: User

#### Description

F\$Gregor converts Julian dates to Gregorian dates. Gregorian dates are considered the normal calendar dates.

The Julian date is similar to the Julian date used by astronomers. It is based on the number of days that have elapsed since January 1, 4713 B.C. Each astronomical Julian day changes at noon. OS-9 differs slightly from the astronomical standard by changing Julian dates at midnight. It is relatively easy to adjust for this, when necessary.



---

**Note**

The normal (Gregorian) calendar was revised to correct errors due to leap year at different dates throughout the world. The algorithm used by OS-9 for 68K makes this adjustment on October 15, 1582. Be careful when you are working with old dates, because the same day may be recorded as a different date by different sources.

---



---

**Note**

`F$Gregor` is the inverse function of `F$Julian`.

---

**See Also**

`F$Julian`

`F$Time`





---

**Note**

The System Security Module (SSM) implements F\$GSPUMp.

---



---

**Note**

The buffer pointer must be word-aligned to avoid an E\$AdrErr.

---

### Possible Errors

E\$AdrErr

E\$IPrCID

E\$Param

E\$UnkSvc (non SSM systems).

**F\$Icpt****Set Up Signal Intercept Trap**

---

**ASM Call**

OS9 F\$Icpt

**Input**

(a0) = Address of the intercept routine

(a6) = Address to be passed to the intercept routine

**Output**

(d0) = Number of signals pending

**Error Output**

None

**Attributes**

State: User

**Description**

F\$Icpt tells OS-9 to install a signal intercept routine:

- (a0) contains the address of the signal handler routine.
- (a6) usually contains the address of the program's data area.



---

**Note**

Signals sent to the process causes the intercept routine to be called instead of the process being killed.

---

After the `F$Icpt` call has been made, whenever the process receives a signal, its intercept routine executes. A signal aborts a process that has not used the `F$Icpt` service request and its termination status (register `d1.w`) is the signal code. Many interactive programs set up an intercept routine to handle keyboard abort and keyboard interrupt signals.

The intercept routine is entered asynchronously because a signal may be sent at any time (similar to an interrupt) and is passed the following:

`d1.w` = Signal code  
(`a6`) = Address of intercept routine data area

The intercept routine should be short and fast, such as setting a flag in the process's data area. Avoid complicated system calls (such as I/O). After the intercept routine is complete, it may return to normal process execution by executing the `F$RTE` system call.



---

## Note

Each time the intercept routine is called, 70 bytes are used on the user's stack.

---

## See Also

[F\\$RTE](#)

[F\\$Send](#)

[F\\$SigReset](#)

**ASM Call**

OS9 F\$ID

**Input**

None

**Output**

d0.w = Current process ID

d1.l = Current process group/user number

d2.w = Current process priority

**Error Output**

cc = Carry bit set

d1.w = Appropriate error code

**Attributes**

State: User

**Description**

F\$ID returns the caller's process ID number, group and user ID, and current process priority (all word values). OS-9 assigns a unique process ID to the process. The user ID is defined in the system password file, and is used for system and file security. Several processes can have the same user ID.

**ASM Call**

OS9 F\$IODE1

**Input**

(a0) = module pointer

**Output**

None

**Error Output**

cc = Carry bit set

d1.w = Appropriate error code

**Attributes**

State: System

**Description**

F\$IODE1 is called by the kernel when an I/O module is unlinked for the last time. F\$IODE1 checks the system's device table to see if the module is busy.

If the module is not busy, no error is returned and the caller may remove the module. If the module is busy, an error is returned and the caller needs to keep the link count for the module at 1.



---

**Note**

The IOMan module implements F\$IODE1.

---

## Possible Errors

E\$ModBsy



---

### Note

This is a privileged system-state service request.

---

**ASM Call**

OS9 F\$IOQu

**Input**

d0.w = Process Number

**Output**

None

**Error Output**

cc = Carry bit set

d1.w = Appropriate error code

**Attributes**

State: System

**Description**

F\$IOQu links the calling process into the I/O queue of the specified process and performs an untimed sleep. It is assumed routines associated with the specified process send a wake up signal to the calling process. IOQu is used primarily and extensively by the I/O system.

For example, if a process needs to do I/O on a particular device that is busy servicing another request, the calling process performs an F\$IOQu call to the process in control of the device. When the first process returns from the file manager, the kernel automatically wakes up the IOQu-ed process.



---

**Note**

The IOMan module implements F\$IOQu.

---

**See Also**[F\\$FindPD](#)[F\\$Send](#)[F\\$Sleep](#)

---

**Note**

This is a privileged system-state service request.

---

**ASM Call**

OS9 F\$IRQ

**Input**

d0.b = vector number  
25-31 for autovectors  
57-63 for 68070 on-chip autovectors  
64-255 for vectored IRQs

d1.b = priority (0 = polled first, 255 = last)  
(a0) = IRQ service routine entry point (0 = delete)  
(a2) = device static storage  
(a3) = port address

**Output**

None

**Error Output**

cc = Carry bit set  
d1.w = Appropriate error code

**Attributes**

State: System

**Description**

F\$IRQ installs an IRQ service routine into the system polling table. If (a0) equals 0, the call deletes the IRQ service routine, and only (d0/a0/a2) are used.

The port is sorted by priority onto a list of devices for the specified vector. If the priority is 0, only this device is allowed to use the vector. Otherwise, any vector may support multiple devices. OS-9 does not poll the I/O port

before calling the interrupt service routine and makes no use of (a3). Device drivers are required to determine if their device caused the interrupt. Service routines conform to the following register conventions:

Input:

d0.w = vector offset (vector number \*4)  
(a2) = global static pointer  
(a3) = port address  
(a6) = system global data pointer (D\_'s)  
(a7) = system stack (in active proc's descriptor)

Output:

None

### Error Output

Carry bit set if the device did not cause the interrupt.



---

### WARNING

Interrupt service routines may destroy the following registers: d0, d1, a0, a2, a3, and/or a6. You must preserve all other registers used.

---



---

### Note

Note the following:

- You may not put zero priority multiple auto-vectored devices on the polling list.
  - Zero priority devices do not exclude use of the vector by F\$FIRQ devices.
-

## Possible Errors

E\$POLL is returned if the polling table is full.

## See Also

The *OS-9 for 68K Processors Technical I/O Manual* contains more information on RBF and SCF device drivers.



---

## Note

This is a privileged system-state service request.

---

**F\$Julian**

## Get Julian Date

**ASM Call**

```
OS9 F$Julian
```

**Input**

```
d0.l = time (00hhmmss)
```

```
d1.l = date (yyyymmdd)
```

**Output**

```
d0.l = time (seconds since midnight)
```

```
d1.l = Julian date
```

**Error Output**

```
cc = Carry bit set
```

```
d1.w = Appropriate error code
```

**Attributes**

```
State: User
```

**Description**

F\$Julian converts Gregorian dates to Julian dates.

Julian dates are very convenient for computing elapsed time. To compute the number of days between two dates, subtract the lower Julian date number from the higher number.

The Julian day number returned is similar to the Julian date used by astronomers. It is based on the number of days that have elapsed since January 1, 4713 B.C. Each astronomical Julian day changes at noon. OS-9 differs slightly from the astronomical standard by changing Julian dates at midnight. It is relatively easy to adjust for this, when necessary.

You can also use the Julian day number to determine the day of the week for a given date. Use the following formula:

$$\text{weekday} = \text{MOD}(\text{Julian\_Date} + 2, 7)$$

This returns the day of the week as 0 = Sunday, 1 = Monday, etc.



---

**Note**

The normal (Gregorian) calendar was revised to correct errors due to leap year at different dates throughout the world. The algorithm used by OS-9 makes this adjustment on October 15, 1582. Be careful when working with old dates, because the same day may be recorded as a different date by different sources.

---

**F\$Link**Link to Memory Module

---

**ASM Call**

OS9 F\$Link

**Input**

d0.w = Desired module type/language byte (0 = any)  
(a0) = Module name string pointer

**Output**

d0.w = Actual module type/language  
d1.w = Module attributes/revision level  
(a0) = Updated past the module name  
(a1) = Module execution entry point  
(a2) = Module pointer

**Error Output**

cc = Carry bit set  
d1.w = Appropriate error code

**Attributes**

State: User

**Description**

F\$Link causes OS-9 to search the module directory for a module having a name, language, and type as given in the parameters. If found, the address of the module's header is returned in (a2). The absolute address of the module's execution entry point is returned in (a1). As a convenience, you can obtain this and other information from the module header. The module's link count is incremented to keep track of how many processes are using the module. If the module requested is not re-entrant, only one process may link to it at a time.

If the module's access word does not give the process read permission, the link call fails. Link also fails to find modules whose header has been destroyed (altered or corrupted) in memory.

### **Possible Errors**

E\$BNam

E\$MNF

E\$ModBsy

### **See Also**

[F\\$Load](#)

[F\\$UnLink](#)

[F\\$UnLoad](#)





---

## Note

The IOMan module implements `F$Load`.

---

An error can indicate the following:

- An actual I/O error.
- A module with a bad parity or CRC.
- The system memory is full.

All loaded modules are added to the system module directory, and the first module read is linked. The parameters returned are the same as those returned by a link call, and apply only to the first module loaded.

To be loaded, the file must contain a module or modules possessing a proper module header and CRC. The access mode may be specified as either `Exec_` or `Read_`, causing the file to load from the current execution or data directory, respectively.

If any of the modules loaded belong to the super-user, the file must also be owned by the super-user. This prevents normal users from executing privileged service requests.

The input register specifying memory color type (`d1 . 1`) is only referenced if the most significant bit of `d0 . b` is set.



---

## Note

`F$Load` does not work on SCF devices.

---

## Possible Errors

`E$BMID`

`E$MemFull`

**F\$Mem**Resize Data Memory Area

---

**ASM Call**

OS9 F\$Mem

**Input**

d0.l = Desired new memory size in bytes

**Output**d0.l = Actual size of new memory area in bytes  
(a1) = Pointer to new end of data segment (+1)**Error Output**cc = Carry bit set  
d1.w = Appropriate error code**Attributes**

State: User

**Description**

F\$Mem contracts the process' data memory area. The new size requested is rounded up to an even memory allocation block (16 bytes minimum). Additional memory is allocated contiguously upward (towards higher addresses), or de-allocated downward from the old highest address. If d0 equals 0, the call is considered an information request and the current upper bound and size is returned.

**Note**

If you wish to expand memory, you should use F\$SRqMem.

---

This request can never return all of a process' memory, or cause de-allocation of memory at its current stack pointer.

The request may return an error upon an expansion request even though adequate free memory exists, because the data area must always be contiguous. Memory requests by other processes may fragment memory into smaller, scattered blocks that are not adjacent to the caller's present data area.



---

## Note

`F$Mem` calls to resize the data area always fail for versions of the kernel from OS-9 for 68K V2.3 and greater. Only an information request (`d0=0`) works on OS-9 for 68K V2.3 and greater.

---

## Possible Errors

`E$DelSP`

`E$MemFull`

`E$NoRAM`

**F\$Move**

Move Data (Low Bound First)

**ASM Call**

OS9 F\$Move

**Input**

d2.l = Byte count to copy  
(a0) = Source pointer  
(a2) = Destination pointer

**Output**

None

**Error Output**

cc = Carry bit set  
d1.w = Appropriate error code

**Attributes**

State: System

**Description**

F\$Move is a fast *block-move* subroutine capable of copying data bytes from one address space to another (usually from system to user or vice versa).

The data movement subroutine is optimized to make use of long moves whenever possible. If the source and destination buffers overlap, an appropriate move (left to right or right to left) is used to avoid loss of data due to incorrect propagation.

**Note**

This is a privileged system-state service request.

**ASM Call**

OS9 F\$NProc

**Input**

None

**Output**

Control does not return to caller.

**Error Output**

cc = Carry bit set  
d1.w = Appropriate error code

**Attributes**

State: System

**Description**

F\$NProc takes the next process out of the active process queue and initiates its execution. If there is no process in the queue, OS-9 waits for an interrupt, and then checks the active process queue again.



---

**Note**

The process calling NProc should already be in one of the system's process queues. If it is not, the calling process becomes unknown to the system even though the process descriptor still exists and is printed out by a `procs` command.

---

## See Also

[F\\$AProc](#)



---

### Note

This is a privileged system-state service request.

---

### ASM Call

OS9 F\$Panic

### Input

d0.l = panic code

### Output

None. F\$Panic generally does not return.

### Error Output

cc = Carry bit set

d1.w = Appropriate error code

### Attributes

State: System

### Description

The OS-9 kernel makes a F\$Panic request when it detects a disastrous, but not necessarily fatal, system condition. Ordinarily, F\$Panic is undefined and the system dies.

The system administrator may install a service routine for F\$Panic as part of an OS9P2 startup module. The function of such a routine might be to fork a warmstart Sysgo process or to cause the system to re-boot.

Two panic codes are defined:

**Table D-10 Panic Codes**

<b>Code</b>	<b>Description</b>
<code>K\$Idle</code>	The system has no processes to execute.
<code>K\$PFail</code>	Power failure has been detected.

`F$Panic` is called only when the kernel believes there are no processes remaining to be executed. Although it is likely the system is dead at this point, it may not be. Interrupt service routines or system-state alarms could cause the system to become active.



### Note

The OS-9 kernel does not detect power failure. However, some machines are equipped with hardware that can detect power failure. For these machines, you could install an `OS9P2` routine to call `F$Panic` when power failure occurs.

### See Also

`F$SSvc`

The section on installing system-state routines in [Chapter 2: The Kernel](#).

## F\$Permit (System-State)

Allow Process Access to Specified Memory

---

### ASM Call

OS9 F\$Permit

### Input

d0.l = size of area in bytes  
d1.b = permission requested (Read\_/Write\_/Exec\_)  
(a2) = address of area requested  
(a3) = SSM global static storage  
(a4) = process descriptor removing access  
(a6) = system global pointer

### Error Output

cc = carry bit set  
d1.w = error code if error

### Attributes

State: System

### Description

F\$Permit is called primarily by the kernel to permit a process access to its data and code space on SSM systems. It is also invoked when a process requests additional memory (F\$SRqMem) or links to another module so memory can be accessed by the process.



---

**Note**

The system-state code making this call should know using the `Trap 0` mechanism (`OS9 F$`) to call this routine causes the current process to be specified, regardless of the value in `(a4)`. If you need to specify a process other than the current one, use the system dispatch tables to make the call directly to the system routine, with the following input parameters:

- `d0.l` = size of area in bytes
- `d1.b` = permission requested (`Read_/Write_/Exec_`)
- `(a2)` = address of area requested
- `(a3)` = SSM global static storage
- `(a4)` = process descriptor removing access
- `(a6)` = system global pointer

The System Security Module (SSM) implements `F$Permit`.

---

**See Also**

`F$Protect` (System-State)

## F\$Permit (User-State)

### Allow Process Access to Specified Memory

---

#### ASM Call

OS9 F\$Permit

#### Input

d0.l = size of area in bytes

d1.b = permission requested (Read\_/Write\_/Exec\_)

(a2) = address of area requested

(a4) = process descriptor allowing access

#### Error Output

cc = carry bit set

d1.w = error code if error

#### Attributes

State: User

#### Description

F\$Permit permits a process to access to a specified memory region. It is used primarily on memory protected (SSM) systems. Systems with SSM installed only allow a process to access its own data and code spaces. Processes requiring access to memory regions outside of their code/data area (for example, memory mapped video) should use F\$Permit before any attempt to access the region.

Only super-group users (0.n) may call F\$Permit from user-state.



---

#### Note

The System Security Module (SSM) implements F\$Permit.

---

## Possible Errors

E\$Permit

## See Also

F\$Protect (User-State)

## ASM Call

OS9 F\$PErr

## Input

d0.w = Error message path number (0=none)

d1.w = Error number

## Output

None

## Error Output

None

## Attributes

State: User

## Description

F\$PErr is the system's error reporting facility. It writes an error message to the standard error path. Most OS-9 systems print `ERROR #mmm.nnn`. Error numbers 000:000 to 063:255 are reserved for the operating system.

If an error path number is specified, the path is searched for a text description of the error encountered. The error message path contains an ASCII file of error messages. Each line may be up to 80 characters long. If the error number matches the first seven characters in a line (000:215), the rest of the line is printed along with the error number. Error messages may be continued on several lines by beginning each continuation line with a space. An example error file might contain lines like this:

```
000:214 (E$FNA) File not accessible.
```

An attempt to open a file failed. The file was found, but is inaccessible to you in the requested mode. Check the file's owner ID and access attributes.

000:215 (E\$BPNam) Bad pathlist specified.  
The pathlist specified is syntactically incorrect.

000:216 (E\$PNNF) File not found.  
The pathlist does not lead to any known file.

000:218 (E\$CEF) Tried to create a file that already exists.

000:253 (E\$Share) Non-sharable file busy.  
The most common way to get this error is to try to delete a currently open file. Anytime a file already in use is opened for non-sharable access, this error occurs. It also occurs if you try to access a non-sharable device (for example, a printer) that is busy.



---

**Note**

The IOMan module implements F\$PErr.

---

## F\$Protect (System-State)

### Remove Process' Permission to Memory Block

---

#### ASM Call

OS9 F\$Protect

#### Input

d0.l = size of area in bytes  
(a2) = address of area returned  
(a3) = SSM global static storage  
(a4) = process descriptor removing access  
(a6) = system global pointer

#### Error Output

cc = carry bit set  
d1.w = error code if error

#### Attributes

State: System

#### Description

F\$Protect is primarily called by the kernel to remove access permission to a block of memory. This occurs when the process exits or when it unlinks a module or returns extra memory resources (F\$SRtMem).



---

**Note**

The system-state code making this call should know using the `Trap 0` mechanism (`OS9 F$`) to call this routine causes the current process to be specified, regardless of the value in `(a4)`. If you need to specify a process other than the current one, use the system dispatch tables to make the call directly to the system routine, with the following input parameters:

- `d0.l` = size of area in bytes
- `(a2)` = address of area requested
- `(a3)` = SSM global static storage
- `(a4)` = process descriptor removing access
- `(a6)` = system global pointer

The System Security Module (SSM) implements `F$Protect`

---

**Possible Errors**

`E$Permit`

**See Also**

`F$Permit (System-State)`

## F\$Protect (User-State)

### Remove Process' Permission to Memory Block

---

#### ASM Call

OS9 F\$Protect

#### Input

d0.l = size of area in bytes  
(a2) = address of area returned

#### Error Output

cc = carry bit set  
d1.w = error code if error

#### Attributes

State: User

#### Description

F\$Protect removes process access permission to a specified region (usually permitted via [F\\$Permit \(User-State\)](#)).

Only super-group users (0.n) may call F\$Protect from user-state.



---

#### Note

The System Security Module (SSM) implements F\$Protect.

---

#### Possible Errors

E\$Permit

#### See Also

[F\\$Permit \(User-State\)](#)

**F\$PrsNam**

Parse Path Name

**ASM Call**

OS9 F\$PrsNam

**Input**

(a0) = Name of string pointer

**Output**

d0.b = Pathlist delimiter

d1.w = Length of pathlist element

(a0) = Pathlist pointer updated past the optional "/" character

(a1) = Address of the last character of the name +1

**Error Output**

cc = Carry bit set

d1.w = Appropriate error code

**Attributes**

State: User

**Description**

F\$PrsNam parses a string for a valid pathlist element, returning its size.

Note this does not parse an entire pathname, only one element in it. A valid pathlist element may contain the following characters:

A - Z Uppercase letters.	Periods
a - z Lowercase letters _	Underscores
0 - 9 Numbers \$	Dollar signs

Any other character terminates the name and returns as the pathlist delimiter.



---

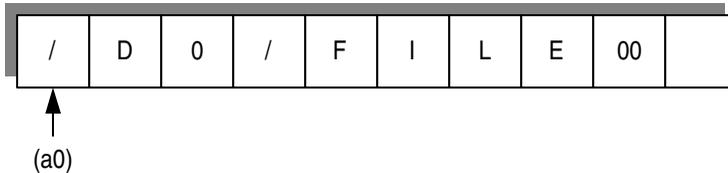
## Note

F\$PrsNam processes only one name, so you may need several calls to process a pathlist with more than one name. F\$PrsNam terminates a name on recognizing a delimiter character. Pathlists are usually terminated with a null byte.

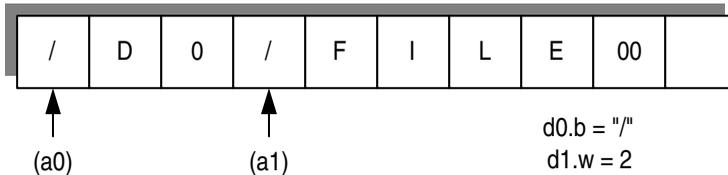
---

**Figure D-5**

**Before F\$PrsNam Call:**



**After F\$PrsNam Call:**



## Possible Errors

E\$BNam

## See Also

F\$CmpNam

**F\$RetPD**Return Process/Path Descriptor

---

**ASM Call**

OS9 F\$RetPD

**Input**

d0.w = process/path number  
(a0) = process/path table pointer

**Output**

None

**Error Output**

cc = Carry bit set  
d1.w = Appropriate error code

**Attributes**

State: System

**Description**

F\$RetPD de-allocates a process or path descriptor. It can be used with [F\\$AllPD](#) and [F\\$FindPD](#) to perform simple memory management of other fixed length objects.

**See Also**

[F\\$AllPD](#)

[F\\$FindPD](#)

**Note**

This is a privileged system-state service request.

---

**ASM Call**`OS9 F$RTE`**Input**

None

**Output**

None

**Attributes**

State: User

**Description**

F\$RTE may be used to exit from a signal processing routine.

F\$RTE terminates a process signal intercept routine and continues executing the main program. However, if there are unprocessed signals pending, the interrupt routine executes again (until the queue is exhausted) before returning to the main program.



---

**Note**

When a signal is received, 70 bytes are used on the user stack. Consequently, intercept routines should be kept very short and fast if many signals are expected.

---

**See Also**[F\\$Icpt](#)[F\\$SigReset](#)

**F\$SchBit**Search Bit Map for Free Area

---

**ASM Call**

OS9 F\$SchBit

**Input**

d0.w = Beginning bit number to search

d1.w = Number of bits needed

(a0) = Bit map pointer

(a1) = End of bit map (+1) pointer

**Output**

d0.w = Beginning bit number found

d1.w = Number of bits found

**Error Output**

cc = Carry bit set

d1.w = Appropriate error code

**Attributes**

State: User

**Description**

F\$SchBit searches the specified allocation bit map for a free block (cleared bits) of the required length, starting at the beginning bit number (d0.w). F\$SchBit returns the offset of the first block found of the specified length.

If no block of the specified size exists, it returns with the carry set, beginning bit number, and size of the largest block found.



---

**Note**

The IOMan module implements F\$SchBit.

---

**See Also**

F\$AllBit

F\$DelBit

## F\$Send

### Send Signal to Another Process

---

#### ASM Call

OS9 F\$Send

#### Input

d0.w = Intended receiver's process ID number  
(0 = all)

d1.w = Signal code to send

#### Output

None

#### Error Output

cc = Carry bit set

d1.w = Appropriate error code

#### Attributes

State: User

#### Description

F\$Send sends a signal to a specific process. The signal code is a word value. A process may send the same signal to multiple processes of the same group/user ID by passing 0 as the receiver's process ID number. For example, the OS-9 Shell command, `kill 0`, unconditionally aborts all processes with the same group/user ID (except the Shell itself). This is a handy but dangerous tool to get rid of unwanted background tasks.

If you attempt to send a signal to a process that has an unprocessed, previous signal pending, the signal is placed in a FIFO queue of signals for the individual process. If the process is in the signal intercept routine when it receives a signal, the new signal is processed when `F$RTE` executes.

If the destination process for the signal is sleeping or waiting, it is activated so it may process the signal. The signal processing intercept routine is executed, if it exists (see `F$Icpt`). Otherwise, the signal aborts the destination process, and the signal code becomes the exit status (see `F$Wait`).

An exception is the wakeup signal. It activates a sleeping process but does not cause examination of the signal intercept routine and does not abort a process that has not made an `F$Icpt` call.

Some of the signal codes have meanings defined by convention:

```
S$Kill    = 0 = System abort (unconditional)
S$Wake    = 1 = Wake up process
S$Abort   = 2 = Keyboard abort
S$Intrpt  = 3 = Keyboard interrupt
S$HangUp  = 4 = Modem Hangup
           5-31 = Reserved for Microware; deadly to I/O
           32-255 = Reserved for Microware
           256-65535 = User defined
```

The `S$Kill` signal may only be sent to processes with the same group ID as the sender. Super users may kill any process.



---

## Note

The I/O system uses the `S$Wake` signal extensively. It is not reliable if used by user-state programs.

---

Signal values less than 32 (`S$Deadly`) usually cause the current I/O operation to terminate with an error status equal to the signal value.

## Possible Errors

`E$IPrCID`

**See Also**

F\$Icpt

F\$Sleep

F\$Wait

### ASM Call

OS9 F\$SetCRC

### Input

(a0) = module pointer

### Output

None

### Error Output

cc = Carry bit set  
dl.w = Appropriate error code

### Attributes

State: User

### Description

F\$SetCRC updates the header parity and CRC of a module in memory. The module may be an existing module known to the system, or simply an image of a module subsequently written to a file. The module must have correct size and sync bytes; other parts of the module are not checked.



---

### Note

The module image must start on an even address or an address error occurs.

---

OS-9 does not permit any modification to the header of a module known to the system. Modifying the header makes the module inaccessible to other processes.

## Possible Errors

E\$BMID

## See Also

F\$CRC

### ASM Call

OS9 F\$SetSys

### Input

d0.w = offset of system global variable to set/examine

d1.l = size of variable in least significant word (1, 2 or 4 bytes).

The most significant bit, if set, indicates an examination request. Otherwise, the variable is changed to the value in register d2.

d2.l = new value (if change request)

### Output

d2.l = original value of system global variable

### Error Output

cc = Carry set

d1.w = Appropriate error code

### Attributes

State: User

### Description

F\$SetSys changes or examines a system global variable. These variables have a `D_` prefix in the system library `sys.l`. Consult the `DEFS` files for a description of the system global variables.



---

**Note**

Only a super-user can change system variables. Any system variable may be examined, but only a few may be altered. The only useful variables that may be changed are `D_MinPty` and `D_MaxAge`. Consult **Process Scheduling** in **Chapter 2: The Kernel** for an explanation of what these variables control.

---

The system global variables are OS-9's data area. It is highly likely they will change from one release to another. You will probably have to relink programs using this system call to run them on future versions of OS-9.



---

**WARNING**

The super-user must be extremely careful when changing system global variables.

---

**See Also**

`F$SPrior` and the DEFS Files section in the ***OS-9 for 68K Processors Technical I/O Manual***.

### ASM Call

OS9 F\$SigMask

### Input

d0.l = reserved, must be zero  
d1.l = process signal level  
    0 = clear  
    1 = set/increment  
   -1 = decrement

### Output

None

### Error Output

cc = carry bit set  
d1.w = error code if error

### Attributes

State: User

### Description

F\$SigMask enables or disables signals from reaching the calling process. If a signal is sent to a process whose mask is disabled, the signal is queued until the process mask becomes enabled. The process' signal intercept routine is executed with signals inherently masked.

Two exceptions to this rule are the S\$Kill and S\$Wake signals:

S\$Kill	terminates the receiving process, regardless of the state of its mask.
S\$Wake	ensures the process is active, but does not queue.

When a process makes an `F$Sleep` or `F$Wait` system call, its signal mask is automatically cleared. If a signal is already queued, these calls return immediately (to the intercept routine).



---

**Note**

Signals are analogous to hardware interrupts. Mask signals sparingly, and keep intercept routines as short and fast as possible.

---

### ASM Call

OS9 F\$SigReset

### Input

None

### Output

None

### Error Output

None

### Attributes

State: User

### Description

Under normal circumstances, OS-9 keeps the state of the main process on the system stack while a signal intercept routine executes. However, if signals are unmasked during the intercept routine, a subsequent signal causes the current state to be stacked on the user's stack.

This does not happen in simple cases, but if the intercept routine unmask signals or `longjmp()`s and then unmask signals, states are placed on the user's stack. There is no functional difference, and if the code actually expects to return through the nested intercept routines with multiple `F$RTE`s, the states must be left where they are.

If the code uses `longjmp()` to leave the intercept routine it implicitly clears the saved context off the stack. The kernel performs best if the code tells the kernel to remove the context.

Whenever a program `longjmp()`s out of an intercept routine or unmask signals in an interrupt service routine with the intent of never `F$RTE`ing, it should use `F$SigReset`:

```
if(setjmp(x) != 0) {  
    _os_sigreset();  
    _os_sigmask(-1);  
}
```

**See Also**

F\$Icpt

F\$RTE

### ASM Call

OS9 F\$Sleep

### Input

d0.l = Ticks/seconds (length of time to sleep)

### Output

d0.l = Remaining number of ticks if awakened prematurely

### Error Output

cc = Carry bit set  
d1.w = Appropriate error code

### Attributes

State: User

### Description

F\$Sleep deactivates the calling process until the requested number of ticks have elapsed.

Sleep(0) sleeps indefinitely.

Sleep(1) gives up a time slice but does not necessarily sleep for one tick.

You cannot use F\$Sleep to time more accurately than  $\pm 1$  tick, because it is not known when the F\$Sleep request was made during the current tick.

A sleep of one tick is effectively a *give up current time slice request*; the process is immediately inserted into the active process queue and resumes execution when it reaches the front of the queue.

A sleep of two or more ( $n$ ) ticks causes the process to be inserted into the active process queue after ( $n - 1$ ) ticks occur and resumes execution when it reaches the front of the queue. The process is activated before the

full time interval if a signal (in particular `S$Wake`) is received. Sleeping indefinitely is a good way to wait for a signal or interrupt without wasting CPU time.

The duration of a tick is system dependent, but is usually .01 seconds. If the high order bit of `d0 . 1` is set, the low 31 bits are converted from 256ths of a second into ticks before sleeping to allow program delays to be independent of the system's clock rate.



---

**Note**

The system clock must be running to perform a timed sleep. It is not required to perform an indefinite sleep or to give up a time-slice.

---

**Possible Errors**

`E$NoClk`

**See Also**

`F$Send`

`F$Wait`

**ASM Call**

OS9 F\$SPrior

**Input**

d0.w = Process ID number

d1.w = Desired process priority: 65535 = highest  
0 = lowest

**Output**

None

**Error Output**

cc = Carry bit set

d1.w = Appropriate error code

**Attributes**

State: User

**Description**

F\$SPrior changes the process priority to the new value specified. A process can only change another process' priority if it has the same user ID. The one exception to this rule is a super user (group ID 0), that may alter any process' priority.

Two system global variables affect task-switching:

D\_MinPty is the minimum priority a task must have for OS-9 to age or execute it.

D\_MaxAge is the cutoff aging point.

D\_MinPty and D\_MaxAge are initially set in the Init module.



---

**Note**

A very small change in relative priorities has a large effect. For example, if two processes have priorities 100 and 200, the process with the higher priority runs 100 times before the low priority process runs at all. In actual practice, the difference may not be this extreme because programs spend a lot of time waiting for I/O devices.

---

**Possible Errors**

E\$IPrcID

**See Also**

F\$SetSys

**Process Scheduling** in **Chapter 2: The Kernel**.

### ASM Call

OS9 F\$SRqCMem

### Input

d0.l = Byte count of requested memory

d1.w = Memory type code (0 = any)

### Output

d0.l = Byte count of memory granted

(a2) = Pointer to memory block allocated

### Error Output

cc = Carry bit set

d1.w = Appropriate error code

### Attributes

State: User

### Description

F\$SRqCMem allocates a block of a specific type of memory. If a non-zero type is requested, the search is restricted to memory areas of that type. The area with the highest priority is searched first.

When the type code is 0, the search is based only on priority. This allows you to configure a system so fast, on-board memory is allocated before slow off-board memory. Areas with a priority of 0 are excluded from the search.

If more than one memory area has the same priority, the area with the largest total free space is searched first. This allows memory areas to be balanced (contain approximately equal amounts of free space).

Memory types or *color codes* are system dependent and may be arbitrarily assigned by the system administrator. Values below 256 are reserved for Microware use.

The requested number of bytes are rounded up to a system defined blocksize—currently 16 bytes. The memory always begins on an even boundary.

If -1 is passed in `d0.l`, the largest block of free memory of the specified type is allocated to the calling process.

`F$SRqMem` is equivalent to a `F$SRqCMem` request with a color of 0.

### Possible Errors

`E$Damage`

`E$MemFull`

`E$NoRAM`

### See Also

`F$Mem`

`F$SRqMem`

`F$SRtMem`

**Init: The Configuration Module** and **Colored Memory** sections in **Chapter 2: The Kernel**

**ASM Call**

OS9 F\$SRqMem

**Input**

d0.l = Byte count of requested memory

**Output**

d0.l = Byte count of memory granted

(a2) = Pointer to memory block allocated

**Error Output**

cc = Carry bit set

d1.w = Appropriate error code

**Attributes**

State: User

**Description**

F\$SRqMem allocates a block of memory from the top of available RAM. The requested number of bytes is rounded up to a system defined blocksize (currently 16 bytes). This system call is useful for allocating I/O buffers and any other semi-permanent memory. The memory always begins on an even boundary.

If -1 is passed in d0.l, the largest block of free memory is allocated to the calling process.



---

**Note**

You *must* save the byte count of allocated memory (as well as the pointer to the block allocated) if the memory is ever to be returned to the system.

---

**Possible Errors**

E\$MemFul

E\$NoRAM

**See Also**

F\$Mem

F\$SRtMem

**ASM Call**

OS9 F\$SRtMem

**Input**

d0.l = Byte count of memory being returned  
(a2) = Address of memory block being returned

**Output**

None

**Error Output**

cc = Carry bit set  
d1.w = Appropriate error code

**Attributes**

State: User

**Description**

F\$SRtMem de-allocates memory after it is no longer needed. The number of bytes returned is rounded up to a system defined blocksize before the memory is returned. Rounding occurs identically to that done by [F\\$SRqMem](#).

In user state, the system keeps track of memory allocated to a process and all blocks not returned are automatically de-allocated by the system when a process terminates. In system state, the process must explicitly return its memory.

**Possible Errors**

E\$BPAddr

**See Also**

[F\\$Mem](#)

[F\\$SRqMem](#)

**ASM Call**

OS9 F\$SSpd

**Input**

d0.w = process ID to suspend

**Output**

None

**Error Output**

cc = Carry bit set

d1.w = Appropriate error code

**Attributes**

State: User

**Description**

F\$SSpd is currently not implemented.



---

**Note**

You can suspend a process by setting its priority below the system's minimum executable priority level (D\_SysMin).

---

**See Also**

[F\\$SetPri](#)

[F\\$SetSys](#)

**F\$SSvc**Service Request Table Initialization

---

**ASM Call**

OS9 F\$SSvc

**Input**

(a1) = pointer to service request initialization  
table

(a3) = user defined

**Output**

None

**Error Output**

cc = Carry bit set

d1.w = Appropriate error code

**Attributes**

State: System

**Description**

F\$SSvc adds or replaces function requests in OS-9's user and privileged system service request tables.

(a3) is generally used to specify the static storage pointer for the installed system calls. This allows a global data pointer to be associated with each installed system call. When the system call is invoked, the data pointer is automatically passed. Whatever (a3) points to is passed to the system call; (a3) may point to anything.

An example initialization table might look like this:

```
SvcTbl
    dc.w F$Service           OS-9 service request code
    dc.w Routine-*-2        Offset of routine to process request
        :
    dc.w F$Service+SysTrap  Redefine system level request
    dc.w SysRoutn-*-2       Offset of routine to handle system request
        :
    dc.w -1 end of table
```

Valid service request codes range from (0-255).



---

### Note

The offset specified is the offset from the beginning of the next table entry to the routine. The -2 syntax used in the assembly language is done to counteract pre-incrementing performed by the assembler.

---



---

### Note

Specifying an offset of zero causes the provided service code to return unknown service code (E\$UnkSvc).

---

If the sign bit of the function code word is set, only the system table is updated. Otherwise, both the system and user tables are updated.

You can only call privileged system service requests from routines executing in system (supervisor) state. The example above shows how a service call that must behave differently in system state than it does in user state is installed.

System service routines are executed in supervisor state. They are written to conform to register conventions:

**Input:**

d0-d4 = user's values  
(a0) - (a2) = user's values  
(a3) = service routine global data pointer  
(a4) = current process descriptor pointer  
(a5) = user's registers image pointer  
(a6) = system global data pointer

**Output:**

cc = carry set  
d1.w = error code if error

The service request routine should process its request and return from subroutine with an `rts` instruction. Any of the registers d0-d7 and (a0) - (a6) may be destroyed by the routine, although for convenience, (a4) - (a6) are generally left intact.

The user's register stack frame pointed to by (a5) is defined in the library `sys.l` and follows the natural hardware stacking order. If the carry bit is returned set, the service dispatcher sets `R$cc` and `R$d1.w` in the user's register stack. Any other values to be returned to the user must be changed in their stack frame by the service routine.



---

**Note**

This is a privileged system-state service request.

---

### ASM Call

OS9 F\$STime

### Input

d0.l = current time (00hhmmss)

d1.l = current date (yyyymmdd)

### Output

Time/date is set

### Error Output

cc = Carry bit set

d1.w = Appropriate error code

### Attributes

State: User

### Description

F\$STime sets the current system date/time and starts the system real-time clock to produce time-slice interrupts. F\$STime is accomplished by putting the date/time packet in the system direct storage area, and then linking the clock module. The clock initialization routine is called if the link is successful.

It is the function of the clock module to:

- Set up any hardware dependent functions to produce system tick interrupts (including moving new date/time into hardware, if needed).
- Install a service routine to clear the interrupt when a tick occurs.

The OS-9 kernel keeps track of the current date and time in software to make clock modules small and simple. Certain utilities and functions in OS-9 expect the clock to be running with an accurate date and time.

The kernel uses the battery-backed clock format to call `F$STime` during system start-up. On systems with a battery-backed clock, this results in the system starting with the correct time and time-slicing turned on. If the system does not have a battery-backed clock (or if the `Init` module has disabled this feature), you should perform an `F$STime` call during the system start-up. For example, call `F$STime` in the initial application or system start-up file.



---

### Note

The date and time are not checked for validity. On systems with a battery-backed clock, it is usually only necessary to supply the year to the `F$STime` call. The actual date and time are read from the real-time clock. To read the time, the month field in the date parameter must be 0.

---

### See Also

[F\\$Link](#)

[F\\$Time](#)



User programs can also catch the following exception errors on systems with a floating point coprocessor (68020 or 68030 with 68881/882; or 68040):

```
Branch or set on unordered condition
Inexact resultDivide by zero
UnderflowOperand Error
OverflowNAN signaled
```

If a user routine is not provided and one of these exceptions occur, the program is aborted. An example initialization table might look like:

```
ExcpTbl    dc.w    T_TRAPV, OvfError--4
           dc.w    T_CHK, CHKError--4
           dc.w    -1 End of Table
```

When an exception routine is executed, it is passed the following:

```
d7.w = Exception vector offset
(a0) = Program counter when exception occurred
      (same as R$PC(a5))
(a1) = Stack pointer when exception occurred
      (R$a7(a5))
(a5) = User's register stack image when exception
      occurred
(a6) = user's primary global data pointer
```

To return to normal program execution after handling the error, the exception must restore all registers (from the register image at (a5)) and jump to the return program counter. For some kinds of exceptions (especially bus and address errors), this may not be appropriate. It is the user program's responsibility to determine whether and where to continue execution.

You can disable an error exception handler by calling `F$STrap` with an initialization table specifying zero as the offset to the routine(s) to remove. For example, the following table removes user routines for the `trapv` and `chk` error exceptions:

```
Table      dc.w    T_TRAPV, 0
           dc.w    T_CHK, 0
           dc.w    -1
```



---

**Note**

Beware of exceptions in exception handling routines. They are usually not re-entrant.

---

**F\$\$User**

## Set User ID Number

**ASM Call**

OS9 F\$\$User

**Input**

d1.l = Desired group/user ID number

**Output**

None

**Error Output**

cc = Carry bit set

d1.w = Appropriate error code

**Attributes**

State: User

**Description**

F\$\$User alters the current user ID to the specified ID. F\$\$User has the following restrictions:

- User number 0.0 may change their ID to anything without restriction.
- A primary module owned by user 0.0 may change its ID to anything without restriction.
- Any primary module may change its user ID to match the module's owner.

All other attempts to change user ID number return an E\$Permit error.

**ASM Call**

OS9 F\$SysDbg

**Input**

None

**Output**

None

**Error Output**

cc = Carry set

d1.w = Appropriate error code

**Attributes**

State: User

**Description**

F\$SysDbg calls the system level debugger, if one exists, to debug system-state routines, such as device drivers. The system level debugger runs in system state and effectively stops timesharing when it is active. It should never be used when there are other users on the system.



---

**Note**

You must enable the system debugger before installing breakpoints or attempting to trace instructions. If no system debugger is available, the system is reset. The system debugger takes over some of the exception vectors directly, in particular the trace exception. This makes it impossible to use the user debugger when the system debugger is enabled.

---

If `F$SysDbg` is called from user-state, the user process must have a group.user ID of 0.0. Calls from system-state (for example, file managers, device drivers) do not have this restriction.

**ASM Call**

OS9 F\$SysID

**Input**

d0.l = reserved, must be zero.  
(a0) = pointer to SysIdent buffer (or null)  
(a1) = pointer to copyright buffer (or null)  
(a2) = reserved, must be zero.  
(a3) = reserved, must be zero.

**Output**

d0.l = kernel OEM registration number  
d1.l = kernel copy serial number  
d2.l = processor identifier (68000/68010, etc.)  
d3.l = kernel (OS) identifier (68000/68010, etc.)  
d4.l = floating pointer unit identifier  
(68881, 68882, 68040)  
d5.l = reserved (0)  
d6.l = kernel version  
(level/version/revision/edition)  
d7.l = reserved (0)  
(a0) = "OS-9 Version Vm.n" string (if non-zero)  
(SysIdent buffer)  
(a1) = "Copyright...." string (if non-zero)  
(Copyright buffer)  
(a2) = reserved  
(a3) = reserved

**Error Output**

cc = carry bit set  
d1.w = appropriate error code

## Attributes

State: User

## Description

`F$SysID` returns information about the system. You can use it to determine specific available operating system capabilities (such as the operating system's (OS) release level) or system hardware characteristics (such as floating point unit presence).

The processor identifier field indicates the class of processor in use, such as 68000, 68020, etc. CPU32 family processors are assigned a class of 68300.

The kernel (OS) identifier identifies the specific version kernel in use. This may differ from the processor identifier field whenever a specific version kernel is available for a class of processors. For example, the 68349 is a CPU32 (68300) processor family member.

The floating point unit identifier identifies the release level of the kernel in four 1-byte fields. Thus, Level 1, OS-9 for 68K version 3.0, Edition 0 would be a value of 01030000.

The `SysIdent` buffer returns a string of the form `OS-9 Version Vm.n` if the input is non-zero.

The copyright buffer returns a string of the form `Copyright . . . .` if the input (`a1`) is non-zero.



---

## Note

Note the following:

- For the Atomic kernel, the string buffers (if non-zero) cause a NULL to be returned in the buffer.
  - The string buffers, if used, must be 80 characters. The maximum strings returned are 79 characters plus a NULL terminator.
  - Applications can check for *OS-9 for 68K pre-version 3.n* configurations of the kernel by performing this call and checking the kernel version field returned. If it is 0, the kernel is *OS-9 for 68K pre-version 3.n*.
-

**F\$Time****Get System Date and Time**

---

**ASM Call**

OS9 F\$Time

**Input**

d0.w = Format 0 = Gregorian  
1 = Julian  
2 = Gregorian with ticks  
3 = Julian with ticks

**Output**

d0.l = Current time  
d1.l = Current date  
d2.w = day of week (0 = Sunday to 6 = Saturday)  
d3.l = tick rate/current tick (if requested)

**Error Output**

cc = Carry bit set  
d1.w = Appropriate error code

**Attributes**

State: User

**Description**

F\$Time returns the current system date and time. In the (normal) Gregorian format, time is expressed as 00hhmmss, and date as yyyyymmdd. The Julian format expresses time as seconds since midnight, and date as the Julian day number. You can use this to determine the elapsed time of an event. If ticks are requested, the clock tick rate in ticks per second is returned in the most significant word of d3. The least significant word contains the current tick.

The following chart illustrates the values returned in the registers:

**Figure D-6 Gregorian vs. Julian Time**

	Register Offset	Gregorian Format	Julian Format
d0.l	byte 3	zero	seconds since midnight (long) 0- 86399
	2	hour (0-23)	
	1	minute (0-59)	
	0	second (0-59)	
d1.l	byte 2-3	year (integer)	Julian day number (long)
	1	month (1-12)	
	0	day (1-31)	



### Note

`F$Time` returns a date and time of zero (with no error) if no previous call to `F$STime` is made. A tick rate of zero indicates the clock is not running.

### See Also

`F$Julian`

`F$STime`

## ASM Call

OS9 F\$TLink

### Input

d0.w = User Trap Number (1-15)

d1.l = Optional memory override

(a0) = Module name pointer

If (a0)=0 or [(a0)]=0, trap handler is unlinked. Other parameters may be required for specific trap handlers.

### Output

(a0) = Updated past module name

(a1) = Trap library execution entry point

(a2) = Trap module pointer

Other values may be returned by specific trap handlers

### Error Output

cc = Carry bit set

d1.w = Appropriate error code

### Attributes

State: User

### Description

You can use user traps as a convenient way to link into a standard set of library routines at execution time. This provides the advantage of keeping user programs small, and automatically updating programs using the library code if it is changed (without having to re-compile or re-link the program itself). Most Microware utilities use one or more trap libraries.

F\$TLink attempts to link, or load, the named module, installing a pointer to it in the user's process descriptor for subsequent use in trap calls. If a trap module already exists for the specified trap code, an error is returned. OS-9 allocates and initializes static storage for the trap handler, if necessary. You can remove traps by passing a null pointer.

A user program calls a trap routine using the following assembly language directive:

```
tcall N,Function
```

This is the equivalent to:

```
trap #N  
dc.w Function
```

N can be 1 to 15 (specifying which user trap vector to use). OS-9 does not use the function code, except for passing it to the trap handler, and the program counter is skipped past it.

F\$TLink allows the program to delay installation of the handler until the program actually uses a trap. If a user program executes a user trap call before the corresponding F\$TLink call has been made, the system executes the user's default trap exception entry point (specified in the module header) if one exists.



---

## Note

System-state processes should not attempt to use trap handlers.

---

## See Also

### [Chapter 5: User Trap Handlers](#)

**F\$Trans**Translate Memory Address

---

**ASM Call**

OS9 F\$Trans

**Input**

d0.l = size of block to translate

d1.l = mode: 0 - local CPU address to external bus  
addr1 - external bus address to local CPU  
addr

(a0) = address of block

**Output**

d0.l = size of block translated

(a0) = translated address of block

**Error Output**

cc = Carry bit set

d1.w = Appropriate error code

**Attributes**

State: User

**Description**

On systems with dual-ported memory, a memory location may appear at different addresses depending on whether it is accessed via the *local* CPU bus or the system's external bus. You can use the F\$Trans request to translate an address to or from its external bus address.

F\$Trans is used when the external bus address must be passed to hardware devices, such as DMA-type controllers. Using the local CPU bus address is faster and reduces the traffic on the external bus. Generally, you should only use the system's external bus address if you cannot use the local CPU bus address.

If the specified source block is non-linear with respect to its destination mapping, `F$Trans` returns the maximum number of bytes accessible at the translated address. In this case, subsequent calls to `F$Trans` must be made until the entire block has been successfully translated. This is rare, since OS-9's memory management routines do not allocate non-linear blocks.

### **Possible Errors**

`E$IbA`

`E$Param`

`E$UnkSvc`

### **See Also**

**Chapter 2: The Kernel** sections on **Init: The Configuration Module** and **Colored Memory**.

**F\$UAcct**

## User Accounting

**ASM Call**

OS9 F\$UAcct

**Input**

d0.w = Function code (F\$Fork, F\$Chain, F\$Exit)  
(a0) = Process descriptor pointer

**Output**

None

**Error Output**

cc = carry bit set  
d1.w = error code if error

**Attributes**

State: User

**Description**

F\$UAcct is a user-defined system call that may be installed by an OS9P2 module. It is called in system state at the beginning and end of every process; whenever you execute F\$Fork, F\$Chain, or F\$Exit.

The kernel's fork and chain routines make an F\$UAcct request just before a new process is inserted in the active queue. Since the new process is ready to execute, its user number, priority, primary module, parameters, etc. are known to F\$UAcct. This provides a variety of opportunities for a F\$UAcct routine. For example:

- A system administrator could keep track of every program run and who ran what program.
- Automatically lower the priority of particular programs.
- Keep a log of everything a specific user does.



---

## Note

If `F$UAcct` returns an error during `F$Fork`, the new process terminates with the error code in `d1.w`.

---

OS-9's process termination routine makes a `F$UAcct` request just before a process' resources are returned to the system. The process descriptor contains information about the CPU time consumed, how many bytes were read or written, how many system calls were made, etc. Once again, `F$UAcct` could be used to record or react to this information. The system ignores any `F$UAcct` error returned at the end of a process.



---

## Note

You must preserve the values in all registers except `d0` and `d1`.

---

## Possible Errors

`E$Param`

`E$UnkSvc`

## See Also

`F$SSvc`

**Chapter 2: The Kernel** (section on installing system-state routines).

**F\$UnLink**Unlink Module by Address

---

**ASM Call**

OS9 F\$UnLink

**Input**

(a2) = Address of the module header

**Output**

None

**Error Output**

cc = Carry bit set

d1.w = Appropriate error code

**Attributes**

State: User

**Description**

F\$UnLink tells OS-9 the module is no longer needed by the calling process. The module's link count is decremented. When the link count is zero, the module is removed from the module directory and its memory is de-allocated. When several modules are loaded together as a group, modules are only removed when the link count of all modules in the group have zero link counts.

Device driver modules in use and certain system modules cannot be unlinked.

**See Also**

[F\\$UnLoad](#)

### ASM Call

OS9 F\$UnLoad

### Input

d0.w = Module type/language  
(a0) = Module name pointer

### Output

(a0) = Updated past module name

### Error Output

cc = Carry bit set  
d1.w = Appropriate error code

### Attributes

State: User

### Description

F\$UnLoad locates the module in the module directory, decrements its link count, and removes it from the directory if the count reaches zero. Note this call differs from [F\\$UnLink](#) as the pointer to the module name is supplied rather than the address of the module header.

### See Also

[F\\$UnLink](#)

**ASM Call**

OS9 F\$VModul

**Input**

d0.l = beginning of module group (ID)  
d1.l = module size  
(a0) = module pointer

**Output**

(a2) = Directory entry pointer

**Error Output**

cc = Carry bit set  
d1.w = Appropriate error code

**Attributes**

State: System

**Description**

F\$VModul checks the module header parity and CRC bytes of an OS-9 module.

If the header values are valid, the module is entered into the module directory, and a pointer to the directory entry is returned.

The module directory is first searched for another module with the same name. If a module with the same name and type exists, the one with the highest revision level is retained in the module directory. Ties are broken in favor of the established module.

## Possible Errors

E\$BMCRC

E\$BMID

E\$BMHP

E\$DirFul

E\$KwnMod

## See Also

F\$CRC

F\$Load



---

### Note

This is a privileged system-state service request.

---

**F\$Wait**Wait for Child Process to Terminate

---

**ASM Call**`OS9 F$Wait`**Input**

None

**Output**`d0.w` = Terminating child process's ID`d1.w` = Child process's exit status code**Error Output**`cc` = Carry bit set`d1.w` = Appropriate error code**Attributes**

State: User

**Description**

`F$Wait` causes the calling process to deactivate until a child process terminates by executing a `F$Exit` system call, or otherwise is terminated. The child's ID number and exit status are returned to the parent. If the child process died due to a signal, the exit status word (register `d1`) is the signal code.

If the caller has several child processes, the caller is activated when the first one dies, so one `Wait` system call is required to detect termination of each child.

If a child process died before the `Wait` call, the caller is reactivated immediately. `Wait` returns an error only if the caller has no child processes.



---

## Note

The process descriptors for child processes are not returned to free memory until their parent process does a `F$Wait` system call or terminates.

---

If a signal is received by a process waiting for children to terminate, it is activated. In this case, `d0.w` contains zero, since no child process has terminated.

## Possible Errors

`E$NoChild`

## See Also

[F\\$Exit](#)

[F\\$Fork](#)

[F\\$Send](#)

## I\$Attach

### Attach New Device to System

---

#### ASM Call

OS9 I\$Attach

#### Input

d0.b = Access mode (Read\_, Write\_, Updat\_)  
(a0) = Device name pointer

#### Output

(a2) = Address of the device table entry

#### Error Output

cc = Carry bit set  
d1.w = Appropriate error code

#### Attributes

State: User, System, and I/O

#### Description

I\$Attach causes an I/O device to become known to the system. Use it to attach a new device to the system, or to verify it is already attached.

The device's name string is used to search the system module directory to see if a device descriptor module with the same name is in memory (this is the name by which the device is known). The descriptor module contains the name of the device's:

- File manager
- Device driver
- Other related information

If the descriptor is found and the device is not already attached, OS-9 links to its file manager and device driver. It then places their addresses in a new device table entry. Any permanent storage needed by the device driver is allocated, and the driver's initialization routine is called to initialize the hardware. If the device has already been attached, it is not re-initialized.

You can use the access mode parameter to verify that subsequent read and/or write operations are permitted. An `Attach` system call is not required to perform routine I/O. It does not reserve the device in question; `I$Attach` simply prepares it for subsequent use by any process.

The kernel attaches all devices at open and detaches them at close.



---

### Note

The IOMan module implements `I$Attach`.

---



---

### Note

`Attach` and `Detach` for devices are similar to `Link` and `Unlink` for modules; they are usually used together. However, system performance can improve slightly if all devices are attached at startup. This increments each device's use count and prevents the device from being re-initialized every time it is opened. This also has the advantage of allocating the static storage for devices all at once, thus minimizing memory fragmentation. If this is done, the device driver termination routine is never executed.

---

## Possible Errors

`E$BMode`

`E$DevBsy`

`E$DevOvf`

`E$MemFul`

**See Also**

[I\\$Detach](#)

### ASM Call

OS9 I\$ChgDir

### Input

d0.b = Access mode (read/write/exec)  
(a0) = Address of the pathlist

### Output

(a0) = Updated past pathname

### Error Output

cc = Carry bit set  
d1.w = Appropriate error code

### Attributes

State: User, System, and I/O

### Description

I\$ChgDir changes a process' working directory to another directory file specified by the pathlist. Depending on the access mode given, either the execution or the data directory (or both) may change. The file specified must be a directory file, and the caller must have access permission for the specified mode.

**Access Modes:**

- 1 = Read
- 2 = Write
- 3 = Update (read and write)
- 4 = Execute

If the access mode is read, write, or update, the current data directory changes. If the access mode is execute, the current execution directory changes. Both can change simultaneously.



---

**Note**

The shell `chd` directive uses `Update` mode—you must have both read and write permission to change directories from the shell. This is a recommended practice.

---



---

**Note**

The IOMan module implements `I$ChgDir`.

---

**Possible Errors**

`E$BMode`

`E$BPNam`

### ASM Call

OS9 I\$Close

### Input

d0.w = Path number

### Output

None

### Error Output

cc = Carry bit set

d1.w = Appropriate error code

### Attributes

State: User, System, and I/O

### Description

I\$Close terminates the I/O path specified by the path. The path number is no longer valid for any OS-9 calls unless it becomes active again through an Open, Create, or Dup system call. When pathlists to non-sharable devices are closed, the devices become available to other requesting processes. If this is the last use of the path (it has not been inherited or duplicated by I\$Dup), all OS-9 internally managed buffers and descriptors are de-allocated.

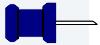


---

### Note

The OS-9 F\$Exit service request automatically closes any open paths. By convention, standard I/O paths are not closed unless it is necessary to change the files/devices they correspond to.

---

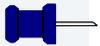


---

**Note**

`I$Close` does an implied `I$Detach` call. If this causes the device use count to become zero, the device termination routine is executed.

---



---

**Note**

The `IOMan` module implements `I$Close`.

---

**Possible Errors**

`E$BPNum`

**See Also**

`I$Detach`

### ASM Call

OS9 I\$Create

### Input

d0.b = Access mode (S, I, E, W, R)  
d1.w = File attributes (access permission)  
d2.l = Initial allocation size (optional)  
(a0) = Pathname pointer

### Output

d0.w = Path number  
(a0) = Updated past the pathlist

### Error Output

cc = Carry bit set  
d1.w = Appropriate error code

### Attributes

State: User, System, and I/O

### Description

I\$Create creates a new file. On multi-file devices, the new file name is entered in the directory structure, and Create is synonymous with Open.

The access mode parameter passed in register `d0.b` must have the write bit set if any data is to be written to the file. The file is given the attributes passed in the register `d1.w`. The individual bits are defined as follows:

**Table D-11** `I$Create` Bits

Mode Bits ( <code>d0.w</code> )	Attribute Bits ( <code>d1.w</code> )
0 = Read	0 = Owner Read Permission
1 = Write	1 = Owner Write Permission
2 = Execute	2 = Owner Execute Permission
5 = Initial File Size	3 = Public Read Permission
6 = Single User	4 = Public Write Permission
	5 = Public Execute Permission
	6 = Non-Sharable File

If the execute bit (bit 2) of the access mode byte is set, directory searching begins with the working execution directory instead of the working data directory.

The path number returned by OS-9 identifies the file in subsequent I/O service requests until the file is closed.

`Write` automatically allocates file space for the file. The `SetStat` call (`SS_Size`) explicitly allocates file space. If the size bit (bit 5) is set, an initial file size estimate may be passed in `d2.l`.

An error occurs if the pathlist specifies an already existing file name. You cannot use `I$Create` to make directory files (see `I$MakDir`).

`Create` causes an implicit `I$Attach` call. If the device has not previously been attached, the device's initialization routine is executed.



---

## Note

The caller is made the owner of the file. To maintain compatibility with OS-9/6809 disk formats, there is only space for two bytes of owner ID. The LS byte of the user's group and the LS byte of the user's ID are used as the owner ID. All user's with the same group ID may access the file as the owner.

---

If an initial file size is specified with `I$Create`, the exact amount specified may not be allocated. You must execute a `SS_Size SetStat` after creating the file to ensure sufficient space was allocated.



---

## Note

The IOMan module implements `I$Create`.

---

## Possible Errors

`E$BPNam`

`E$PthFul`

## See Also

`I$Attach`

`I$Close`

`I$MakDir`

`I$Open`

**I\$Delete**

## Delete File

**ASM Call**

OS9 I\$Delete

**Input**

d0.b = Access mode (read/write/exec)

(a0) = Pathname pointer

**Output**

(a0) = Updated past pathlist

**Error Output**

cc = Carry bit set

d1.w = Appropriate error code

**Attributes**

State: User, System, and I/O

**Description**

I\$Delete deletes the file specified by the pathlist. The caller must have non-sharable write access to the file (the file may not already be open) or an error results. An attempt to delete a non-multifile device results in an error.

The access mode is used to specify the data or execution directory (but not both) in the absence of a full pathlist. If the access mode is read, write, or update, the current data directory is assumed. If the execute bit is set, the current execution directory is assumed. Note if a full pathlist is specified (a pathlist beginning with a slash (/)), the access mode is ignored.



---

**Note**

The IOMan module implements I\$Delete.

---

**Possible Errors**

E\$BPNam

**See Also**

I\$Attach

I\$Create

I\$Detach

I\$Open

## I\$Detach

### Remove Device from System

---

#### ASM Call

OS9 I\$Detach

#### Input

(a2) = Address of the device table entry

#### Output

None

#### Error Output

cc = Carry bit set

d1.w = Appropriate error code

#### Attributes

State: User, System, and I/O

#### Description

I\$Detach removes a device from the system device table, if not in use by any other process. If this is the last use of the device, the device driver's termination routine is called, and any permanent storage assigned to the driver is de-allocated. The device driver and file manager modules associated with the device are unlinked and may be lost if not in use by another process. It is crucial for the termination routine to remove the device from the IRQ system.

You must use the I\$Detach service request to detach devices that were attached with the I\$Attach service request. Both of these are used mainly by the kernel and are of limited use to the typical user. SCF also uses Attach/Detach to set up its second (echo) device.

Most devices are attached at startup and remain attached. Seldom used devices can be attached to the system and used for a while, and then detached to free system resources when no longer needed.



---

**Note**

If an invalid address is passed in (a2), the system may crash or undergo severe damage.

---



---

**Note**

The IOMan module implements I\$Detach.

---

**See Also**

I\$Attach

I\$Close

**ASM Call**

OS9 I\$Dup

**Input**

d0.w = Path number of path to duplicate

**Output**

d0.w = New number for the same path

**Error Output**

cc = Carry bit set

d1.w = Appropriate error code

**Attributes**

State: User, System, and I/O

**Description**

Given the number of an existing path, I\$Dup returns a synonymous path number for the same file or device. I\$Dup always uses the lowest available path number. For example, if you do I\$Close on path #0, then do I\$Dup on path #4, path #0 is returned as the new path number. In this way, the standard I/O paths may be manipulated to contain any desired paths.

The shell uses this service request when it redirects I/O. Service requests using either the old or new path numbers operate on the same file or device.



---

**Note**

This only increments the use count of a path descriptor and returns a synonymous path number. The path descriptor is not copied. It is usually not a good idea for more than one process to be doing I/O on the same path concurrently. On RBF files, unpredictable results may occur.

---



---

**Note**

The IOMan module implements I\$Dup.

---

### Possible Errors

E\$BPNuM

E\$PthFul

**I\$GetStt**

## Get File/Device Status

**ASM Call**

OS9 I\$GetStt

**Input**

d0.w = Path number

d1.w = Function code

Others = dependent on function code

**Output**

Dependent on function code

**Error Output**

cc = Carry bit set

d1.w = Appropriate error code

**Attributes**

State: User, System, and I/O

**Description**

This is a wildcard call used to handle individual device parameters that are not uniform on all devices, or are highly hardware dependent. The exact operation of this call depends on the device driver and file manager associated with the path.

A typical use is to determine a terminal's parameters (such as echo on/off and delete character). It is commonly used with the `SetStt` call, which sets the device operating parameters.

The mnemonics for the status codes are found in the relocatable library `sys.l` or `usr.l`. Codes 0-255 are reserved for Microware use. The remaining codes and their parameter passing conventions are user definable (see Chapter 3, the section on device drivers).



---

## Note

The IOMan module implements `I$GetStt`.

---

Presently defined `I$GetStt` function codes are listed below:

**Table D-12** `I$GetStt` Function Codes

Name	Description
<code>SS_CDFD</code>	Return File Descriptor (CDFM)
<code>SS_DevNam</code>	Return Device Name (All)
<code>SS_EOF</code>	Test of End of File (RBF, SCF, PIPE)
<code>SS_FD</code>	Read File Descriptor Sector (RBF, PIPE)
<code>SS_FDInf</code>	Get Specified File Descriptor Sector (RBF)
<code>SS_Free</code>	Return Amount of Free Space on Device (NRF, NVRAM file mgr.)
<code>SS_Opt</code>	Read <code>PD_OPT</code> : The Path Descriptor Option Section (All)
<code>SS_Pos</code>	Get Current File Position (RBF, PIPE)
<code>SS_Ready</code>	Test for Data Ready (RBF, SCF, PIPE)
<code>SS_Size</code>	Return Current File Size (RBF, PIPE)
<code>SS_VarSect</code>	Query Support for Variable Logical Sector Sizes (RBF)

---

## Possible Errors

E\$BPNum

#### Input

d0.w = Path number  
d1.w = #SS\_CDFD function code  
d2.w = Number of bytes to copy  
(a0) = Pointer to buffer area for file descriptor

#### Output

None

#### Error Output

cc = Carry bit set  
d1.w = Appropriate error code

#### Attributes

State: User, System, and I/O

#### Description

SS\_CDFD reads the file descriptor describing the path number. The file descriptor may be read for information purposes only, as there are no user changeable parameters.

**SS\_DevNm**Return Device Name (ALL)

---

**Input**`d0.w = Path number``d1.w = #SS_DevNm function code``(a0) = Address of 32 byte area for device name`**Output**

Device name in 32 byte storage area, null terminated.

**Attributes**

State: User, System, and I/O

## SS\_EOF

Test for End of File (RBF, SCF, PIPE)

---

### Input

d0.w = Path number  
d1.w = #SS\_EOF function code

### Output

d1.l = 0 If not EOF, (SCF never returns EOF)

### Error Output

cc = Carry bit set  
d1.w = Appropriate error code (E\$EOF, if end of file)

### Attributes

State: User, System, and I/O

**SS\_FD****Read File Descriptor Sector (RBF, PIPE)**

---

**Input**

d0.w = Path number  
d1.w = #SS\_FD function code  
d2.w = Number of bytes to copy(<=logical sector size  
of media)  
(a0) = Address of buffer area for FD

**Output**

File descriptor copied into buffer

**Attributes**

State: User, System, and I/O

**Description**

Use SS\_FD to inspect the file descriptor information (for example, FD\_OWN and FD\_DAT) and the file segment list.

#### Input

d0.w = Path number  
d1.w = #SS\_FDInf function code  
d2.w = Number of bytes to copy (<=256)  
d3.l = FD sector address  
(a0) = Address of buffer area for FD

#### Output

File descriptor copied into buffer.

#### Attributes

State: User, System, and I/O



---

#### Note

If `SS_FDInf` is called in user state, the caller must be a super-group user. If it is called in system state, the caller does *not* have to be a super-group user.

---

**SS\_Free**

Return Amount of Free Space on Device (NRF, NVRAM file mgr.)

---

**Input**

d0.l = Path number  
d1.w = #SS\_Free function code

**Output**

d0.l = Size of free space on device, in bytes

**Attributes**

State: User, System, and I/O

#### Input

d0.w = Path number  
d1.w = #SS\_Opt function code  
(a0) = Address to put a 128 byte status packet

#### Output

Status packet copied to buffer.

#### Error Output

cc = Carry bit set  
d1.w = Appropriate error code

#### Attributes

State: User, System, and I/O

#### Description

SS\_Opt reads the option section of the path descriptor and copies it into the 128 byte area pointed to by (a0). It is typically used to determine the current settings for echo, auto line feed, etc. For a complete description of the status packet, refer to [Chapter 3: OS-9 Input/Output System](#) the section on file manager path descriptors.

**SS\_Pos****Get Current File Position (RBF, PIPE)**

---

**Input**

d0.w = Path number  
d1.w = #SS\_Pos function code

**Output**

d2.l = Current file position

**Error Output**

cc = Carry bit set  
d1.w = Appropriate error code

**Attributes**

State: User, System, and I/O

## SS\_Ready

### Test for Data Ready (RBF, SCF, PIPE)

---

#### Input

d0.w = Path number  
d1.w = #SS\_Ready function code

#### Output

d1.l = Number of input characters available on SCF or pipe devices. RBF devices always return carry clear, d1.l=1

#### Error Output

cc = Carry bit set  
d1.w = Appropriate error code (E\$NotRdy if no data is available)

#### Attributes

State: User, System, and I/O

**SS\_Size**Return Current File Size (RBF, PIPE)

---

**Input**

d0.w = Path number  
d1.w = #SS\_Size function code

**Output**

d2.l = Current file size

**Error Output**

cc = Carry bit set  
d1.w = Appropriate error code

**Attributes**

State: User, System, and I/O

#### Input

d0.w = path number

d1.w = #SS\_VarSect function code

#### Output

None

#### Attributes

State: User, System, and I/O

#### Description

SS\_VarSect is an internal call between RBF and a driver. If the driver does not return an error, the logical sector size of the media is specified in PD\_SSize. If the driver returns an error, and the error is E\$UnkSvc, RBF sets the path's logical sector size to 256 bytes and ignores PD\_SSize. If any other error is returned, the path open is aborted and the error is returned to the caller.

**I\$MakDir**

## Make New Directory

**ASM Call**

OS9 I\$MakDir

**Input**

d0.b = Access mode (see below)  
d1.w = Access permissions  
d2.l = Initial Allocation Size (Optional)  
(a0) = Pathname pointer

**Output**

(a0) = Updated past pathname

**Error Output**

cc = Carry bit set  
d1.w = Appropriate error code

**Attributes**

State: User, System, and I/O

**Description**

I\$MakDir is the only way to create a new directory file. It creates and initializes a new directory as specified by the pathlist. The new directory file contains no entries, except for an entry for itself (specified by a dot (.)) and its parent directory (specified by double dot (. .)). I\$MakDir fails on non-multi-file devices. If the execution bit is set, OS-9 begins searching for the file in the working execution directory (unless the pathlist begins with a slash).

The caller is made the owner of the directory. I\$MakDir does not return a path number because directory files are not opened by this request (use [I\\$Open](#) to do so). The new directory automatically has its directory bit set

in the access permission attributes. The remaining attributes are specified by the bytes passed in register `d1.w` that have individual bits defined as listed below (if the bit is set, access is permitted):

**Table D-13** `I$MakDir` Bits

<b>Mode Bits (d0.b)</b>	<b>Attribute Bits (d1.w)</b>
0 = Read	0 = Owner Read Permission
1 = Write	1 = Owner Write Permission
2 = Execute	2 = Owner Execute Permission
5 = Initial Directory Size	3 = Public Read Permission
7 = Directory	4 = Public Write Permission
	5 = Public Execute Permission
	6 = Non-Sharable File
	7 = Directory



### Note

The IOMan module implements `I$MakDir`.

### Possible Errors

`E$BPNam`

`E$CEF`

`E$PNNF`

## I\$Open

Open a Path to a File or Device

---

### ASM Call

OS9 I\$Open

### Input

d0.b = Access mode (D S E W R)  
(a0) = Pathname pointer

### Output

d0.w = Path number  
(a0) = Updated past pathname

### Error Output

cc = Carry bit set  
d1.w = Appropriate error code

### Attributes

State: User, System, and I/O

### Description

I\$Open opens a path to an existing file or device as specified by the pathlist. A path number is returned which is used in subsequent service requests to identify the path. If the file does not exist, an error is returned.

The access mode parameter specifies which subsequent read and/or write operations are permitted as follows (if the bit is set, access is permitted):

**Table D-14** I\$Open Bits

---

**Mode Bits**

---

0 = Read

1 = Write

2 = Execute

4 = Force writes to always append to end-of-file

6 = Open File for Non-Sharable Use

7 = Open Directory File

---



---

**Note**

A non-directory file may be opened with no bits set. This allows you to examine the attributes, size, etc. with the `GetStt` system call, but does not permit any actual I/O on the path.

---

For RBF devices, use read mode instead of update if you are not going to modify the file. This inhibits record locking, and can dramatically improve system performance if more than one user is accessing the file. The access mode must conform to the access permissions associated with the file or device (see `I$Create`).

If the execution bit mode is set, OS-9 begins searching for the file in the working execution directory (unless the pathlist begins with a slash).

If the single user bit is set, the file is opened for non-sharable access even if the file is sharable.

If the append user bit is set, all writes to the file are written at end-of-file.

Files can be opened by several processes (users) simultaneously. Devices have an attribute specifying whether or not they are sharable on an individual basis.

`I$Open` always uses the lowest path number available for the process.



---

**Note**

The IOMan module implements `I$Open`.

Directory files may be opened only if the directory bit (bit 7) is set in the access mode.

---

**Possible Errors**

`E$Bmode`

`E$BPNam`

`E$FNA`

`E$PNNF`

`E$PthFul`

`E$Share`

**See Also**

`I$Attach`

`I$Close`

`I$Create`

### ASM Call

OS9 I\$Read

### Input

d0.w = Path number  
d1.l = Maximum number of bytes to read  
(a0) = Address of input buffer

### Output

d1.l = Number of bytes actually read

### Error Output

cc = Carry bit set  
d1.w = Appropriate error code

### Attributes

State: User, System, and I/O

### Description

I\$Read reads a specified number of bytes from the specified path number. The path must previously have been opened in read or update mode. The data is returned exactly as read from the file/device, without additional processing or editing such as backspace and line delete. If there is not enough data in the file to satisfy the read request, fewer bytes are read than requested, but an end of file error is not returned.

After all data in a file has been read, the next I\$Read service request returns an end of file error.



---

**Note**

The keyboard X-ON/X-OFF characters may be filtered out of the input data on SCF-type devices unless the corresponding entries in the path descriptor are set to zero. You may wish to modify the device descriptor so these values in the path descriptor are initialized to zero when the path is opened. SCF devices usually terminate the read when a carriage return is reached.

The IOMan module implements `I$Read`.

---

For RBF devices, if the file is open for update, the record read is locked out. See the Record Locking section in the RBF chapter of the ***OS-9 for 68K Processors Technical I/O Manual***.

The number of bytes requested is read unless:

- The end-of-file is reached
- An end-of-record occurs (SCF only)
- An error condition occurs

**Possible Errors**

`E$BMode`

`E$BPNum`

`E$EOF`

`E$Read`

**See Also**

`I$ReadLn`

### ASM Call

OS9 I\$ReadLn

### Input

d0.w = Path number  
d1.l = Maximum number of bytes to read  
(a0) = Address of input buffer

### Output

d1.l = Actual number of bytes read

### Error Output

cc = Carry bit set  
d1.w = Appropriate error code

### Attributes

State: User, System, and I/O

### Description

I\$ReadLn is similar to I\$Read except it reads data from the input file or device until an end-of-line character is encountered. I\$ReadLn also causes line editing to occur on SCF-type devices. Line editing refers to backspace, line delete, echo, automatic line feed, etc. Some devices (SCF) may limit the number of bytes read with one call.

SCF requires the last byte entered be an end-of-record character (normally carriage return). If more data is entered than the maximum specified, it is not accepted and a PD\_OVF character (normally bell) is echoed. For example, a I\$ReadLn of exactly one byte accepts only a carriage return to return without error and beeps when other keys are pressed.

After all data in a file has been read, the next I\$ReadLn service request returns an end of file error.



---

**Note**

The IOMan module implements I\$ReadLn.

---

**Possible Errors**

E\$BMode

E\$BPNum

E\$Read

**See Also**

[I\\$Read](#)

### ASM Call

OS9 I\$Seek

### Input

d0.w = Path number  
d1.l = New position

### Output

None

### Error Output

cc = Carry bit set  
d1.w = Appropriate error code

### Attributes

State: User, System, and I/O

### Description

I\$Seek repositions the path's file pointer which is the 32-bit address of the next byte in the file to be read or written. I\$Seek usually does not initiate any physical positioning of the media.

You can perform a `Seek` to any value even if the file is not large enough. Subsequent writes automatically expand the file to the required size (if possible), but reads return an end-of-file condition.



---

### Note

A `Seek` to address zero is the same as a rewind operation.

---

Seeks to non-random access devices are usually ignored and return without error.



---

**Note**

On RBF devices, seeking to a new disk sector causes the internal sector buffer to be rewritten to disk if it has been modified. Seek does not change the state of record locks. Beware of seeking to a negative position. RBF takes negatives as large positive numbers.

---



---

**Note**

The IOMan module implements `I$Seek`.

---

## Possible Errors

`E$BPNum`

## ASM Call

OS9 I\$SetStt

## Input

d0.w = Path number

d1.w = Function code

Others = Function code dependent

## Output

Function code dependent.

## Error Output

cc = Carry bit set

d1.w = Appropriate error code

## Attributes

State: User, System, and I/O

## Description

This is a *wildcard* system call used to handle individual device parameters that are not uniform on all devices or are highly hardware dependent. The exact operation of this call depends on the device driver and file manager associated with the path.

A typical use is to set a terminal's parameters for backspace character, delete character, echo on/off, null padding, paging, etc. It is commonly used with the [I\\$GetStt](#) service request that reads the device's operating parameters.

The mnemonics for the status codes are found in the relocatable library `sys.l` or `usr.l`. Codes 0-255 are reserved for Microware use. The remaining codes and their parameter passing conventions are user definable (see [Chapter 3: OS-9 Input/Output System](#), the [Device Driver Overview](#) section).




---

**Note**

The IOMan module implements `I$SetStt`.

---

Presently defined `I$SetStt` function codes are listed below:

**Table D-15** `I$SetStt` Function Codes

Name	Description
<code>SS_Attr</code>	Set File Attributes (RBF, PIPE)
<code>SS_Close</code>	Notify Driver That Path Has Been Closed (SCF, RBF, SBF)
<code>SS_DCoff</code>	Send Signal When Data Carrier Detect Line Goes False (SCF)
<code>SS_DCon</code>	Send Signal When Data Carrier Detect Line Goes True (SCF)
<code>SS_DsRTS</code>	Disable RTS Line (SCF)
<code>SS_EnRTS</code>	Enable RTS Line (SCF)
<code>SS_Feed</code>	Erase Tape (SBF)
<code>SS_FD</code>	Write File Descriptor Sector (RBF)
<code>SS_Lock</code>	Lock Out Record (RBF)
<code>SS_Open</code>	Notify Driver That Path Has Been Opened
<code>SS_Opt</code>	Write Option Section of Path Descriptor (All)

**Table D-15** I\$SetStt **Function Codes (continued)**

<b>Name</b>	<b>Description</b>
<code>SS_Relea</code>	Release Device (SCF, PIPE)
<code>SS_Reset</code>	Restore Head to Track Zero (RBF, SBF)
<code>SS_RFM</code>	Skip Tape Marks (SBF)
<code>SS_Size</code>	Set File Size (RBF, PIPE)
<code>SS_Skip</code>	Skip Blocks (SBF)
<code>SS_SSig</code>	Send Signal on Data Ready (SCF, PIPE)
<code>SS_Ticks</code>	Wait Specified Number of Ticks for Record Release (RBF)
<code>SS_WFM</code>	Write Tape Marks (SBF)
<code>SS_WTrk</code>	Write (Format) Track (RBF)

### **Possible Errors**

E\$BPNum

**SS\_Attr**Set File Attributes (RBF, PIPE)

---

**Input**

d0.w = Path number  
d1.w = #SS\_Attr function code  
d2.b = New attributes

**Output**

None

**Attributes**

State: User, System, and I/O

**Description**

SS\_Attr changes a file's attributes to the new value, if possible. It is not permitted to set the `dir` bit of a non-directory file, or to clear the `dir` bit of a non-empty directory.

## SS\_Close

Notify Driver That Path Has Been Closed (SCF, RBF, SBF)

---

### Input

d0.w = path number  
d1.w = SS\_Close function code

### Output

None

### Attributes

State: User, System, and I/O

### Description

SS\_Close is an internal call for drivers.

**SS\_DCOff****Send Signal When Data Carrier Detect Line Goes False (SCF)**

---

**Input**

d0.w = path number  
d1.w = SS\_DCOff function code  
d2.w = Signal code to be sent

**Output**

None

**Attributes**

State: User, System, and I/O

**Description**

When a modem has finished receiving data from a carrier, the data carrier detect line goes false. `SS_DCOff` sends a signal code when this happens. `SS_DCOn` sends a signal when the line goes true.

### Send Signal When Data Carrier Detect Line Goes True (SCF)

---

#### Input

d0.w = path number  
d1.w = SS\_DCO<sub>n</sub> function code  
d2.w = Signal code to be sent

#### Output

None

#### Attributes

State: User, System, and I/O

#### Description

When a modem receives a carrier, the data carrier detect line goes true. SS\_DCO<sub>n</sub> sends a signal code when this happens. [SS\\_DCO<sub>off</sub>](#) sends a signal when the line goes false.

**SS\_DsRTS**Disable RTS Line (SCF)

---

**Input**

d0.w = path number  
d1.w = SS\_DsRTS function code

**Output**

None

**Attributes**

State: User, System, and I/O

**Description**

SS\_DsRTS tells the driver to negate the RTS hardware handshake line.

## SS\_EnRTS

Enable RTS Line (SCF)

---

### Input

d0.w = path number  
d1.w = SS\_EnRTS function code

### Output

None

### Attributes

State: User, System, and I/O

### Description

SS\_EnRTS tells the driver to enable the RTS hardware handshake line.

**SS\_Feed**

## Erase Tape (SBF)

**Input**

d0.w = path number  
d1.w = SS\_Feed function code  
d2.l = # of blocks to erase

**Output**

None

**Attributes**

State: User, System, and I/O

**Description**

SS\_Feed erases a portion of the tape. The amount of tape erased depends on the capabilities of the hardware used. SBF attempts to use the following: If -1 is passed in d2, SBF erases until the end-of-tape is reached. If d2 receives a positive parameter, SBF erases the amount of tape equivalent to that number of blocks. This depends on both the hardware used and the driver.

**Input**

d0.w = Path Number  
d1.w = #SS\_FD function code  
(a0) = Address of FD sector image

**Output**

None

**Attributes**

State: User, System, and I/O

**Description**

SS\_FD changes file descriptor sector data. The path must be open for write.



---

**Note**

You can only change `FD_OWN`, `FD_DAT`, and `FD_Creat`. These are the only fields written back to disk. Only the super user can change the file's owner ID.

---

SS\_FD should normally be used with `GetStat (SS_FD)` to read the File Descriptor (FD) before attempting to change FD sector data.

## SS\_Lock

### Lock Out Record (RBF)

---

#### Input

d0.w = Path Number  
d1.w = #SS\_Lock function code  
d2.l = Lockout size

#### Output

None

#### Attributes

State: User, System, and I/O

#### Description

SS\_Lock locks out a section of the file from the current file pointer position up to the specified number of bytes.

If 0 bytes are requested, all locks are removed (Record Lock, EOF Lock, and File Lock).

If \$ffffff bytes are requested, then the entire file is locked out regardless of where the file pointer is. This is a special type of file lock remaining in effect until released by SS\_Lock(0), a read or write of zero bytes, or the file is closed.

There is no way to gain file lock using only read or write system calls.

## SS\_Open

### Notify Driver That Path Has Been Opened

---

#### Input

d0.w = path number  
d1.w = SS\_Open function code

#### Output

None

#### Attributes

State: User, System, and I/O

#### Description

SS\_Open is an internal call for drivers.

**SS\_Opt****Write Option Section of Path Descriptor (ALL)**

---

**Input**

d0.w = Path number  
d1.w = #SS\_Opt function code  
(a0) = Address of a 128 byte status packet

**Output**

None

**Attributes**

State: User, System, and I/O

**Description**

SS\_Opt writes the option section of the path descriptor from the 128 byte status packet pointed to by (a0). It is typically used to set the device operating parameters (such as echo and auto line feed). This call is handled by the file managers, and only copies values that are appropriate to be changed by user programs.

## SS\_Relea

Release Device (SCF, PIPE)

---

### Input

d0.w = path number  
d1.w = SS\_Relea function code

### Output

None

### Attributes

State: User, System, and I/O

### Description

SS\_Relea releases the device from any [SS\\_SSig](#), [SS\\_DCon](#), or [SS\\_DCOff](#) requests made by the calling process on this path.

**SS\_Reset**Restore Head to Track Zero (RBF, SBF)

---

**Input**

d0.w = Path number  
d1.w = #SS\_Reset function code

**Output**

None

**Attributes**

State: User, System, and I/O

**Description**

For RBF, this directs the disk head to track zero. It is used for formatting and for error recovery. For SBF, this rewinds the tape.

**Input**

d0.w = path number  
d1.w = SS\_RFM function code  
d2.l = # of tape marks

**Output**

None

**Attributes**

State: User, System, and I/O

**Description**

SS\_RFM skips the number of tape marks specified in d2. If d2 is negative, the tape is rewound the specified number of marks.

**SS\_Size**

Set File Size (RBF, PIPE)

**Input**

d0.w = Path number  
d1.w = #SS\_Size function code  
d2.l = Desired file size

**Output**

None

**Attributes**

State: User, System, and I/O

**Description**

SS\_Size sets the file's size.

For pipe files, you can use SS\_Size to reset the pipe path (d2.l=0), provided the pipe has no active readers or writers. Any other value in d2.l is ignored.

## SS\_Skip

Skip Blocks (SBF)

---

### Input

d0.w = path number  
d1.w = SS\_Skip function code  
d2.l = # of blocks to skip

### Output

None

### Attributes

State: User, System, and I/O

### Description

SS\_Skip skips the number of blocks specified in d2. If the number is negative, the tape is rewound the specified number of blocks.

**SS\_SSig**Send Signal on Data Ready (SCF, PIPE)

---

**Input**

d0.w = Path number  
d1.w = SS\_SSig function code  
d2.w = User defined signal code

**Output**

None

**Attributes**

State: User, System, and I/O

**Description**

SS\_SSig sets up a signal to send to a process when an interactive device or pipe has data ready. SS\_SSig must be reset each time the signal is sent. The device or pipe is considered busy and returns an error if any read request arrives before the signal is sent. Write requests to the device are allowed in this state.

### Wait Specified Number of Ticks for Record Release (RBF)

---

#### Input

d0.w = path number  
d1.w = #SS\_Ticks function code  
d2.l = Delay interval

#### Output

None

#### Attributes

State: User, System, and I/O

#### Description

Normally, if a read or write request is issued for a part of a file locked out by another user, RBF sleeps indefinitely until the conflict is removed.

You can use `SS_Ticks` to return an error (`E$Lock`) to the user program if the conflict still exists after the specified number of ticks have elapsed.

The delay interval is used directly as a parameter to RBF's conflict sleep request. The value 0 (RBF's default) causes a sleep forever until the record is released. A value of 1 means if the record is not released immediately, an error is returned. If the high order bit is set, the lower 31 bits are converted from 256th of a second into ticks before sleeping. This allows programmed delays to be independent of the system clock rate.

**SS\_WFM**Write Tape Marks (SBF)

---

**Input**

d0.w = path number  
d1.w = SS\_WFM function code  
d2.l = # of tape marks

**Output**

None

**Attributes**

State: User, System, and I/O

**Description**

SS\_WFM writes the number of tape marks specified in d2.

**Input**

d0.w = Path number  
d1.w = #SS\_WTrk function code  
(a0) = Address of track buffer  
For hard disks and "autosize" media, this table contains 1 logical sector of data (pattern \$E5). For floppy disks, this table contains the track's physical data.  
(a1) = Address of interleave table  
This table contains byte entries of LSN's ordered to match the requested interleave offset. NOTE: This is a "logical" table and does not reflect the PD\_SOffs base sector number.  
d2 = Track number  
d3.w = Side/density  
The low order byte has 3 bits which can be set:  
    Bit 0 = SIDE (0=side zero;1=side one)  
    Bit 1 = DENSITY (0=single;1=double)  
    Bit 2 = TRACK DENSITY (0=single;1=double)  
The high order byte contains the side number.  
d4 = Interleave value

**Output**

None

**Attributes**

State: User, System, and I/O

## Description

`SS_WTrk` causes a format track operation (used with most floppy disks) to occur. For hard or floppy disks with a *format entire disk* command, this formats the entire media only when side 0 of the first accessible track is specified.

### ASM Call

OS9 I\$Write

### Input

d0.w = Path number  
d1.l = Number of bytes to write  
(a0) = Address of buffer

### Output

d1.l = Number of bytes actually written

### Error Output

cc = Carry bit set  
d1.w = Appropriate error code

### Attributes

State: User, System, and I/O

### Description

I\$Write outputs bytes to a file or device associated with the path number specified. The path must have been opened or created in the write or update access modes.

Data is written to the file or device without processing or editing. If data is written past the present end-of-file, the file is automatically expanded.



---

### Note

The IOMan module implements I\$Write.

On RBF devices, any locked record is released.

---

## Possible Errors

E\$BMode

E\$BPNum

E\$Write

## See Also

I\$Create

I\$Open

I\$WritLn

### ASM Call

OS9 I\$WritLn

### Input

d0.w = Path number

d1.l = Maximum number of bytes to write

(a0) = Address of buffer

### Output

d1.l = Actual number of bytes written

### Error Output

cc = Carry bit set

d1.w = Appropriate error code

### Attributes

State: User, System, and I/O

### Description

I\$WritLn is similar to I\$Write except it writes data until a carriage return character or (d1) bytes are encountered. Line editing is also activated for character-oriented devices such as terminals, printers, etc. The line editing refers to auto line feed, null padding at end-of-line, etc.

The number of bytes actually written (returned in d1.l) does not reflect any additional bytes added by file managers or device drivers for device control. For example, if SCF appends a line feed and nulls after carriage return characters, these extra bytes are not counted.



### Note

The IOMan module implements I\$WritLn.

On RBF devices, any locked record is released.

---

### Possible Errors

E\$BMode

E\$BPNum

E\$Write

### See Also

[I\\$Create](#)

[I\\$Open](#)

[I\\$Write](#)

***OS-9 for 68K Processors Technical I/O Manual*** chapter on SCF Drivers (line editing).

